Catalogue no. 98-301-X2016001
ISBN 978-0-660-06678-3

Census of Population Reference Product

Dictionary, Census of Population, 2016

Census of Population, 2016

Release date: October 11, 2018

Statistics Canada Statistique Canada

How to obtain more information

For information about this product or the wide range of services and data available from Statistics Canada, visit our website, www.statcan.gc.ca.

You can also contact us by

email at STATCAN.infostats-infostats.STATCAN@canada.ca

telephone, from Monday to Friday, 8:30 a.m. to 4:30 p.m., at the following numbers:

• Statistical Information Service	1-800-263-1136
• National telecommunications device for the hearing impaired	1-800-363-7629
• Fax line	1-514-283-9350

Depository Services Program

• Inquiries line	1-800-635-7943
• Fax line	1-800-565-7757

Standards of service to the public

Statistics Canada is committed to serving its clients in a prompt, reliable and courteous manner. To this end, Statistics Canada has developed standards of service that its employees observe. To obtain a copy of these service standards, please contact Statistics Canada toll-free at 1-800-263-1136. The service standards are also published on www.statcan.gc.ca under "Contact us" > "Standards of service to the public."

Note of appreciation

Canada owes the success of its statistical system to a long-standing partnership between Statistics Canada, the citizens of Canada, its businesses, governments and other institutions. Accurate and timely statistical information could not be produced without their continued co-operation and goodwill.

Standard table symbols

The following symbols are used in Statistics Canada publications:

.	not available for any reference period
..	not available for a specific reference period
...	not applicable
0	true zero or a value rounded to zero
0^s	value rounded to 0 (zero) where there is a meaningful distinction between true zero and the value that was rounded
^{p}	preliminary
^{r}	revised
x	suppressed to meet the confidentiality requirements of the *Statistics Act*
^{E}	use with caution
F	too unreliable to be published
*	significantly different from reference category ($p < 0.05$)

Published by authority of the Minister responsible for Statistics Canada

© Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada as represented by the Minister of Industry, 2018

All rights reserved. Use of this publication is governed by the Statistics Canada Open Licence Agreement.

An HTML version **is also available.**

Cette publication est aussi disponible en français.

Table of contents

Introduction 1

- List of new variables and terms 2
- List of deleted and discontinued variables and terms 3
- List of revised variables and terms 4
- List of abbreviations and acronyms 6

Aboriginal peoples 11

- Aboriginal ancestry 11
- Aboriginal group 12
- Aboriginal identity 14
- Area of residence - Inuit Nunangat 15
- Area of residence - On reserve 15
- Membership in a First Nation or Indian band 15
- Registered or Treaty Indian status 16
- Residence inside or outside Inuit Nunangat 17
- Residence on or off reserve 18

Age and sex 19

- Age 19
- Date of birth 19
- Person 19
- Sex 20
- Usual place of residence 21

Agriculture 23

- Census farm 23
- Farm operator 24
- Rural farm population 25

Education 27

- Degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry 27
- Highest certificate, diploma or degree 27
- Location of study 29
- Location of study compared with province or territory of residence 30
- Major field of study - ISCED and CIP Canada concordances 31
- Major field of study (based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2000, historical) 32
- Major field of study (based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016) 32
- School attendance 33
- Secondary (high) school diploma or equivalency certificate 35

Families, households and marital status 37
Census family 37
Census family composition 38
Census family status 38
Census family structure 38
Child presence any age 39
Collective household 40
Common-law status 40
Conjugal status 41
Couple family 41
Couple family with children 42
Economic family 43
Economic family status 44
Economic family structure 44
Family size 45
Household 46
Household living arrangements 46
Household outside Canada 47
Household type 48
Legal marital status 48
Marital status 49
Opposite/same-sex married spouse or common-law partner 50
Opposite/same-sex status 51
Person 15 years or over 51
Presence of children 52
Private household 52
Relationship structure 53
Relationship to household reference person (Person 1) 53
Stepfamily 54
Stepfamily status 54

Geography 57
Introduction to the geography universe 57

Geographic attributes 57
Adjusted counts 57
Geographic code 58
Land area 59
Population density 60

Geographic classifications 61
Census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ) 61
Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 62
Statistical Area Classification (SAC) 63

Geographic files 64
Cartographic boundary files (CBFs) 64
Digital boundary files (DBFs) 65
Road network file (RNF) 66
Geographic infrastucture 66
National Geographic Database (NGD) 66
Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) 67
Geographic areas 68
Aggregate dissemination area (ADA) 68
Blockface 69
Census agglomeration (CA) 71
Census agricultural region (CAR) 71
Census consolidated subdivision (CCS) 71
Census division (CD) 72
Census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA) 74
Census subdivision – previous census 81
Census subdivision (CSD) 81
Census tract (CT) 84
Core, fringe and rural area 86
Designated place (DPL) 87
Dissemination area (DA) 89
Dissemination block (DB) 90
Economic region (ER) 91
Federal electoral district (FED) 92
Geographical region of Canada 93
Place name (PN) 94
Population centre (POPCTR) 94
Province or territory 98
Rural area (RA) 98
Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS) 99
Coordinate system 99
Datum 100
Ecumene 100
Geocoding 101
Map projection 102
Reference map 103
Representative point 103
Thematic map 110

Other 111
Forward sortation area (FSA)® 111
Geographic reference date 111
Postal code^{OM} 112
Spatial data quality elements 113

Housing 115
Annual payment for electricity 115
Annual payment for fuels 115
Annual payment for water and other municipal services 116
Annual property taxes 117
Bedrooms 117
Condominium fees 118
Condominium status 119
Core housing need 120
Dwelling condition 120
Household maintainer 121
Housing suitability 122
Monthly mortgage payment 123
Owner household 124
Owner's major payments 125
Period of construction 125
Persons per room 125
Presence of mortgage payments 126
Primary household maintainer 127
Property taxes included in mortgage payments 128
Rent, gross 128
Rent, monthly cash 128
Renter household 129
Rooms 130
Shelter cost 130
Shelter-cost-to-income ratio 131
Subsidized housing 132
Tenure 133
Value (owner estimated) 134

Immigration and ethnocultural diversity 135
Activities of daily living 135
Admission category 137
Age at immigration 138
Applicant type 139
Citizenship 139

Ethnic origin 141
Generation status 142
Immigrant 143
Immigrant status 144
Knowledge of non-official languages 145
Period of immigration 146
Place of birth 146
Place of birth of father 148
Place of birth of mother 149
Population group 150
Visible minority 151
Year of immigration 153

Income 155
Adjusted after-tax income 155
Adjusted market income 156
Adjusted total income 156
After-tax income 157
Basic Canada child tax benefit (CCTB) 158
Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Disability benefits 158
Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Retirement benefits 159
Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Survivor benefits 160
Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) benefits 161
Census family total income 161
Child benefits 162
Child care expenses paid 162
Child or spousal support payments 163
Composition of income 164
Contributions to Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) 165
Contributions to Employment Insurance (EI) 166
Contributions to registered pension plans (RPP) 167
Contributions to registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs) 167
Contributions to tax-free savings accounts (TFSA) 168
Disposable income for the MBM 169
Dividends, interest on bonds, deposits and savings certificates, and other investment income 170
Earner or employment income recipient 170
Economic family after-tax income decile group 171
Economic family total income 172
Employment income 172
Employment income decile group 173
Employment Insurance (EI) – Other benefits 174
Employment Insurance (EI) – Regular benefits 175

Employment Insurance (EI) benefits 176
Goods and services tax (GST) credit and harmonized sales tax (HST) credit 177
Government transfers 178
Government transfers not included elsewhere 179
Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) and spousal allowance 180
Household total income 180
Income decile group 180
Income sources 181
Income status 181
Income taxes 181
Investment income 182
Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT) 183
Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT) 185
Low-income gap 187
Low-income gap ratio 188
Low-income measure, after tax (LIM-AT) 189
Low-income measure, before tax (LIM-BT) 191
Low-income measure of market income (LIM-MI) 193
Low-income status 193
Major source of income 195
Market Basket Measure (MBM) 195
Market income 197
Market income not included elsewhere 198
National child benefit supplement (NCBS) 199
Net capital gains or losses 200
Net farm income 201
Net federal income tax 202
Net non-farm income from unincorporated business or professional practice 203
Net self-employment income 203
Non-discretionary spending for the MBM 204
Old Age Security pension (OAS) 206
Old Age Security pension (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) 206
Other government transfers 207
Other income from government sources 208
Other money income 208
Prevalence of low income 209
Private retirement income 210
Provincial and territorial child benefits 211
Provincial and territorial income taxes 212
Retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities, including those from RRSPs and RRIFs 212
Severity of low income 212

Social assistance benefits 213
Total income 213
Total income decile group 217
Total income plus net capital gains or losses 218
Universal child care benefit (UCCB) 218
Wages, salaries and commissions 219
Workers' compensation benefits 220
Working income tax benefit (WITB) 221

Journey to work 223
Commuting destination 223
Commuting duration 224
Commuting vehicle occupancy 224
Distance from home to work 225
Main mode of commuting 226
Mode of transportation 227
Time arriving at work 228
Time leaving for work 228
Workplace location 229

Labour 231
Class of worker 231
Employed person 232
Employment rate 233
Experienced labour force person 234
Full-time or part-time weeks worked during the reference year 235
Hours worked for pay or in self-employment 235
Incorporation status 236
Industry (based on the North American Industry Classification System [NAICS] 2012) 237
Inexperienced labour force 238
Labour force 239
Labour force status 240
Labour force status (based on 1971 concepts) 241
Looked for paid work in past four weeks (full- or part-time work) 242
New job to start in four weeks or less from reference week 243
Not in the labour force 243
Occupation (based on the National Occupational Classification [NOC] 2016) 244
On temporary lay-off or absent from job or business 245
Participation rate 246
Person with recent work experience 247
Place of work status 248

Reasons unable to start a job 249
Unemployed 250
Unemployment rate 251
Weeks worked during the reference year 252
When last worked for pay or in self-employment 253
Work activity during the reference year 253

Language 255
First official language spoken 255
Home language 255
Home language – Part A 255
Home language – Part B 256
Knowledge of official languages 256
Language of work 256
Language spoken most often at home 256
Language used most often at work 258
Mother tongue 258
Other language(s) spoken regularly at home 259
Other language(s) used regularly at work 260

Mobility and migration 263
Census division of current residence 263
Census subdivision of current residence 263
Components of migration (in and out), five years, of geographic area 263
Components of migration (in and out), one year, of geographic area 264
Location of residence five years ago 265
Location of residence one year ago 265
Mobility 1 – Census division of residence 1 year ago 266
Mobility 1 – Census metropolitan area or census agglomeration of residence 1 year ago 266
Mobility 1 – Census subdivision of residence 1 year ago 266
Mobility 1 – Census subdivision type of residence 1 year ago 266
Mobility 1 – Country of residence 1 year ago 267
Mobility 1 – Province or territory of residence 1 year ago 267
Mobility 1 – Statistical Area Classification of residence 1 year ago 267
Mobility 5 – Census division of residence 5 years ago 267
Mobility 5 – Census metropolitan area or census agglomeration of residence 5 years ago 267
Mobility 5 – Census subdivision of residence 5 years ago 267
Mobility 5 – Census subdivision type of residence 5 years ago 267
Mobility 5 – Country of residence 5 years ago 267
Mobility 5 – Province or territory of residence 5 years ago 267
Mobility 5 – Statistical Area Classification of residence 5 years ago 268

Mobility status, five years 268

Mobility status, one year 268

Province or territory of current residence 269

Type of dwelling 271

Collective dwelling 271

Dwelling 274

Household size 274

Institutional resident 275

Marginal dwelling occupied by usual residents 276

Private dwelling 277

Private dwelling occupied by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons 278

Private dwelling occupied by usual residents 278

Private dwelling, unoccupied 279

Regular dwelling 280

Structural type of dwelling 281

Tables 283

Table 1.1 Geographic areas by province and territory, 2016 Census 283

Table 1.2 Population distribution by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC), 2011 adjusted population by 2016 geography, 2011 Census 285

Table 1.3 Number of census subdivisions by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC), 2016 Census 285

Table 1.4 Census division types by province and territory, 2016 Census 286

Table 1.5 Census subdivision types by province and territory, 2016 Census 287

Table 1.6 Designated place types by province and territory, 2016 Census 292

Table 1.7 Distribution of population by size of population centre, 2011 and 2016 censuses 292

Table 1.8 Abbreviations and codes for provinces and territories, 2016 Census 293

Table 1.9 First character of the postal code^{OM} and corresponding province, territory or region 293

Table 1.10 Census metropolitan area and census agglomeration types by province and territory, 2016 Census 294

Table 1.11 Statistical Area Classification values by province and territory, 2016 Census 295

Table 1.12 Population centre type values by province and territory, 2016 Census 297

Table 1.13 Population centre size class values by province and territory, 2016 Census 298

Table 4.1 Summary of low-income lines in the 2016 Census of Population Program 299

Table 4.2 Low-income measures thresholds (LIM-AT and LIM-BT) for private households of Canada, 2015 299

Table 4.3 Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT – 1992 base) for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015 300

Table 4.4 Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT – 1992 base) for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015 300

Table 4.5 Market Basket Measure (MBM) thresholds for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015 301

Table 4.6 Mortgage-free owners' difference in expenditures for the Market Basket Measure (MBM), 2015 304
Table 6.1 'Journey to work' data available for each place of work status 307
Table 6.2 Values for the labour force status variable 308

Figures 309
Figure 1.1 Hierarchy of standard geographic areas for dissemination, 2016 Census 309
Figure 1.2 Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) hierarchy 310
Figure 1.3 Statistical Area Classification (SAC) hierarchy 310
Figure 1.4 Example of a cartographic boundary file and a digital boundary file (provinces and territories) 311
Figure 1.5 Example of census consolidated subdivisions (CCSs) and census subdivisions (CSDs) 311
Figure 1.6 Delineation Core rule 312
Figure 1.7 Forward commuting flow rule 313
Figure 1.8 Reverse commuting flow rule 314
Figure 1.9 Spatial contiguity rule 315
Figure 1.10 Historical comparability rule 316
Figure 1.11 Example of a merged census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA) 317
Figure 1.12 Example of a census metropolitan area or a census agglomeration, showing core, secondary core, fringe and rural area 318
Figure 1.13 Example of data retrieval with user-defined boundaries 319
Figure 1.14 Example of a map projection and unprojected coordinates 320
Figure 1.15 Example of blockface and dissemination block representative points 321
Figure 1.16 Manual adjustment rule 322
Figure 3.1 Family membership and family status 323
Figure 3.2 Overview of the census family and economic family variables 324
Figure 3.3 Mother tongue and home language classification 325
Figure 3.3A Aboriginal languages 326
Figure 3.3B Afro-Asiatic languages 327
Figure 3.3C Indo-European languages 328
Figure 3.3D Sino-Tibetan languages 329
Figure 5.1 Immigrants, non-immigrants and non-permanent residents, by place of birth and generation status 330
Figure 5.2 Immigrants, non-immigrants and non-permanent residents, by citizenship 331
Figure 5.3 Aboriginal identity population in the Census of Population 332
Figure 5.4 Admission category classification 333
Figure 6.1 Population and labour force status components, 2016 Census of Population 334
Figure 6.2 Relationship between the category of mobility status and the 2016 Census of Population question on place of residence one year ago 335
Figure 6.3 Relationship between the category of mobility status and the 2016 Census of Population question on place of residence five years ago 336

Appendices 337
Appendix 2.0 Census of Population and National Household Survey questionnaire content and derived variables since Confederation 337
Appendix 3.0 Mother tongue and home language, classifications from 2016, 2011 and 2006 343
Appendix 4.0 Derived Statistics 350
Appendix 4.1 Components of income in 2015 352
Appendix 5.1 Ethnic origins disseminated from 2016, 2011 and 2006 357
Appendix 5.2 Places of birth disseminated in the 2016 Census of Population 365
Appendix 5.3 Countries of citizenship disseminated in the 2016 Census of Population 374
Appendix 5.4 Aboriginal ancestries disseminated in the 2016 Census of Population 381
Appendix 5.5 Admission categories disseminated in the 2016 Census of Population 384
Appendix 5.6 Knowledge of non-official languages, classifications from 2016, 2011 and 2006 388
Appendix 6.1 Comparability of labour force status data from the 2016 Census of Population (long-form questionnaire) and the Labour Force Survey 395
Appendix 6.2 Major field of study – Classification based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016 codes 397
Appendix 6.3 Language of work, classifications from 2016, 2011 and 2006 456
Index 463

Introduction

The *Dictionary, Census of Population, 2016* provides definitions for all the concepts, variables and geographic terms of the 2016 Census.

The dictionary covers 14 different broad topics (e.g., education; families, households and marital status; and age and sex). Terms and variables are listed alphabetically by specific characteristic within each topic section.

The dictionary presents information in the following format:

Definition

This is a comprehensive definition of each variable or term used in all census products. Every attempt has been made to ensure that this jargon-free definition is more accessible to the general public.

A variable is a subject about which information can be retrieved from the census database.

Statistical unit(s)

This is the unit of observation or measurement for which data are collected or derived (e.g., person or household).

Classification(s)

This identifies the organized structure by which the responses or elements are grouped.

Reported in

This heading indicates the census years in which the term or variable was used, and whether the data were collected from the entire population or from a sample. If the data were collected from a sample, the sampling fraction is given.

Reported for

This heading gives information on the population or subpopulation for which the data are provided.

Question number(s)

This heading indicates the survey question number(s) to which a variable is associated.

There are direct variables, derived variables and coded variables. For example, the question on the sex of respondents has two response categories: male and female. These categories correspond exactly to the information in the database. For this reason, 'Sex' is said to be a direct variable. By contrast, 'First official language spoken' is referred to as a derived variable because the information in the database does not correspond to a single question on the questionnaire. Rather, it is derived from the responses to the questions on knowledge of official languages, mother tongue and language spoken most often at home.

Coded variables are written responses that have been classified according to a predetermined classification system.

Responses

This heading shows the response categories or classifications of the variable. 'Not applicable' appears under this heading in the case of geographic terms.

Remarks

This heading provides any additional detailed information (e.g., on the comparability with previous censuses and other surveys) that may help users to better understand and use the data.

List of new variables and terms

The 2016 Census consisted largely of the same content as the 2011 Census and 2011 National Household Survey (NHS). However, the *Dictionary, Census of Population, 2016* includes some new variables and terms. They are:

Geography

- Aggregate dissemination area (ADA)

Housing

- Core housing need

Immigration and ethnocultural diversity

- Admission category
- Applicant type

Income

- Basic Canada child tax benefit (CCTB)
- Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Disability benefits
- Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Retirement benefits
- Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Survivor benefits
- Contributions to Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP)
- Contributions to Employment Insurance (EI)
- Contributions to registered pension plans (RPP)
- Contributions to registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs)
- Contributions to tax-free savings accounts (TFSA)
- Employment income decile group
- Employment Insurance (EI) – Other benefits
- Employment Insurance (EI) – Regular benefits
- Goods and services tax (GST) credit and harmonized sales tax (HST) credit
- Government transfers not included elsewhere
- Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) and spousal allowance
- Income sources
- Low-income gap ratio
- National child benefit supplement (NCBS)
- Net federal income tax
- Old Age Security pension (OAS)
- Provincial and territorial child benefits
- Provincial and territorial income taxes
- Social assistance benefits
- Total income decile group
- Universal child care benefit (UCCB)
- Workers' compensation benefits
- Working income tax benefit (WITB)

Labour

- Industry (based on the North American Industry Classification System [NAICS] 2012)
- Occupation (based on the National Occupational Classification [NOC] 2016)

List of deleted and discontinued variables and terms

The following entries, which were included in the *2011 Census Dictionary* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2011/ref/dict/index-eng.cfm), Catalogue no. 98-301-X, or the *2011 NHS Dictionary* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/nhs-enm/2011/ref/dict/index-eng.cfm), Catalogue no. 99-000-X, have been discontinued for the 2016 Census.

Education

- Major field of study - ISCED and CIP Canada concordances
- Major field of study (based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2000, historical)
- Postsecondary certificates, diplomas and degrees, types obtained

Families, households and marital status

- Census family composition
- Introduction to the family universe
- Introduction to the population in private households universe
- Introduction to the private households universe
- Relationship to household reference person (Person 1)

Immigration and ethnocultural diversity

- Religion

Income

- Adjusted market income
- Low-income measure of market income (LIM-MI)
- Severity of low income

Labour

- Industry (based on the North American Industry Classification System [NAICS] 2007)
- Occupation (based on the National Occupational Classification - Statistics [NOC–S] 2006)
- Occupation (based on the National Occupational Classification [NOC] 2011)

Mobility and Migration

- Census division of current residence
- Census subdivision of current residence
- Province or territory of current residence

Population and dwelling

- Introduction to the private dwellings occupied by usual residents universe

List of revised variables and terms

The following variables and terms were revised for the 2016 census.

Aboriginal

- The term 'Area of residence - Inuit Nunangat' is not used for the 2016 Census of Population. Refer to the definition of 'Residence inside or outside Inuit Nunangat.'
- The term 'Area of residence - On reserve' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Residence on or off reserve.'

Age and Sex

- The term 'Date of birth' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Age.'

Education

- The term 'Attendance at school' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'School attendance'.
- The term 'Major field of study (based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2011)' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Major field of study (based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016)'.
- The term 'Secondary (high) school diploma or equivalent' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Secondary (high) school diploma or equivalency certificate'.

Families, households and marital status

- The term 'Presence of children' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Child presence any age.'

Housing

- The term 'Owner's major payments' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Shelter cost.'
- The term 'Rent, gross' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Shelter cost.'
- The term 'Value of dwelling' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Value (owner estimated).'

Income

- The term 'Dividends, interest on bonds, deposits and savings certificates, and other investment income' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Investment income.'
- The term 'Earnings or employment income' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Employment income.'
- The term 'Income decile group' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Economic family after-tax income decile group.'
- The term 'Income status' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Low-income status.'
- The term 'Income tax paid' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Income taxes.'
- The term 'Other income from government sources' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Other government transfers.'
- The term 'Other money income' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Market income not included elsewhere.'
- The term 'Retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities, including those from RRSPs and RRIFs' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Private retirement income.'

Journey to work

- The term 'Commuting distance' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Distance from home to work'.
- The term 'Commuting type' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Commuting destination.'
- The term 'Mode of transportation' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Main mode of commuting.'
- The term 'Vehicle occupancy' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Commuting vehicle occupancy'

Labour

- The term 'Employed' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Employed person.'

Language

- The term 'Home language' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Language spoken most often at home' and the definition of 'Other language(s) spoken regularly at home.'
- The term 'Home language – Part A' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Language spoken most often at home.'
- The term 'Home language – Part B' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Other language(s) spoken regularly at home.'
- The term 'Language of work' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Language used most often at work' and the definition of 'Other language(s) used regularly at work.'

Mobility and Migration

- The term 'Mobility 1 - Components of migration (in and out)' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Components of migration (in and out), one year, of geographic area.'
- The term 'Mobility 5 - Components of migration (in and out)' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Components of migration (in and out), five years, of geographic area.'
- The term 'Mobility 1 - Census division of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence one year ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 1 - Census metropolitan area or census agglomeration of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence one year ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 1 - Census subdivision of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence one year ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 1 - Census subdivision type of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence one year ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 1 - Country of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence one year ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 1 - Province or territory of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence one year ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 1 - Statistical Area Classification of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence one year ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 5 - Census division of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence five years ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 5 - Census metropolitan area or census agglomeration of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence five years ago.'

- The term 'Mobility 5 - Census subdivision of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence five years ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 5 - Census subdivision type of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence five years ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 5 - Country of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence five years ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 5 - Province or territory of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence five years ago.'
- The term 'Mobility 5 - Statistical Area Classification of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Location of residence five years ago.'

List of abbreviations and acronyms

Provinces and territories

- PR or Prov. - Province
- Terr. - Territory
- N.L. - Newfoundland and Labrador
- P.E.I. - Prince Edward Island
- N.S. - Nova Scotia
- N.B. - New Brunswick
- Que. - Quebec
- Ont. - Ontario
- Man. - Manitoba
- Sask. - Saskatchewan
- Alta. - Alberta
- B.C. - British Columbia
- Y.T. - Yukon
- N.W.T. - Northwest Territories
- Nvt. - Nunavut

Census geographic areas

- ADA - Aggregate dissemination area
- CA - Census agglomeration
- CAR - Census agricultural region
- CCS - Census consolidated subdivision
- CD - Census division
- CMA - Census metropolitan area
- CSD - Census subdivision
- CT - Census tract
- DA - Dissemination area
- DB - Dissemination block
- DPL - Designated place
- ER - Economic region
- FED - Federal electoral district
- FSA - Forward sortation area©
- MIZ - Census metropolitan area influenced zone
- POPCTR - Population centre
- PR or Prov. - Province
- Terr. - Territory

Census division types

- CDR - Census division / Division de recensement
- CT - County / Comté
- CTY - County
- DIS - District
- DM - District municipality
- MRC - Municipalité régionale de comté
- RD - Regional district
- REG - Region
- RM - Regional municipality
- TÉ - Territoire équivalent
- TER - Territory / Territoire
- UC - United counties

Census subdivision types

- C - City / Cité
- CC - Chartered community
- CG - Community government
- CN - Crown colony / Colonie de la couronne
- COM - Community
- CT - Canton (municipalité de)
- CU - Cantons unis (municipalité de)
- CV - City / Ville
- CY - City
- DM - District municipality
- HAM - Hamlet
- ID - Improvement district
- IGD - Indian government district
- IM - Island municipality
- IRI - Indian reserve / Réserve indienne
- LGD - Local government district
- LOT - Township and royalty
- M - Municipality / Municipalité
- MD - Municipal district
- MÉ - Municipalité
- MU - Municipality
- NH - Northern hamlet
- NL - Nisga'a land
- NO - Unorganized / Non organisé
- NV - Northern village
- P - Parish / Paroisse (municipalité de)
- PE - Paroisse (municipalité de)/
- RCR - Rural community / Communauté rurale
- RDA - Regional district electoral area
- RG - Region
- RGM - Regional municipality
- RM - Rural municipality
- RV - Resort village
- S-É - Indian settlement / Établissement indien
- SA - Special area
- SC - Subdivision of county municipality / Subdivision municipalité de comté
- SÉ - Settlement / Établissement
- SET - Settlement

- SG - Self-government / Autonomie gouvernementale
- SM - Specialized municipality
- SNO - Subdivision of unorganized / Subdivision non organisée
- SV - Summer village
- T - Town
- TC - Terres réservées aux Cris
- TI - Terre inuite
- TK - Terres réservées aux Naskapis
- TL - Teslin land
- TP - Township
- TV - Town / Ville
- V - Ville
- VC - Village cri
- VK - Village naskapi
- VL - Village
- VN - Village nordique

Designated place types

- CFA Class IV area - Nova Scotia
- DMU Dissolved municipality - Ontario, Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta
- DPL Designated place - Newfoundland and Labrador
- IRI Indian reserve / Réserve indienne - British Columbia
- IST Island trust - British Columbia
- LNC Localité non constituée - Quebec
- LSB Local service board - Ontario
- LSD Local service district / District de services locaux - New Brunswick
- LUD Local urban district - Manitoba
- MDI Municipalité dissoute - Quebec
- MDP Municipal defined places - Ontario
- MET Métis settlement - Alberta
- NCM Northern community - Manitoba
- NS Northern settlement - Saskatchewan
- NVL Nisga'a village - British Columbia
- OHM Organized hamlet - Saskatchewan
- RPC Retired population centre / Centre de population retiré - Newfoundland and Labrador, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Quebec, Ontario, Saskatchewan, British Columbia
- SE Aboriginal settlement - Yukon
- UNP Unincorporated place - Alberta, British Columbia
- UUC Unincorporated urban centre - Manitoba

Others

- % - Percentage
- AANDC - Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada
- AMF - Area master file
- APS - Aboriginal Peoples Survey
- BFDF - Block-face data file
- CANCEIS - Canadian Census Edit and Imputation System
- CARTLIB - Cartographic library
- CBF - Cartographic boundary file
- CMHC - Canada Housing and Mortgage Corporation
- DBF - Digital boundary file
- DCF - Digital cartographic file
- DCW - Digital chart of the world
- Diff. - Difference
- E & I - Edit and imputation
- GIS - Geographic information system
- GNBC - Geographic Names Board of Canada
- GRS - Geodetic reference system
- km2 - Square kilometre
- m - Metre
- MP - Member of Parliament
- n.e.c. - Not elsewhere classified
- n.i.e. - Not included elsewhere
- n.o.s. Not otherwise specified
- NAD - North American Datum
- NGB - National Geographic Base
- NGD - National Geographic Database
- NRCan - Natural Resources Canada
- NTDB - National Topographic Database
- PCCF - Postal code conversion file
- PCFRF - Postal codes by federal riding file
- QC - Quality control
- RNF - Road network file
- RO - Representation Order
- SAC - Statistical Area Classification
- SDI - Spatial Data Infrastructure
- SGC - Standard Geographical Classification
- UN - United Nations
- UTM - Universal transverse mercator
- vs - Versus

Aboriginal peoples

Aboriginal ancestry

Definition

'Aboriginal ancestry' refers to whether a person has ancestry associated with the Aboriginal peoples of Canada, that is, First Nations (North American Indian), Métis, and Inuit. Aboriginal peoples of Canada are defined in the *Constitution Act, 1982*, Section 35 (2) as including the Indian, Inuit and Métis peoples of Canada. Ancestry refers to the ethnic or cultural origins of the person's ancestors, an ancestor being usually more distant than a grandparent. A person can have more than one ethnic or cultural origin.

Users should be aware that the estimates associated with this variable are more affected than most by the incomplete enumeration of certain Indian reserves and Indian settlements in the Census of Population.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Aboriginal ancestry (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=279277)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[1] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 17

Responses

Information on Aboriginal ancestry is collected in Question 17: Ethnic origin. In Question 17, respondents were asked to specify as many origins (ancestries) as applicable. Four lines were provided for write-in responses and up to six ethnic origins (ancestries) were retained. Aboriginal ancestry responses can be presented in different ways.

Remarks

Aboriginal respondents to the Census of Population received one of two different questionnaires: the 2A-L or the 2A-R. Persons living on Indian reserves and Indian settlements were enumerated with the 2016 2A-R questionnaire. On both the 2A-L and 2A-R questionnaires, the Ethnic origin question asked: "What were the ethnic or cultural origins of this person's ancestors?" and the following notes were provided:

- This question collects information on the ancestral origins of the population and provides information about the composition of Canada's diverse population.
- An ancestor is usually more distant than a grandparent.
- Specify as many origins as applicable using capital letters.

---

[1] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

On the 2A-L questionnaire, the following ethnic origins were provided:

Canadian, English, Chinese, French, East Indian, Italian, German, Scottish, Cree, Mi'kmaq, Salish, Métis, Inuit, Filipino, Irish, Dutch, Ukrainian, Polish, Portuguese, Vietnamese, Korean, Jamaican, Greek, Iranian, Lebanese, Mexican, Somali, Colombian, etc.

On the 2A-R questionnaire, the list of examples was different:

Cree, Ojibway, Mi'kmaq, Salish, Dene, Blackfoot, Inuit, Métis, Canadian, French, English, German, etc.

Additional instructions were provided to respondents in the *2016 Census of Population long-form Guide*:

- This question refers to the ethnic or cultural origin or origins of a person's ancestors. Other than Aboriginal persons, most people can trace their origins to their ancestors who first came to this continent. Ancestry should not be confused with citizenship or nationality.
- For all persons, report the specific ethnic or cultural group or groups to which their ancestors belonged, not the language they spoke.
- For persons of East Indian or South Asian origins, report a specific origin or origins. Do not report "Indian." For example, report "East Indian from India," "East Indian from Guyana," or indicate the specific group, such as "Punjabi" or "Tamil."
- For persons with Aboriginal ancestors, report a specific origin or origins. For example, report "Cree," "Mi'kmaq," "Ojibway," "Métis," or "North American Indian." Do not report "Indian."

For additional information on the collection and dissemination of ethnic origin data, refer to the *Ethnic Origin Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/008/98-500-x2016008-eng.cfm).

There are different ways to define the Aboriginal population in Canada. The 2016 Census of Population provides information on Aboriginal ancestry, Aboriginal group, Aboriginal identity, Registered or Treaty Indian status and Membership in a First Nation or Indian band.

Users should be aware that the estimates associated with this variable are more affected than most by the incomplete enumeration of certain Indian reserves and Indian settlements in the Census of Population.

For additional information on the collection and dissemination of Aboriginal data, including incompletely enumerated reserves and settlements, refer to the *Aboriginal Peoples Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/009/98-500-x2016009-eng.cfm) and the *Aboriginal Peoples Technical Report, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-307/index-eng.cfm).

Aboriginal group

Definition

'Aboriginal group' refers to whether the person is First Nations (North American Indian), Métis or Inuk (Inuit). These are the three groups defined as the Aboriginal peoples of Canada in the *Constitution Act, 1982*, Section 35 (2). A person may be in more than one of these three specific groups.

First Nations (North American Indian) includes Status and non-Status Indians.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Aboriginal group (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=246585)
Aboriginal group response (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=246688)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[2] (30% sample); 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 18

Responses

Respondents could reply 'Yes, First Nations (North American Indian),' 'Yes, Métis,' 'Yes, Inuk (Inuit)' or 'No, not an Aboriginal person' by checking off the appropriate mark-in circle in Question 18.

Remarks

In the 2016 Census of Population, Question 18 asked 'Is this person an Aboriginal person, that is, First Nations (North American Indian), Métis or Inuk (Inuit)?'

A note accompanying the question stated that:

First Nations (North American Indian) includes Status and Non-Status Indians.

As well, additional instructions were provided to respondents in the *2016 Census of Population Long-form Guide*:

- Answer this question regardless of whether or not this person is an Aboriginal person of North America.
- Aboriginal people are usually those with ancestors who resided in North America prior to European contact and who identify with one of the three Aboriginal groups listed on the questionnaire - First Nations (North American Indian), Métis and Inuit
- Persons who consider themselves to be East Indian or Asian Indian, or who have ethnic roots on the subcontinent of India, should respond 'No' to this question.
- Individuals who refer to themselves as Métis in the context of mixed ancestry, but who do not have North American Aboriginal ancestry, for example, those from Africa, the Caribbean and South America should respond 'No.'

Users should be aware that the estimates associated with this variable are more affected than most by the incomplete enumeration of certain Indian reserves and Indian settlements in the Census of Population.

For additional information on the collection and dissemination of Aboriginal data, including incompletely enumerated reserves and settlements, refer to the *Aboriginal Peoples Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/009/98-500-x2016009-eng.cfm) and the *Aboriginal Peoples Technical Report, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-307/index-eng.cfm).

---

[2] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Aboriginal identity

Definition

'Aboriginal identity' refers to whether the person identified with the Aboriginal peoples of Canada. This includes those who are First Nations (North American Indian), Métis or Inuk (Inuit) and/or those who are Registered or Treaty Indians (that is, registered under the *Indian Act* of Canada), and/or those who have membership in a First Nation or Indian band. Aboriginal peoples of Canada are defined in the *Constitution Act*, 1982, Section 35 (2) as including the Indian, Inuit and Métis peoples of Canada.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Aboriginal identity (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=246776)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[3] (30% sample); 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 18, 20 and 21

Responses

Aboriginal identity is derived from data collected in three questions: Aboriginal group (Question 18); Registered or Treaty Indian status (Question 20); and Membership in a First Nation or Indian band (Question 21). In Question 18, respondents could respond 'Yes, First Nations (North American Indian),' 'Yes, Métis,' 'Yes, Inuk (Inuit)' or 'No, not an Aboriginal person' by checking off the appropriate mark-in circle. In Question 20, respondents could respond 'No' or 'Yes, Status Indian (Registered or Treaty).' In Question 21, respondents could respond 'No' or 'Yes, member of a First Nation/Indian band.'

Remarks

Aboriginal identity is a derived variable. For more information on the input variables for the Aboriginal identity variable in the 2016 Census of Population, refer to the definitions for Aboriginal group, Registered or Treaty Indian status and Membership in a First Nation or Indian band.

Users should be aware that the estimates associated with this variable are more affected than most by the incomplete enumeration of certain Indian reserves and Indian settlements in the Census of Population.

For additional information on the collection and dissemination of Aboriginal data, including incompletely enumerated reserves and settlements, refer to the *Aboriginal Peoples Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/009/98-500-x2016009-eng.cfm) and the *Aboriginal Peoples Technical Report, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-307/index-eng.cfm).

---

[3] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Area of residence - Inuit Nunangat

The term 'Area of residence - Inuit Nunangat' is not used for the 2016 Census of Population. Refer to the definition of 'Residence inside or outside Inuit Nunangat.'

Area of residence - On reserve

The term 'Area of residence: On reserve' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Residence on or off reserve.'

Membership in a First Nation or Indian band

Definition

'Membership in a First Nation or Indian band' refers to whether or not a person is a member of a First Nation or Indian band. An Indian band is defined as a body of Indians for whose collective use and benefit lands have been set apart or money is held by the Crown, or who have been declared to be a band for the purpose of the *Indian Act*. Many Indian bands have elected to call themselves a First Nation and have changed their band name to reflect this. With the 1985 amendment to the *Indian Act* of Canada (Bill C-31), many Indian bands exercised the right to establish their own membership code, whereby it was not always necessary for a band member to be a Registered Indian according to the *Indian Act*.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Membership in a First Nation or Indian band (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=246788)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[4] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 21

Responses

Respondents could reply 'Yes, member of a First Nation/Indian band' or 'No' by checking off the appropriate mark-in circle in Question 21. If a respondent replied 'Yes, member of a First Nation/Indian band,' they were asked to specify the name of their First Nation or Indian Band.

---

[4] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Remarks

The 2016 Census of Population Membership in a First Nations or Indian band question asked "Is this person a member of a First Nation/Indian Band?" and the following notes were provided: If 'Yes,' which First Nation/ Indian band? For example, Musqueam Indian Band, Sturgeon Lake First Nation, Atikamekw of Manawan.

Users should be aware that the estimates associated with this variable are more affected than most by the incomplete enumeration of certain Indian reserves and Indian settlements in the Census of Population. Furthermore, estimates for specific First Nations and Indian Bands reflect self-reported responses to the Census question and may differ from the administrative records collected by the First Nations and Indian Bands themselves.

As a result, users of the detailed First Nation/Indian band data from the 2016 Census should be aware that these data should not be used as official estimates of the First Nations and Indian bands in Canada. Users should refer to the individual First Nations or Indian Bands for counts of their members. For more information on the First Nations and Indian bands in Canada, refer to *First Nations Profiles, Indigenous and Northern Affairs Canada* (http://fnp-ppn.aandc-aadnc.gc.ca/fnp/Main/index.aspx?lang=eng).

Data on detailed First Nation/Indian band membership from the 2016 Census will be available by request only.

For additional information on the collection and dissemination of Aboriginal data, including incompletely enumerated reserves and settlements, refer to the *Aboriginal Peoples Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/009/98-500-x2016009-eng.cfm) and the *Aboriginal Peoples Technical Report, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-307/index-eng.cfm).

Registered or Treaty Indian status

Definition

'Registered or Treaty Indian status' refers to whether or not a person is a Registered or Treaty Indian. Registered Indians are persons who are registered under the *Indian Act* of Canada. Treaty Indians are persons who belong to a First Nation or Indian band that signed a treaty with the Crown. Registered or Treaty Indians are sometimes also called Status Indians.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Registered or Treaty Indian status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=246796)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[5] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 20

---

[5] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

Respondents could reply 'No' or 'Yes, Status Indian (Registered or Treaty)' by checking off the appropriate mark-in circle in Question 20.

Remarks

The 2016 Census of Population Registered or Treaty Indian status question asked: "Is this person a Status Indian (Registered or Treaty Indian as defined by the *Indian Act* of Canada)?"

As well, additional instructions were provided to respondents in the *2016 Census of Population Long-form Guide*:

Mark "Yes, Status Indian (Registered or Treaty)" for persons who:

- are Registered Indians under the *Indian Act*;
- are Treaty Indians, only if they are Registered Indians under the *Indian Act*;
- have become registered since June 1985, when Bill C-31 changed the *Indian Act*.

All other persons should mark "No" including persons who may be entitled to register under provisions of the *Indian Act*, but for some reason have not.

Users should be aware that the estimates associated with this variable are more affected than most by the incomplete enumeration of certain Indian reserves and Indian settlements in the Census of Population.

For additional information on the collection and dissemination of Aboriginal data, including incompletely enumerated Indian reserves and Indian settlements, refer to *Aboriginal Peoples Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/009/98-500-x2016009-eng.cfm) and to *Aboriginal Peoples Technical Report, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-307/index-eng.cfm).

Residence inside or outside Inuit Nunangat

Definition

'Residence inside or outside Inuit Nunangat' refers to whether the person's usual place of residence is in a census subdivision (CSD) that is inside or outside Inuit Nunangat.

Inuit Nunangat is the homeland of the Inuit of Canada. It includes the communities located in the four Inuit regions: Nunatsiavut (Northern coastal Labrador), Nunavik (Northern Quebec), the territory of Nunavut and the Inuvialuit region of the Northwest Territories. These regions collectively encompass the area traditionally occupied by Inuit in Canada.

Outside Inuit Nunangat includes all CSDs in Canada not located in the four Inuit regions of Inuit Nunangat.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Residence inside or outside Inuit Nunangat (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=250617)

Reported in

Not applicable

Reported for

Not applicable

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For additional information on the collection and dissemination of Aboriginal data, including incompletely enumerated reserves and settlements, refer to the *Aboriginal Peoples Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/009/98-500-x2016009-eng.cfm) and the *Aboriginal Peoples Technical Report, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-307/index-eng.cfm).

Residence on or off reserve

Definition

'Residence on or off reserve' refers to whether the person's usual place of residence is in a census subdivision (CSD) that is defined as 'on reserve' or 'off reserve'.

On reserve includes six census subdivision (CSD) types legally affiliated with First Nations or Indian bands, i.e., Indian reserve (IRI), Indian settlement (S-É) (except for the four Indian settlements of Champagne Landing 10, Klukshu, Two Mile and Two and One-Half Mile Village, and Kloo Lake located in Yukon), Indian government district (IGD), *terres réservées aux Cris* (TC), *terres réservées aux Naskapis* (TK) and Nisga'a land (NL).

Off reserve includes all CSDs in Canada not defined as on reserve.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Residence on or off reserve (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=250614)

Reported in

Not applicable

Reported for

Not applicable

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For additional information on the collection and dissemination of Aboriginal data, including incompletely enumerated reserves and settlements, refer to the *Aboriginal Peoples Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/009/98-500-x2016009-eng.cfm) and the *Aboriginal Peoples Technical Report, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-307/index-eng.cfm).

Age and sex

Age

Definition

'Age' refers to the age of a person (or subject) of interest at last birthday (or relative to a specified, well-defined reference date).

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Age categories by five-year age groups (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=61988)

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0 regarding date of birth and age.

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question 3

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

In 1991 and earlier censuses, the components of date of birth (day, month and year of birth) were either not all asked on the questionnaire (1971 and earlier) or not retained for dissemination (1981 to 1991). For example, in 1971 and 1976, the question on date of birth was answered in groups of months: January to May or June to December. In 1961 and 1966, respondents were only asked to state their age. In 1961, published data for single years of age were graduated (or smoothed) within each five-year age group to counteract the tendency towards 'heaping' at certain specific ages. In 1966, this was not done.

Date of birth

The definition 'Date of birth' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Age.'

Person

Definition

'Person' refers to an individual and is the unit of analysis for most social statistics programmes.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

All censuses

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Sex

Definition

'Sex' refers to whether the person is male or female.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Sex (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=62207)

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 2

Responses

Male; Female

Remarks

Not applicable

Usual place of residence

Definition

"Usual place of residence in Canada" refers to the dwelling in which the person usually lives. It is used to identify the person as a member of a particular household and, potentially, family (depending on the composition of the household).

A person is considered to be a member of the household at their usual place of residence, only.

For persons with one residence, that residence is their usual place of residence.

For persons with no residence, their usual place of residence is where they stayed on some specified date.

For persons with more than one residence in Canada, their usual place of residence is the place where the person spends the major part of the year, with the following exceptions.

- The usual residence of spouses or common-law partners who stay elsewhere while working or studying is the residence where their family lives, if they return periodically.
- The usual residence of students is that of their parents, if they return to live with their parents during the year even if they live elsewhere while attending school or working at a summer job.
- The usual residence of persons who have lived in an institutional collective dwelling for six months or more is the institutional collective dwelling in which they currently reside. Institutional Collective dwellings include correctional institutions, hospitals, nursing homes, chronic and long-term care hospitals and related institutions. The usual residence of persons who have lived in an institutional collective dwelling for less than six months is the private dwelling to which they can return. If they do not have a private dwelling to which they can return, then the institutional collective dwelling is their usual place of residence.
- For persons who spend equal time at each residence (as in some cases of joint custody), their usual place of residence is determined by where they stayed on some specified date.

For persons with a residence in Canada and a residence outside Canada, their Canadian residence is their usual place of residence.

Canadian government employees, including Canadian Armed Forces personnel, residing outside Canada for all of the reference period are out of scope for most surveys. The census, which does include them, determines a geographic location for their usual place of residence using the address they used for election purposes or their last permanent address.

In the context of the Census of Population, person refers to Canadian citizens, landed immigrants (permanent residents), persons asking for refugee status (refugee claimants), persons from another country with a work or study permit and family members living here with them. Foreign residents are excluded.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961.

Reported for

Not applicable

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The concept of usual place of residence is necessary to ensure that residents of Canada are counted once and only once. The use of this concept means that the Canadian census is a *de jure* census, as opposed to a *de facto* census. Thus, individuals are counted at their usual place of residence, regardless of where they are found on the reference day. The *de jure* method has been used since 1871.

Agriculture

Census farm

Definition

Refers to a farm, ranch or other agricultural operation that produces at least one of the following products intended for sale: crops, livestock, poultry, animal products, greenhouse or nursery products, Christmas trees, mushrooms, sod, honey or bees, and maple syrup products. Also included are feedlots, greenhouses, mushroom houses and nurseries; farms producing Christmas trees, fur, game (animals and birds), sod, maple syrup, or fruit and berries; beekeeping and poultry hatchery operations; operations with alternative livestock (bison, deer, elk, llamas, alpacas, wild boars, etc.) or alternative poultry (ostriches, emus, etc.), when the animal or derived products are intended for sale; backyard gardens if agricultural products are intended for sale; and operations involved in boarding horses, riding stables, and stables for housing or training horses, even if no agricultural products are sold. Sales in the previous 12 months are not required, but there must be the intention to sell.

Note: For Yukon, Nunavut and the Northwest Territories only, the definition also includes operations involved in the following:

- herding wild animals (such as caribou and muskox)
- breeding sled dogs
- horse outfitting and rigging
- harvesting indigenous plants and berries.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001,[6] 1996,[7] 1991,[8] 1986,[9] 1981,[9] 1976,[10] 1971,[11] 1966,[11] 1961,[11] 1956,[12] 1951,[12] 1941,[13] 1931,[13] 1921[14]

Reported for

All farms

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Farm operator

Definition

Refers to those persons responsible for the management decisions in operating an agricultural operation. These **can be** owners, tenants or hired managers of the agricultural operation, including those responsible for management decisions pertinent to particular aspects of the farm—planting, harvesting, raising animals, marketing and sales, and making capital purchases and other financial decisions. **Not included** are accountants, lawyers, veterinarians, crop advisors, herbicide consultants, and others who make recommendations affecting the agricultural operation but are not ultimately responsible for management decisions.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

---

6. The 2001 definition of a census farm was expanded from the previous definition to include hay.
7. For the 1996 Census, a census farm was an agricultural operation that produced at least one agricultural product intended for sale. The definition was expanded from 1991 to include tree fruits or nuts, game animals, chicks, game birds, meat, commercial poultry hatcheries, and operations that produced only Christmas trees.
8. The 1991 definition of a census farm was an agricultural holding that produced at least one of the following products intended for sale: crops (field crops, tree fruits, berries or grapes, vegetables, and seed), livestock (cattle, pigs, sheep, horses and other livestock), poultry (hens, chickens, turkeys and other poultry), animal products (milk or cream, eggs, wool, and furs), greenhouse or nursery products, mushrooms, sod, honey, and maple syrup products.
9. For the 1981 and 1986 censuses, a census farm was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding with sales of agricultural products of $250 or more during the previous 12 months. Agricultural holdings with anticipated sales of $250 or more were also included.
10. For the 1976 Census, a census farm was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding of one acre or more with sales of agricultural products of $1,200 or more during the year 1975. The basic unit for which a questionnaire was collected was termed "agricultural holding." This term was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding of one acre or more with sales of agricultural products of $50 or more during the 12-month period prior to Census Day.
11. For the 1961, 1966 and 1971 censuses, a census farm was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding of one acre or more with sales of agricultural products of $50 or more during the 12-month period prior to Census Day.
12. For the 1951 and 1956 censuses, a census farm was defined as a holding on which agricultural operations were carried out and that was (a) three acres or more in size, or (b) from one to three acres in size, with agricultural production in the year prior to the census valued at $250 or more.
13. The 1931 and 1941 censuses defined a census farm as a holding of one acre or more that produced, in the year prior to the census, agricultural products valued at $50 or more, or that was under crops of any kind or used for pasturing in the census year.
14. The 1921 Census defined a census farm as a holding of one acre or more that produced, in 1920, crops of any kind valued at $50 or more.

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986,[15] 1981,[15] 1976,[15] 1971,[15] 1966,[15] 1961[15]

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Step 2 of Form 6, Census of Agriculture questionnaire

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Rural farm population

Definition

Refers to all persons living in **rural areas** who are members of the households of **farm operators**.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016,[16] 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986,[17] 1981,[17] 1976,[18] 1971,[18] 1966,[18] 1961[18]

Reported for

Rural population

---

[15] Prior to the 1991 Census, the farm operator referred to only one person who was responsible for the day-to-day decisions made in operating an agricultural holding. Because only one operator was listed for each census farm, the number of operators was the same as the number of census farms. Beginning in 1991, up to three operators per operation could be listed on the questionnaire.

[16] Prior to 2016, the rural farm population referred to all persons living in **rural areas** who were members of the households of **farm operators living on their census farms for any length of time during the 12-month period prior to the census**. The requirement for the farm operator to live on the census farm was removed for the 2016 Census of Agriculture.

[17] Prior to 1991, only one farm operator was reported per census farm. Since 1991, up to three farm operators can be reported per census farm. Because of this change, the rural farm population count now includes all persons living in rural areas on a census farm and in the households of the first, second and third operators; before 1991, the rural farm population count included all persons living in rural areas on a census farm and in the household of the first operator. It should be noted that most of the second and third operators of census farms (usually a spouse or a child) reside in the same household as the first operator and would most likely have been included in the rural farm population under the previous method of reporting.

[18] Prior to the 1981 Census, the rural farm population was defined as all persons living in rural areas in dwellings situated on census farms.

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Education

Degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry

Definition

'Degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry' refers to whether or not a person has completed a degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry.

The variable 'Degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry' is not used in any analytical or data products for the 2016 Census. Data and reference material on this variable can be obtained through custom requests.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry **(http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=304010)**

Reported in

Not applicable

Reported for

Not applicable

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Highest certificate, diploma or degree

Definition

Highest certificate, diploma or degree is the classification used in the census to measure the broader concept of 'Educational attainment.' **(http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3Var.pl?Function=DEC&Id=85134)**

This variable refers to the highest level of education that a person has successfully completed and is derived from the educational qualifications questions, which asked for all certificates, diplomas and degrees to be reported.

The general hierarchy used in deriving this variable (high school, trades, college, university) is loosely tied to the 'in-class' duration of the various types of education. At the detailed level, someone who has completed one type of certificate, diploma or degree will not necessarily have completed the credentials listed below it in the hierarchy. For example, a person with an apprenticeship or trades certificate or diploma may not have completed a high school certificate or diploma, nor does an individual with a 'master's degree' necessarily have a 'certificate or diploma above bachelor level.' Although the hierarchy may not fit all programs perfectly, it gives a general measure of educational attainment.

This variable is reported for persons aged 15 years and over in private households.

Users are advised to consult data quality comments for this variable, available in the *Education Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/013/98-500-x2016013-eng.cfm).

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Highest certificate, diploma or degree (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=306216)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[19] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 25, 26a), 26b) and 26c)

Responses

No certificate, diploma or degree; High school diploma or equivalency certificate; Certificate of Apprenticeship or Certificate of Qualification; Other trades certificate or diploma; College, CEGEP or other non-university certificate or diploma from a program of 3 months to less than 1 year; College, CEGEP or other non-university certificate or diploma from a program of 1 year to 2 years; College, CEGEP or other non-university certificate or diploma from a program of more than 2 years; University certificate or diploma below bachelor level; Bachelor's degree; University certificate or diploma above bachelor level; Degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry; Master's degree; Earned doctorate.

Remarks

The following qualifications are to be noted:

A. For this variable, the category 'High school diploma or equivalency certificate' includes persons who have completed the requirements for graduation from a secondary school or an equivalency certificate, but no postsecondary certificate, diploma or degree. Examples of secondary (high) school equivalency certificates are General Educational Development (GED) and Adult Basic Education (ABE).

B. The 'Certificate of Apprenticeship or Certificate of Qualification' category includes Journeyperson's designations. This category includes persons who have successfully completed a registered apprenticeship training program, consisting of supervised on-the-job training which may be accompanied by course work or 'in-class' technical training, and have received a Certificate of Apprenticeship (C of A) or a Diploma of Apprenticeship and/or a Certificate of Qualification (C of Q) or Journeyperson's designation (JP) in their trade. Certificates of Qualification and Journeyperson's designations in the trades are obtained after successfully passing a provincial/territorial examination. Candidates for the exam must have several years of work experience in the trade or have received their trades designation through a combination of on-the-job training and in-school training.

---

[19] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

C. The category 'Other trades certificate or diploma' includes brief trade programs completed at community colleges, institutes of technology, vocational centres, and similar institutions. Persons who obtained trades qualifications from secondary-level vocational training programs in the province of Quebec, such as the 'Diplôme d'études professionnelles'/Diploma of Vocational Studies (DEP/DVS), are included in this category.

D. College, CEGEP and other non-university certificates or diplomas are obtained from: a community college; a CEGEP (both general and technical); an institute of technology; a school of nursing; a private business school; a private or public trade school; or a vocational school. Included in this category are teaching and nursing certificates awarded by provincial departments of education, with the exception of teachers' or nurses' qualifications obtained at university-affiliated faculties of education or nursing. College certificates or diplomas of two years or more usually have a minimum entrance requirement of a secondary (high) school diploma or its equivalent.

E. University certificates or diplomas (below or above bachelor level) are awarded for non-degree programs of study completed through a university. They are often connected with professional associations in fields such as accounting, banking, insurance or public administration. If the university certificate or diploma program does not require a bachelor's degree to enrol, then it is classified as below the bachelor level. If a university certificate or diploma program normally requires a bachelor's degree as a prerequisite, then it is classified as above the bachelor level.

F. University degrees are obtained through universities and other degree-granting institutions, including degree-granting colleges.

G. Examples of postsecondary institutions include community colleges, institutes of technology, CEGEPs, schools of nursing, private or public trade schools, private business colleges, and universities.

Location of study

Definition

'Location of study' refers to either:

- the province, territory or country of the institution from which a person obtained a certificate, diploma or degree, or;
- the province, territory or country of the institution that a person attended during a specified reference period, or for a specific level of education.

In both cases, location of study refers to the location of the institution granting the certificate, diploma or degree, not the location of the person at the time he or she obtained the qualification or was attending the institution. The geographic location is specified according to boundaries current at the time the data are collected, not the boundaries at the time of study.

This variable indicates the province or territory (in Canada) or country (outside Canada) of the institution from which the highest postsecondary certificate, diploma or degree was obtained. It is only reported for individuals who had completed a certificate, diploma or degree above the secondary (high) school level.

This variable is reported for persons aged 15 years and over in private households.

For comments on data quality for this variable, refer to the *Education Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/013/98-500-x2016013-eng.cfm).

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Location of study (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117279)
Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314300)
Countries and Areas of Interest for Social Statistics - SCCAI 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=367512)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[20] (30% sample); 2006 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Coded variable: Question 28

Responses

Completed the highest certificate, diploma or degree in Canada – specify province or territory; Completed the highest certificate, diploma or degree outside Canada – specify country.

Countries outside Canada are classified according to the Standard Classification of Countries and Areas of Interest (SCCAI) 2016. A variant of this classification allows the countries to be aggregated into geographical sub-regions and geographical macro-regions.

Remarks

This variable is important in measuring the national and international flow of skilled individuals living in Canada at the time of the 2016 Census of Population, regardless of whether they are Canadian-born or immigrants.

Respondents were asked to indicate the location of study according to the boundaries in existence on May 10, 2016, the reference date for the 2016 Census of Population. For example, respondents who declared a location of study in an area which, at the time of the completion of their credential, was part of the Northwest Territories but which is now part of the territory of Nunavut were asked to write 'Nunavut.' As well, respondents who declared a location of study in an area which, at the time of the completion of their credential, was part of the USSR but which is now part of Kazakhstan were asked to write 'Kazakhstan.'

Location of study compared with province or territory of residence

Definition

'Location of study' refers to either:

- the province, territory or country of the institution from which a person obtained a certificate, diploma or degree, or;
- the province, territory or country of the institution that a person attended during a specified reference period, or for a specific level of education.

In both cases, location of study refers to the location of the institution granting the certificate, diploma or degree, not the location of the person at the time he or she obtained the qualification or was attending the institution. The geographic location is specified according to boundaries current at the time the data are collected, not the boundaries at the time of study.

---

[20] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

This is a summary variable that indicates whether the 'Location of study' of the person's highest certificate, diploma or degree was the same province or territory where the person lived at the time of the 2016 Census of Population, a different Canadian province or territory, or outside Canada. This variable is derived from 'Location of study' and 'Province or territory of current residence.' It only applies to individuals who had completed a postsecondary certificate, diploma or degree.

'Location of study outside Canada' may be further sub-classified using the Standard Classification of Countries and Areas of Interest (SCCAI). When using the SCCAI for this sub-classification, the class 'Canada' is not used.

This variable is reported for persons aged 15 years and over in private households.

For comments on data quality for this variable or 'Location of study,' refer to the *Education Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/013/98-500-x2016013-eng.cfm).

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Location of study compared with province or territory of residence (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=304006)
Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314300)
Countries and Areas of Interest for Social Statistics - SCCAI 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=367512)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[21] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question 28 and province or territory of residence

Responses

No postsecondary certificate, diploma or degree; Same as province or territory of residence; Different than province or territory of residence; Outside Canada – specify country.

Remarks

Not applicable

Major field of study - ISCED and CIP Canada concordances

The dictionary definition 'Major field of study - ISCED and CIP Canada concordances' is discontinued for the 2016 Census.

---

[21] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Major field of study (based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2000, historical)

The dictionary definition 'Major field of study (based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2000, historical)' is discontinued for the 2016 Census.

Major field of study (based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016)

Definition

'Field of study' refers to the discipline or area of learning or training associated with a particular course or program of study.

This variable refers to the predominant discipline or area of learning or training of a person's highest completed postsecondary certificate, diploma or degree, classified according to the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016.

This 'Major field of study' variable can be used either independently or in conjunction with the 'Highest certificate, diploma or degree' variable. When the latter is used with 'Major field of study,' it should be noted that different fields of study will be more common for different types of postsecondary qualifications. At the detailed program level, some programs are only offered by certain types of institutions.

There was an explicit instruction in the questionnaire which instructed respondents to be as specific as possible in indicating a subfield or subcategory of specialization within a broad discipline or area of training.

This variable is reported for persons aged 15 years and over in private households.

For comments on data quality for this variable, refer to the *Education Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/013/98-500-x2016013-eng.cfm).

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299355)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[22] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991 and 1986 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Coded variable: Question 27

---

[22] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

Major field of study was a write-in response. This variable was created by assigning a field of study code from the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016.

See Appendix 6.2: Major field of study – Classification based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016 codes for the CIP Canada 2016 structure.

Respondents who completed a paper questionnaire selected 'No certificate, diploma or degree higher than high school' for persons without a postsecondary certificate, diploma or degree.

Respondents who completed an electronic questionnaire automatically skipped question 27 on major field of study when they indicated they had obtained no postsecondary certificate, diploma or degree in question 26.

Remarks

CIP Canada 2016 is subdivided into three levels: 49 'series' (a series represents the most general groupings of programs that are related in subject area, 2-digit codes); 387 'subseries' (an intermediate grouping of programs that have comparable content and objectives, 4-digit codes); and over 1,600 instructional program classes (which represent the most detailed and specific subjects of study, 6-digit codes).

There is also a variant of CIP Canada 2016 that consists of 13 primary groupings, 12 of which are used for the 2016 Census of Population. The category which includes courses in personal improvement and leisure is not used. There is also a variant of CIP Canada 2016 that can be used to examine the STEM (science, technology, engineering and mathematics and computer sciences) and BHASE (non-STEM) fields of study.

Some series and their subcomponents are not used when coding major field of study: series 21, 32 to 37 and 53, which represent non-credit and personal improvement fields of study.

For more information on the CIP classification, please see Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016 (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/eng/subjects/standard/cip/2016/index).

School attendance

Definition

'School attendance' refers to whether a person attended, either full-time or part-time, any accredited educational institution or program during all or part of a specified reference period. The person may have attended more than one educational institution or have been enrolled in more than one program.

Attendance is counted only for courses which could be used as credits towards a certificate, diploma or degree from an educational institution or program such as an elementary school, secondary school (high school), registered apprenticeship program, trade school, college, CEGEP or university. Educational institutions also include seminaries, schools of nursing, private business schools, private or public trade schools, institutes of technology, vocational schools, and schools for people who are deaf or blind. Attendance includes participation in courses or programs offered over the Internet, through correspondence and by other non-traditional methods of delivery.

Attendance does not include training received from an employer unless it could be used as credit towards a certificate, diploma or degree from an accredited educational institution. A person is considered to have attended an educational institution if they were enrolled during the reference period but were absent, for example, due to illness.

This variable collects information on school attendance at any time during the nine-month period between September 2015 and May 10, 2016. Individuals were asked to identify all types of schools attended. There was an explicit instruction to include distance learning for credit. In the 2006 Census and the 2011 National Household Survey, this variable was called 'Attendance at School'; the name was changed to 'School attendance' in the 2016 Census in order to comply with the standard definitions, but the variable is measured in the same way. Please note that the French name 'Fréquentation scolaire' did not change.

This variable is reported for persons aged 15 years and over in private households.

When interpreting school attendance in connection with geography, users are advised that the estimates for school attendance should not be interpreted as the number/proportion of students who attended school while residing in the given geography, due to differences in where the student is counted on Census Day. Like all respondents, students are enumerated at their usual place of residence on Census Day, which may or may not correspond to the geography in which they resided while attending school. For example, students who return to live with their parents during the year are instructed to be enumerated at their parents' address.

Users are advised to consult data quality comments for this variable, available in the *Education Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/013/98-500-x2016013-eng.cfm).

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Status of school attendance (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117240)
Institution of school attendance (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117246)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[23] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 29

Responses

'No, did not attend school at any time since September 2015'; or one or more than one of the following responses: 'Yes, attended elementary, junior high school or high school'; 'Yes, attended trade school, business school, community college, technical institute, CEGEP or other non-university institution'; 'Yes, attended university.'

Remarks

This variable is useful in the analysis of participation in education for specific target populations such as Aboriginal people, recent immigrants, youth (aged 15 years and over), women and working adults.

---

[23] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Secondary (high) school diploma or equivalency certificate

Definition

'Secondary (high) school diploma or equivalency certificate' refers to whether or not a person has completed a secondary school or high school diploma, graduation certificate, or equivalency certificate. Secondary school (high school) diploma or graduation certificate includes academic or vocational high school diplomas or certificates as may be obtained by graduating from a secondary school. High school equivalency certificate includes the successful completion of a high school equivalency test such as the General Educational Development (GED) test, or obtaining an Adult Basic Education (ABE) certificate where it is equivalent to the completion of secondary school.

This variable indicates whether a person has completed a high school diploma or equivalency certificate. It also indicates what, if any, the person's highest postsecondary certificate, diploma or degree is. It uses the hierarchy of educational credentials specified in the "Highest certificate, diploma or degree" classification to create two separate hierarchies; one branching from "No high school diploma or equivalency certificate" and the other from "With high school diploma or equivalency certificate."

Persons who obtained trades qualifications from secondary-level vocational training programs in the province of Quebec, such as the Diplôme d'études professionnelles/Diploma of Vocational Studies (DEP/DVS), are included in the category "apprenticeship or trades certificate or diploma."

This variable is reported for persons aged 15 years and over in private households.

Users are advised to consult data quality comments for this variable, available in the *Education Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/013/98-500-x2016013-eng.cfm).

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Combinations of certificates, diplomas and degrees awarded (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=305718)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[24] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 25, 26a), 26b) and 26c)

Responses

No high school diploma or equivalency certificate; No high school diploma or equivalency certificate, with apprenticeship or trades certificate or diploma; No high school diploma or equivalency certificate, with college, CEGEP or other non-university certificate or diploma; With high school diploma or equivalency certificate; With high school diploma or equivalency certificate, with apprenticeship or trades certificate or diploma; With high school diploma or equivalency certificate, with college, CEGEP or other non-university certificate or diploma; With high school diploma or equivalency certificate, with university certificate or diploma below bachelor level;

---

[24] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

With high school diploma or equivalency certificate, with bachelor's degree; With high school diploma or equivalency certificate, with university certificate or diploma above bachelor level; With high school diploma or equivalency certificate, with degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry; With high school diploma or equivalency certificate, with master's degree; With high school diploma or equivalency certificate, with earned doctorate.

Remarks

This is a useful variable for socio-economic analysis. By dividing the population into those who do and those who do not have secondary (high) school completion, differences in employment, income, participation in further education, homeownership and mobility can be examined.

With the exception of high school diplomas or equivalency certificates, the qualifications in the categories of this classification pertain to the highest certificate, diploma or degree obtained, and do not refer to certificates, diplomas or degrees 'ever obtained' or that which is 'most recent.'

Families, households and marital status

Census family

Definition

'Census family' is defined as a married couple and the children, if any, of either and/or both spouses; a couple living common law and the children, if any, of either and/or both partners; or a lone parent of any marital status with at least one child living in the same dwelling and that child or those children. All members of a particular census family live in the same dwelling. A couple may be of opposite or same sex. Children may be children by birth, marriage, common-law union or adoption regardless of their age or marital status as long as they live in the dwelling and do not have their own married spouse, common-law partner or child living in the dwelling. Grandchildren living with their grandparent(s) but with no parents present also constitute a census family.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The census family and its associated classifications and variables are derived according to responses to the questions on sex, date of birth, marital status, common-law status and relationship to Person 1. In addition, consideration is given to the order in which household members are listed on the questionnaire.

The concepts of census family, census family status and census family structure have remained the same in the census since 2001. Prior to 2001, the census family concepts were the same from 1976 to 1996. The changes made to the census family concepts in the 2001 Census are described under 'census family' (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2011/ref/dict/fam004-eng.cfm) in the 2011 *Census Dictionary*, and under 'Historical comparability' in the *Families Reference Guide, 2011 Census* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2011/ref/guides/98-312-x/98-312-x2011005-eng.cfm#a4). More historical information about family concepts over time is contained in the Appendix of the article, '*Enduring Diversity: Living Arrangements of Children in Canada over 100 Years of the Census*' (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/91f0015m/91f0015m2014011-eng.htm), no. 11, Demographic Documents (91F0015M).

Census family composition

The term 'Census family composition' is discontinued for the 2016 Census.

Census family status

Definition

'Census family status' refers to whether or not the person is a member of a census family and, if so, his or her status in that census family, either as a member of a couple, as a lone parent or as a child.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Census family status, variant with children (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=272338)
Census family status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=272308)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, refer to census family.

Census family structure

Definition

'Census family structure' refers to the combination of relatives that comprise a census family. Classification on this variable considers the presence or absence of: married spouses or common-law partners and children.

Statistical unit(s)

Census family

Classification(s)

Census family structure of census family (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=272588)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, refer to census family.

Child presence any age

Definition

'Child presence any age' refers to whether or not the family includes any children. To be included, children must live in the same household as the family. They may be children by birth, marriage, common-law union or adoption.

Statistical unit(s)

Census family
Economic family

Classification(s)

Child presence any age (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=282866)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Collective household

Definition

Refers to a person or a group of persons who occupy a collective dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada. Only data for collective households with usual residents are shown in the standard census products.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Reported for

Collective households

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, refer to the Census Dictionary: Collective dwelling and Usual place of residence.

Common-law status

Definition

'Common-law status' refers to whether the person is living with a person of the opposite sex or of the same sex as a couple but is not legally married to that person. All persons aged less than 15 are considered as not living common law.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Common-law status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=252403)

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991.

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 5

Responses

Yes; No

Remarks

For more information, refer to the definition of marital status.

Conjugal status

Definition

'Conjugal status' refers to the nature of the relationship between the members of a couple. Specifically, it indicates whether the members of a couple are either legally married to each other or living in a common-law relationship.

Statistical unit(s)

Couple

Classification(s)

Conjugal status of couple (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=252467)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Couple family

Definition

'Couple family' refers to a family that contains a married or common-law couple. A couple may be of opposite or same sex. In economic families, a couple family is a family where the reference person has a legally married spouse or common-law partner in the family (regardless of whether or not the reference person also has children).

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Couple family with children

Definition

'Couple family with children' refers to a census family that contains a married couple or a couple living common law and at least one child. A couple may be of opposite or same sex. Children may be children by birth, marriage, common-law union or adoption regardless of their age or marital status as long as they live in the dwelling and do not have their own spouse, partner or child living in the dwelling.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Economic family

Definition

'Economic family' refers to a group of two or more persons who live in the same dwelling and are related to each other by blood, marriage, common-law union, adoption or a foster relationship. A couple may be of opposite or same sex. By definition, all persons who are members of a census family are also members of an economic family. Examples of the broader concept of economic family include the following: two co-resident census families who are related to one another are considered one economic family; co-resident siblings who are not members of a census family are considered as one economic family; and, nieces or nephews living with aunts or uncles are considered one economic family.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The economic family and its associated classifications and variables are derived according to the responses to the questions on sex, date of birth, marital status, common-law status and relationship to Person 1. In addition, consideration is given to the order in which household members are listed on the questionnaire.

The way that economic families are classified by economic family structure depends on who is selected as the economic family reference person. As described in the classification of economic family status, the reference person is determined through procedures specific to each survey (or census). For the 2016 Census, the criteria for determining who is the economic family reference person changed slightly. For more information, refer to the *Families Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/002/98-500-x2016002-eng.cfm).

Economic family status

Definition

'Economic family status' refers to whether or not the person is a member of an economic family and, if so, his or her status in that economic family. This variable is derived from the responses to questions about the relationships among the people who live in the household.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Economic family status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=285033)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, refer to economic family.

Economic family structure

Definition

'Economic family structure' refers to the combination of relatives that comprise a family. Classification on this variable considers the presence or absence of: married spouses or common-law partners; children; and other relatives.

Statistical unit(s)

Economic family

Classification(s)

Economic family structure of economic family (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=285069)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, refer to economic family.

Family size

Definition

'Family size' refers to the number of persons in the family.

Statistical unit(s)

Census family
Economic family

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Household

Definition

Household refers to a person or group of persons who occupy the same dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada or abroad. The dwelling may be either a collective dwelling or a private dwelling. The household may consist of a family group such as a census family, of two or more families sharing a dwelling, of a group of unrelated persons or of a person living alone. Household members who are temporarily absent on reference day are considered part of their usual household.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for

For more information on the household universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, refer to the Census Dictionary: Private household, Collective household and Household outside Canada.

Unless otherwise specified, all data in census products are for private households only.

Household living arrangements

Definition

'Household living arrangements' refers to whether or not the person lives with another person or persons and, if so, whether or not he or she is related to that person or persons.

Statistical unit(s)

Person not in a census family

Classification(s)

Household living arrangements (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=286464)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Household outside Canada

Definition

Refers to a person or a group of persons residing together outside Canada on government, military or diplomatic postings.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for

For more information on the household universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

In 1971, the term 'households abroad' was used. Prior to the 1971 Census, these households were included in the count of private households, and housing data were imputed to them. In 1971, they were included in the count of private households to which housing data were not imputed. Since 1976, both households outside Canada and their dwellings have been excluded from the counts of private households and occupied private dwellings.

Household type

Definition

'Household type' refers to the differentiation of households on the basis of whether they are census family households or non-census-family households. Census family households are those that contain at least one census family. Non-census-family households are either one person living alone or a group of two or more persons who live together but do not constitute a census family. Census family households may be differentiated based on the presence of additional persons (that is, persons not in a census family).

Statistical unit(s)

Private household

Classification(s)

Household type (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=298837)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Historically in the census, as well as in the Statistics Canada standard concept for household type, 'census family households' are broken down by whether they have one census family or multiple census families. One-census-family households are then optionally broken down by whether there are any other persons present in the household (without additional persons; with additional persons). Since the 2001 Census, an alternative breakdown is often used in published tables to focus on households that are composed entirely of one census family and contrast them with all other households containing at least one census family. The first type of household corresponds to 'one-census-family households without additional persons' in the Statistics Canada standard, although this category was called 'one-family-only households' in tables from 2001 to 2011. The second type, 'other census family households,' combines both 'one-census-family households with additional persons' and 'multiple-census-family households' of the Statistics Canada standard.

Legal marital status

Definition

'Legal marital status' refers to the marital status of the person under the law not taking into account common-law status. All persons aged less than 15 are considered as never married. Civil unions are included. Same-sex marriage has been legal in all provinces and territories of Canada since 2005.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Legal marital status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=252479)

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991.

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 4

Responses

Never legally married; Legally married (and not separated); Separated, but still legally married; Divorced; Widowed

Remarks

For more information, refer to the definition of marital status.

Marital status

Definition

'Marital status' refers to whether or not a person is living in a common-law union as well as the legal marital status of those who are not living in a common-law union. All persons aged less than 15 are considered as never married and not living common law.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Marital status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=252495)
Marital Status - short title variant for dissemination (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=252517)

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 4 and 5

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Since 2006, 'married' includes legally married same-sex spouses. Since 2001, 'living common law' includes same-sex common-law partners. In the 1981 and 1986 censuses, people living common law could report their common-law status by using one of the response categories in the question on relationship to Person 1. They are identifiable separately on the database back to 1981, even though they were not shown separately in published tables until 1991, the year the question on common-law status was added to the census questionnaire. In the 1971 and 1976 censuses, people living common law were instructed to report their marital status as married. In 1961 and 1966, separated persons were included with married persons.

In census data, persons in private households who were reported as living common law but who do not have their common-law partner present in the household are treated as not living common law. This is also true for persons living in collective dwellings. Persons reported as married who do not have their married spouse present in the same private household or collective dwelling are treated as married for marital status, but not for family characteristics. For example, they may appear as lone parents if their children are present in the household but not their spouse. For information about how household membership is defined in the census, refer to the definition of 'usual place of residence.'

Opposite/same-sex married spouse or common-law partner

Definition

'Opposite/same-sex married spouse or common-law partner' refers to whether a person who has a spouse or partner is the opposite sex as that spouse or partner or is the same sex.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Opposite/same-sex married spouse or common-law partner (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=286479)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006 and 2001 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Opposite/same-sex status

Definition

'Opposite/same-sex status' refers to whether the spouses or partners in a couple family are of the opposite sex or the same sex.

Statistical unit(s)

Couple family

Classification(s)

Opposite/same-sex status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=61906)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006 and 2001 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Person 15 years or over

Definition

'Person 15 years or over' refers to an individual whose age is 15 years or over.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

All censuses

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Presence of children

The term 'Presence of children' is discontinued for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of child presence any age.

Private household

Definition

'Private household' refers to a person or group of persons who occupy the same dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada or abroad. The household universe is divided into two sub-universes on the basis of whether the household is occupying a collective dwelling or a private dwelling. The latter is a private household.

For census purposes, households are classified into three groups: private households, collective households and households outside Canada.

Unless otherwise specified, all data in census products are for private households only.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for

For more information on the household universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, refer to the Census Dictionary: Collective household and Household outside Canada.

The number of private households is equal to the number of occupied private dwellings in the 2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981 and 1976 censuses (see the definition 'Private dwelling occupied by usual residents' in the Census Dictionary).

In certain instances, there may be private households occupying dwellings that are located within collective grounds or attached to a collective dwelling structure. In these cases, the living quarters are considered as private dwellings inhabited by private households.

Relationship structure

Definition

'Relationship structure' refers to whether the family contains biological or adopted children of only one married spouse or common-law partner whose birth or adoption preceded the current relationship. The family can contain such children of each married spouse or common-law partner. It also considers whether or not the family also includes biological or adopted children of both married spouses or common-law partners.

Statistical unit(s)

Stepfamily

Classification(s)

Relationship structure (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=133205)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4 and 5

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Relationship to household reference person (Person 1)

Definition

The term 'Relationship to household reference person (Person 1)' is discontinued for the 2016 Census. Refer to Appendix 2.0 for information about the Relationship to Person 1 question.

Stepfamily

Definition

'Stepfamily' refers to couple families with children that contain at least one biological or adopted child of only one married spouse or common-law partner whose birth or adoption preceded the current relationship. The family can contain such children of each married spouse or common-law partner. The family can also contain biological or adopted children from the current relationship. If the current married spouse or common-law partner has adopted the child(ren) of the other married spouse or common-law partner then it is no longer a stepfamily.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Stepfamily status

Definition

'Stepfamily status' refers to whether or not the family contains any children who are biological or adopted children of only one married spouse or common-law partner and whose birth or adoption preceded the current relationship. The family can contain such children of each married spouse or common-law partner.

Statistical unit(s)

Couple family with children

Classification(s)

Stepfamily status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=133226)

Reported in

2016 and 2011; 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample); 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4 and 5

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Geography

Introduction to the geography universe

The geography universe defines terms related to geographical concepts, infrastructure, products and services. The following summary denotes changes made to the geographic program for the 2016 Census. For further details, refer to the individual definitions of terms.

Geographic areas

Census data are disseminated for a number of standard geographic areas. These areas are either administrative or statistical. Administrative areas are defined, with a few exceptions, by federal, provincial and territorial statutes. Statistical areas are defined by Statistics Canada as part of the spatial frame for disseminating census data. Figure 1.1 shows the hierarchy of all standard geographic areas for dissemination and Table 1.1 shows the distribution of geographic areas by province and territory.

Adjustment of population counts

Statistics Canada is committed to protect the privacy of all Canadians and the confidentiality of the data they provide to us. As part of this commitment, some population counts of geographic areas are adjusted in order to ensure confidentiality.

Counts of the total population are rounded to a base of 5 for any dissemination block having a population of less than 15. Population counts for all standard geographic areas above the dissemination block level are derived by summing the adjusted dissemination block counts. The adjustment of dissemination block counts is controlled to ensure that the population counts for dissemination areas will always be within 5 of the actual values. The adjustment has no impact on the population counts of census divisions and large census subdivisions. Population counts of federal electoral districts will be within 5 of the actual values. Dwelling counts are unadjusted.

Geographic attributes

Adjusted counts

Definition

After a census, Statistics Canada makes public the total number of persons and the total number of dwellings counted in a given area, for example, in a municipality. By the next census, the municipality's geographic boundaries may have changed, especially if it has annexed part of another municipality or has merged with another municipality. When a boundary change occurs between censuses, the population and dwelling counts for the geographic areas affected by the boundary change are revised (adjusted). The adjusted counts show what the counts (the total number of persons and the total number of dwellings) from the previous census would be for the current census boundaries.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961, 1956 (population)
2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996 (dwellings)

Remarks

When a boundary change occurs, the population and dwellings affected are determined by examining the collection documents from the previous census. The dwellings affected by the boundary change are identified from the collection maps. Once the affected dwellings are identified, it is possible to establish the population affected. These counts are then added to the geographic area that has increased in size and subtracted from the geographic area that has decreased in size.

Boundary changes to standard geographic areas between censuses are generally flagged in census outputs. This is done to warn users doing trend or longitudinal analysis that the areas being compared have changed over time. However, by comparing the final population or dwelling counts from the previous census to the adjusted counts, the user can judge the significance of the boundary change.

In the case of new areas (e.g., census subdivision incorporations), adjusted counts are required to permit the calculation of change. For dissolutions or major boundary changes, the use of adjusted counts instead of the previous census final counts often provides a better measure of trends by removing the effect of the boundary change from the calculation.

Refer to the related definition of census subdivision (CSD).

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Geographic code

Definition

A geographic code is a numerical identifier assigned to a geographic area. Every kind of geographic area in Canada has its own type of geographic code. For example, the geographic code assigned to a town makes it possible to distinguish that town from any other towns with the same name that are located in a different province. The code is used to identify and access standard geographic areas for the purposes of data storage, retrieval and display.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

Geographic codes are used in combination with the province/territory code and other higher level geographic area codes in order to uniquely identify each geographic unit in Canada.

The Standard Geographical Classification (SGC), Statistics Canada's official classification of geographic areas, provides unique codes for three hierarchically-related geographic areas: provinces and territories, census divisions and census subdivisions.

For further details, refer to the description of the geographic code in the definitions of census agricultural region (CAR); census consolidated subdivision (CCS); census division (CD); census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); census subdivision (CSD); census tract (CT); designated place (DPL); dissemination area (DA); dissemination block (DB); economic region (ER); federal electoral district (FED); population centre (POPCTR); province or territory and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Also refer to the *2011 Standard Geographical Classification (SGC)*, Volumes I and II (Catalogue nos. 12-571-X (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/eng/subjects/standard/sgc/2016/index) and 12-572-X (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/eng/subjects/standard/sgc/2016/map-index)).

Changes prior to the current census

Since 1981, the Standard Geographical Classification has been the sole official geographic classification system used for disseminating data for provinces/territories, census divisions and census subdivisions.

For 1976 and 1971, both the SGC and census codes were used to disseminate census data.

Prior to 1971, only census codes were used to disseminate census data.

Land area

Definition

Number of square kilometres of land in a given geographic area (e.g., a province, a territory, a city). Land area data are unofficial and are provided for the sole purpose of calculating population density.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

Land area data for the standard geographic areas reflect the boundaries in effect on January 1, 2016 (the geographic reference date for the 2016 Census of Canada). The data are available for all standard geographic areas.

The data are derived from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI), which includes a water polygon layer used in the process for calculating land area. The area calculations are computed from data that are transformed from a Lambert conformal conic projection to an Albers equal-area projection, since the properties of an equal area projection are indispensable for calculating land area. The same projection parameters (two standard parallels, central meridian and latitude of projection origin) are used for each province or territory.

Land area is calculated using ArcGIS® software. There is a multi-stage aggregation procedure. First, the data are calculated at a basic block level (BB),[25] aggregated and stored in square kilometres at the census block (CB)[26] level to eight decimal places. The census block (CB) calculations are then aggregated to the dissemination block (DB) level and rounded to four decimal places. The DB data are individually aggregated to each higher level standard geographic area. Land area data is not disseminated for basic blocks or census blocks.

Since the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) is a digital base using three input map scales (1:50,000, 1:250,000 and 1:1,000,000), greater land area accuracy is achieved at larger scales – that is, there is less generalization regarding the symbolization and number of hydrographic features. Land area errors may occur due to digitizing or linkage discrepancies, and when water polygons do not line up or are symbolized differently between different map scales.

Users should note that even where the boundaries of standard geographic areas did not change between censuses, the land areas may differ due to geometry shifts. The shifts are caused by a change in the underlying database architecture and by improvements in the absolute positional accuracy of some of the roads. Minor adjustments to hydrography can also cause variations in land area for stable geographic areas.

Refer to related definitions of dissemination block (DB); geographic reference date; population density and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census

For 2011, the data were derived from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) geospatial layers, including the water polygon layer. The source layer for water changed in British Columbia for 2011. This resulted in varying land area calculations as compared to previous censuses. Land area data were calculated using ArcGIS® software.
The data were calculated and stored in square kilometres at the census block (CB) level to eight decimal places then aggregated to the dissemination block (DB) level and rounded to four decimal places. The DB data were then individually aggregated to all higher level standard geographic areas. Land area data were not disseminated for census blocks.

---

[25] The basic block (BB) is the smallest polygon unit in the Spatial Data Infrastructure. BBs are formed by the intersection of all roads and boundary arcs of standard geographic areas that do not follow roads.

[26] A census block (CB) is an area bounded on all sides by roads and/or boundaries of standard geographic areas. Census blocks cover all the territory of Canada. They are the smallest geographic area for which population and dwelling counts are stored. It must be noted that CBs are not available to the public, but are used internally as the smallest level of geography upon which both collection and dissemination geographies are built.

For 2006, the data were derived from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) geospatial layers, including selected water polygons. Land area data were calculated using ArcGIS® software. The data were calculated and stored at the basic block (BB) level at eight decimal places and then aggregated to the dissemination block (DB) level and rounded to four decimal places. The DB data were then individually aggregated to all higher level standard geographic areas. Land area data were not disseminated for basic blocks.

For 2001, land area data were calculated using ArcGIS® software. Separate projection parameters (two standard parallels, central meridian and latitude of projection origin) were used for each province or territory. As well, there was only a one-stage aggregation procedure. The data were calculated and stored at the basic block (BB) level at eight decimal places and then aggregated to all higher level geographic areas and rounded to four decimal places. Land area data were not disseminated for basic blocks.

Prior to 2001, land area was manually calculated using a planimeter. Measurements were normally taken three times for each geographic unit and then averaged. The map scales generally varied between 1:50,000 and 1:250,000. In densely and sparsely populated regions of Canada, larger or smaller scales may have been used. Only discernible bodies of water found on the maps were excluded. The planimeter gave accurate readings for only small zones – and consequently, large geographic areas were subdivided into smaller ones and measured individually; the individual parts were then added together.

Boundaries that changed from one census to another were not measured in their entirety. Only the land area gained or lost due to a boundary revision/update was measured, and then added to or subtracted from the original figure.

Land area measurements for census subdivisions (CSDs) were aggregated to obtain the land areas for the higher level geographic areas – namely, primary census metropolitan areas/primary census agglomerations (PCMAs/PCAs), census metropolitan areas/census agglomerations (CMAs/CAs), census consolidated subdivisions (CCSs), census divisions (CDs), economic regions (ERs), and provinces/territories. Land area measurements were done separately for urban areas (UAs), designated places (DPLs) and census tracts (CTs). Data were not available for enumeration areas (EAs) and federal electoral districts (FEDs).

The land area data were subject to a number of errors, including measurement, coding and transcription, and processing errors – and overall, cumulative historic errors. As well, a limited number of tests revealed logical inconsistencies; for example, there were cases where the land area was greater than the total area.

Prior to 1996, some CSDs had land areas of zero (0) because their official limits were unknown.

For 1991, land area was called 'net land area.' Prior to 1976, land area data were expressed in square miles only.

Population density

Definition

Population density is the number of persons per square kilometre.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

The calculation for population density is total population divided by land area. The data are available for all standard geographic areas.

Population density data support a variety of applications, such as delineating population centres, determining the population ecumene, as well as spatial analysis.

Refer to related definitions of ecumene; land area and population centre (POPCTR).

Changes prior to the current census

Prior to 2001, population density data were available for all standard geographic areas, except enumeration areas (EAs) and federal electoral districts (FEDs).

For 1976, population density data were expressed in both square kilometres and square miles.

Prior to 1976, population density data were expressed in square miles only.

Geographic classifications

Census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ)

Definition

The census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ) is a concept that geographically differentiates the area of Canada outside census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs). Census subdivisions (CSDs) within provinces that are outside CMAs and CAs are assigned to one of four categories according to the degree of influence (strong, moderate, weak or no influence) that the CMAs or CAs have on them. CSDs within the territories that are outside CAs are assigned to a separate category.

A municipality within a province is assigned to a census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ) category depending on the percentage of its resident employed labour force that commute to work in one or more of the municipalities (census subdivisions) that are part of the delineation core of a CMA or CA. The calculation of the resident employed labour force excludes the category of no fixed workplace address. CSDs with the same degree of influence tend to be clustered. They form zones around CMAs and CAs that progress through the categories from 'strong' to 'no' influence as distance from the CMAs and CAs increases. As many CSDs in the territories are very large and sparsely populated, the commuting flow of the resident employed labour force is unstable. For this reason, CSDs in the territories that are outside CAs are assigned to a separate category that is not based on their commuting flows.

Note: The data on place of work are taken from the Census Program. Commuting, i.e., the journey to work, comprises four categories: at home; outside Canada; no fixed workplace address; and usual place of work. The calculation of the resident employed labour force excludes the category of no fixed workplace address for the 2016 Census.

CSDs outside CMAs and CAs are assigned to the following MIZ categories:

1. **Strong metropolitan influenced zone:** This category includes CSDs in provinces where at least 30% of the CSD's resident employed labour force (excluding the category of no fixed workplace address) commutes to work in any CMA or CA. It excludes CSDs with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force from the previous census.
2. **Moderate metropolitan influenced zone:** This category includes CSDs in provinces where at least 5% but less than 30% of the CSD's resident employed labour force (excluding the category of no fixed workplace address) commute to work in any CMA or CA. It excludes CSDs with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force from the previous census.
3. **Weak metropolitan influenced zone:** This category includes CSDs in provinces where more than 0% but less than 5% of the CSD's resident employed labour force (excluding the category of no fixed workplace address) commute to work in any CMA or CA. It excludes CSDs with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force from the previous census.
4. **No metropolitan influenced zone:** This category includes CSDs in provinces where none of the CSD's resident employed labour force (excluding the category of no fixed workplace address) commute to work in any CMA or CA. It also includes CSDs in provinces with fewer than 40 persons in their resident employed labour force from the previous census.
5. **Territories (outside CAs):** This category includes CSDs in the territories outside CAs.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001

Remarks

The MIZ is a concept applied, for statistical analysis purposes, to CSDs outside CMAs and CAs. All CSDs in Canada are either a component of a CMA or a CA or not a component (outside CMAs and CAs). The MIZ provides users with a more detailed geographic identity for the CSDs outside CMAs and CAs. As with CMAs and CAs, the allocation of a CSD to a MIZ category was determined using commuting flows of the resident employed labour force, excluding the category of no fixed workplace, derived from data on place of work from the previous Census Program.

The calculation of the commuting flows for MIZ differs from the calculation used for CSD inclusion in CMAs or CAs. For the concept of MIZ, the percentage of the resident employed labour force (excluding the category of no fixed workplace address) living in a particular CSD outside CMAs and CAs and working in one or more of CSDs that is part of the delineation core of any CMA or CA is combined to determine the degree of influence that one or more CMAs or CAs have on that CSD. In short, the calculation of the degree of influence does not take into account whether or not the CSD is adjacent to the CMA or CA. The resulting percentage then determines the MIZ category assigned to the CSD.

Table 1.3 shows the number of census subdivisions by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC) for Canada, provinces and territories.

Refer to the related definitions of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); census subdivision (CSD); core, fringe and rural area; Statistical Area Classification (SAC) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Standard Geographical Classification (SGC)

Definition

The Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 is Statistics Canada's main classification of geographic areas in Canada. It is designed to classify statistical information by geographic areas. The classification consists of four levels: geographical regions of Canada, provinces and territories, census divisions (such as counties and regional municipalities) and census subdivisions (such as municipalities). The four geographic levels are hierarchically related; a seven-digit code is used to show this relationship.

The 2016 version of the SGC includes four classification variants:

- Statistical Area Classification – Variant of SGC 2016
  This classifies census subdivisions by census metropolitan areas (CMAs), census agglomerations (CAs) and census metropolitan influenced zones (MIZ) including territories in the areas outside CMAs and CAs.
- Statistical Area Classification by Province and Territory – Variant of SGC 2016
  This classifies census subdivisions by census metropolitan areas (CMAs), census agglomerations (CAs) and census metropolitan influenced zones (MIZ) including territories in the areas outside CMAs and CAs. In this classification variant, these categories are further classified by provinces and territories.
- Economic Regions – Variant of SGC 2016
  This classifies census subdivisions into census divisions and economic regions.
- Agricultural Regions – Variant of SGC 2016
  This classifies census subdivisions into census divisions, census consolidated subdivisions and census agricultural regions.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

Census subdivisions (CSDs) aggregate to census divisions (CDs), which aggregate to province or territory which, in turn, aggregate to geographical regions of Canada (Figure 1.2).

The hierarchical relationship is reflected in the seven-digit SGC code.
For example:

PR-CD-CSD code	Description
12 06 008	Province 12: Nova Scotia CD 06: Lunenburg CSD 008: Mahone Bay
35 06 008	Province 35: Ontario CD 06: Ottawa CSD 008: Ottawa

Changes to the Standard Geographical Classification for the 2016 Census

This version introduces the new classification variant 'Agricultural Regions – Variant of SGC 2016.' This variant includes census agricultural regions and census consolidated subdivisions, both of which are used by the Census of Agriculture for disseminating agricultural statistics.

Refer to the related definitions of census agricultural region (CAR); census consolidated subdivision (CCS); census division (CD); census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomerations (CA); census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ); census subdivision (CSD); economic region (ER); geographical region of Canada and province or territory. The Standard Geographical Classification is presented in the *Standard Geographical Classification (SGC)*, Volumes I and II, 2016 (Catalogue nos. 12-571-X (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/eng/subjects/standard/sgc/2016/index) and 12-572-X (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/eng/subjects/standard/sgc/2016/map-index)).

Changes prior to the current census

In 1976 and 1971, both SGC and census codes were used to disseminate census data.
In 1966 and 1961, only census codes were used to disseminate census data.

Statistical Area Classification (SAC)

Definition

The Statistical Area Classification (SAC) groups census subdivisions (CSD) according to whether they are a component of a census metropolitan area (CMA), a census agglomeration (CA) or a census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ). The MIZ categorizes all CSDs in provinces and territories that are outside CMAs and CAs. CSDs within provinces that are outside CMAs and CAs are assigned to one of four categories according to the degree of influence (strong, moderate, weak or no influence) that the CMAs or CAs have on them. CSDs within the territories that are outside CAs are assigned to a separate category.

The SAC is a variant of the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). CSDs form the lowest level of the classification variant. The next level consists of CMAs, CAs and MIZs including the territories. The highest level consists of two categories that cover all of the land mass of Canada:

- inside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations
- outside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations.

The SAC provides unique numeric identification (codes) for these hierarchically-related geographic areas. It was established for the purpose of reporting statistics.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001

Remarks

In using the Statistical Area Classification (SAC) for census data tabulations, it is possible to sum census data automatically for census subdivisions (CSDs) as follows:

- all CSDs in census metropolitan areas (CMAs)
- all CSDs in census agglomerations (CAs) with census tracts
- all CSDs in census agglomerations (CAs) having no census tracts
- all CSDs in the provinces in the strong metropolitan influenced zone category
- all CSDs in the provinces in the moderate metropolitan influenced zone category
- all CSDs in the provinces in the weak metropolitan influenced zone category
- all CSDs in the provinces in the no metropolitan influenced zone category
- CSDs in the three territories (Yukon, Northwest Territories and Nunavut), except those that are components of a CA (currently the CAs of Whitehorse and Yellowknife).

Care should be exercised when applying the MIZ concept in the three territories. As many CSDs in the territories are very large and sparsely populated, the commuting flow of the resident employed labour force is unstable. For this reason, the CSDs in the territories that are outside CAs are assigned to a territories category that is not based on their commuting flows.

Figure 1.3 shows the hierarchical structure of the SAC.

Table 1.2 Population distribution by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC), 2011 adjusted population by 2016 geography, 2016 Census

Table 1.3 Number of census subdivisions by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC), 2016 Census

Refer to the related definitions of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ); census subdivision (CSD); core, fringe and rural area.

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Geographic files

Cartographic boundary files (CBFs)

Definition

Cartographic boundary files (CBFs) portray the boundaries of standard geographic areas together with the shoreline around Canada. Selected inland lakes and rivers are available as supplementary layers.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001 (cartographic boundary files)
1996 (digital cartographic files)
1991, 1986, 1981, 1976 (CARTLIBs)

Remarks

The boundaries of the geographic areas reflect those in effect on January 1, 2016 (the geographic reference date for the 2016 Census of Canada).

Cartographic boundary files are created by integrating Canada's external shoreline with the selected source boundary layer from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI). The boundaries extending into water bodies are 'erased' and replaced by the shoreline and offshore islands. The hydrographic features are also from the SDI. Further adjustments are made, such as the feature selection and the ranking of features for scale-dependent mapping.

Cartographic boundary files (CBFs) are intended for thematic mapping and analysis purposes. The positional accuracy does not support cadastral, surveying or engineering applications. CBFs can be used in conjunction with road network files (RNFs), since both products are derived from the same sources, and features are generalized in the same manner. The roads in RNFs provide additional geographic context when used with CBFs. CBFs can be used with Census of Population, Census of Agriculture or other Statistics Canada data. Geographic codes provide the linkage between the statistical data and geographic areas.

The maps in Figure 1.4 below show the differences between cartographic boundary files and digital boundary files.

Refer to the related definitions of digital boundary files (DBFs); road network file (RNF); Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and to the Boundary Files, Reference Guide (http://www5.statcan.gc.ca/olc-cel/olc.action?ObjId=92-160-g&ObjType=2&lang=en&limit=0) (Catalogue no. 92-160-G).

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Digital boundary files (DBFs)

Definition

Digital boundary files (DBFs) portray the boundaries used for census data collection and, therefore, often extend as straight lines into bodies of water.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976

Remarks

The boundaries of the geographic areas reflect those in effect on January 1, 2016 (the geographic reference date for the 2016 Census of Canada).

The boundaries are generated from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI). The boundaries extend into bodies of water, rather than follow the shoreline, to ensure that limits are followed and that all land and islands are included for census enumeration. Thus, boundaries may cut through lakes, extend into oceans, or follow the approximate centres of rivers.

Digital boundary files are not suitable for computing land area, thematic mapping applications or other types of analyses requiring the realistic depiction of shorelines and water bodies, unless the user intends to apply their own shorelines to the boundaries.

The maps in Figure 1.4 below show the differences between cartographic boundary files and digital boundary files.

Refer to the related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); road network file (RNF); Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and to the *Boundary Files, Reference Guide* (http://www5.statcan.gc.ca/olc-cel/olc.action?ObjId=92-160-g&ObjType=2&lang=en&limit=0) (Catalogue no. 92-160-G).

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Road network file (RNF)

Definition

The road network file (RNF) contains streets, street names, types, directions and address ranges. Address ranges are dwelling-based.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001 (road network files – cover the entire country)
1996 (street network files – cover large urban centres only)
1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971 (area master files – cover large urban centres only)

Remarks

The road network file (RNF) is based on the road network from the Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI). Statistics Canada maintains the RNF to support the census and other activities. The relative position of road network features is important for census enumeration and reference purposes; therefore, topological accuracy takes precedence over absolute positional accuracy. The RNF does not contain street information required for route optimization. For example, data on one-way streets, dead-ends and other street obstacles are not included in the RNF. Consequently, this file is not recommended for engineering applications, emergency dispatching services, surveying or legal applications.

The road network file contains street arcs with either 'true' address ranges, imputed address ranges, or no address range. Imputed address ranges are not meant to replace true address ranges for any purpose other than address geocoding. Thus, if the files are to be used for computer-aided dispatch or similar purposes (that require an address to be matched to a block or street), it may be necessary to supplement the file with local knowledge by updating existing true addresses and replacing imputed addresses.

The limitations of the road network file should be recognized for uses other than the mapping, analysis and retrieval of census data.

Refer to the related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); digital boundary files (DBFs); Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and to the *Road Network File Reference Guide* (Catalogue no. 92-500-G (http://www5.statcan.gc.ca/olc-cel/olc.action?ObjId=92-500-g&ObjType=2&lang=en&limit=0)).

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Geographic infrastucture

National Geographic Database (NGD)

Definition

The National Geographic Database (NGD) is a spatial database that contains attributed roads (names and addresses) and administrative boundaries used to delineate geographic entities such as provinces, municipalities, or even Health Regions. It also contains attributed reference layers such as hydrography (lakes, rivers), railways, transmission and pipelines that provide spatial reference for the delineation of administrative boundaries.
The NGD is a shared database between Statistics Canada and Elections Canada as both organizations have shared requirements for attributed road network to conduct their respective business and collective maintenance reduces costs.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006

Remarks

The National Geographic Database (NGD) was created in 1997 as a joint Statistics Canada/Elections Canada initiative to develop and maintain a national road network file serving the needs of both organizations. The active building of the NGD (that is, integrating the files from Statistics Canada, Elections Canada and Natural Resources Canada) occurred from 1998 to 2000. Thereafter, Statistics Canada and Elections Canada reconciled their digital boundary holdings to the new database's road network geometry so that operational products could be derived.

From 2001 to 2008, the focus of the NGD was on intensive data quality improvements, especially regarding the quality and currency of its road network coverage. This period included considerable expansion of road names and civic addresses ranges, as well as the addition of hydrographic names. In 2009, a major re-design of the NGD was undertaken that updated the underlying technology, improved the data model and enhanced maintenance concepts and activities.

From 2009 to 2015, the NGD undertook a project to improve road network geometric accuracy by aligning to its holdings to GPS-compliant provincial road network sources. This process, called convergence, was completed for British Columbia and six census divisions in Ontario, specifically Halton, Hamilton, Ottawa, Peel, Toronto and Waterloo for the 2011 Census. Hydrography for BC was also replaced with a more accurate National Hydrography Network at that time. For 2016, the entire provinces of Ontario, Prince Edward Island, Nova Scotia, Alberta, New Brunswick and Quebec have been completed.

The NGD road network is constantly improved based on external data sources and geocoding feedback of administrative files to ensure road network currency and address range accuracy. Sources include provincially sourced data sets, field operation activities, and municipal and private sector licensed holdings. Priorities for road network file maintenance are determined by Statistics Canada and Elections Canada, enabling the NGD to meet the joint operational needs of both agencies in support of census and electoral activities.

The data are maintained and stored in the Lambert Conformal Conic projection based on the North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83).

Refer to the related definitions of coordinate system; datum; map projection and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI)

Definition

The Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) is an internal maintenance database that is not disseminated outside of Statistics Canada. It contains roads, road names and address ranges from the National Geographic Database (NGD), as well as boundary arcs of standard geographic areas that do not follow roads, all in one integrated line layer. The database also includes a related polygon layer consisting of basic blocks (BB)[27], boundary layers of standard geographic areas, and derived attribute tables, as well as reference layers containing physical and cultural features (such as hydrography, railroads and power transmission lines) from the NGD.

The SDI supports a wide range of census operations, such as the maintenance and delineation of the boundaries of standard geographic areas (including the automated delineation of dissemination blocks and population centres) and geocoding. The SDI is also the source for generating many geography products for the 2016 Census, such as cartographic boundary files and road network files.

---

27. Basic blocks are the smallest polygon units in the database, and are formed by the intersection of all roads and the arcs of geographic areas that do not follow roads.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006 (Spatial Data Infrastructure)
2001 (National Geographic Base)

Remarks

The data are maintained and stored in the Lambert conformal conic projection based on the North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83). Links to other data holdings, such as the address register and postal code^{OM} files, are incorporated into the database.

Given the enhancements to the SDI, primarily through the integration of improved road network data from the National Geographic Database (NGD), geography products for the 2016 Census allow users to geographically reference census data more accurately when compared to the 2011 Census products (e.g., cartographic boundary files, digital boundary files, reference maps, road network files).

Product files from the SDI are available in the Geography Division's data warehouse (GeoDepot).

Refer to the related definitions of blockface; cartographic boundary files (CBFs); coordinate system; datum; digital boundary files (DBFs); dissemination block (DB); geocoding; map projection; National Geographic Database (NGD); reference map; representative point and road network file (RNF), and related reference guides.

Changes prior to the current census

For 2001, the internal database was called the National Geographic Base (NGB), which was divided into National Topographic Data Base (NTDB) map tiles.

Geographic areas

Aggregate dissemination area (ADA)

Definition

The aggregate dissemination area (ADA) is a new dissemination geography created for the 2016 Census. ADAs cover the entire country and, where possible, have a population between 5,000 and 15,000 based on the previous census population counts. ADAs are created from existing dissemination geographic areas and are formed from census tracts (CTs), census subdivisions (CSDs) or dissemination areas (DAs). ADAs respect provincial, territorial, census division (CD), census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA) with census tract (CT) boundaries.

The intent of the ADA geography is to ensure the availability of census data, where possible, across all regions of Canada.

Reported in

2016

Remarks

A consultation was undertaken with provinces and territories, and participating municipalities across Canada prior to finalizing the ADA boundaries for the 2016 Census. During consultations, from June to October 2015, Statistics Canada asked for input on an initial set of ADA boundaries to determine if any modifications should be made.[28]

---

[28] Statistics Canada created a web application called the *Geographic Editing Tool*. *The Geographic Editing Tool* provided the consultation participants the ability to visualise, examine and modify the initial ADA boundaries.

Aggregate dissemination areas (ADAs) respect the following delineation criteria:

1. The ADAs cover the entire country and, where possible, have a population count between 5,000 and 15,000 (based on the population counts from the previous census). In order to meet the operational constraint of releasing population and dwelling counts for ADAs in the winter following the census year, the population counts used to delineate ADAs were taken from the previous census.
2. ADAs respect provincial, territorial, census division (CD), census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA) with census tract (CT) boundaries in effect for the 2016 Census.
3. ADAs are based on one of three (3) 2016 census dissemination geographic areas: dissemination areas (DAs), census subdivisions (CSDs) or census tracts (CTs):
    - Within CMAs and CAs with CTs, adjacent CTs are grouped to meet the ADA population criteria.
    - In areas without CTs (areas outside the CMAs and the largest CAs) where CSDs have a population less than 15,000, adjacent CSDs are grouped to meet the ADA population criteria.
    - In areas without CTs where CSDs have a population greater than 15,000, adjacent DAs are grouped within these CSDs to meet the ADA population criteria.
4. Each Indian Reserve census subdivisions (CSD) and a small number of other areas where door-to-door canvassing occurred form their own separate ADA.

Aggregate dissemination area code

Each aggregate dissemination area is assigned a four-digit code. To uniquely identify each ADA within Canada, the province/territory (PR) two-digit code and the census division (CD) two-digit code are concatenated and precede the ADA code. For example:

PR-CD-ADA code	Description
12 09 0066	Province 12: Nova Scotia CD 09: Halifax ADA 0066
59 09 0001	Province 59: British Columbia CD 09: Fraser Valley ADA 0001

Refer to the related definitions of dissemination area (DA), census tract (CT), census subdivision (CSD), census division (CD), census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA).

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Blockface

Definition

A blockface represents one side of a street between two consecutive features intersecting that street. The features can be other streets or boundaries of standard geographic areas. Blockfaces are used for generating blockface representative points, which in turn are used for geocoding and census data extraction when the street and address information are available.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Remarks

Population and dwelling counts are not disseminated for individual blockfaces, since there are confidentiality concerns about releasing small population and dwelling counts at this level of geography.

Table 1.1 shows the number of blockfaces by province and territory.

Refer to related definitions of geocoding; representative point and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census

Minor changes in 2011:

- With the redesign of the road network model for 2011, the blockface became a segment-level attribute with a unique identifier for each side on all road segments from which blockface representative points are generated.

Minor changes in 2006:

- The concept of enumeration area (EA) was replaced by collection blocks (COLB) for 2006. The EA sub-block trapezoid polygons were also removed at this time.
- Blockfaces were no longer formed at NTS map tile limits as in 2001 since roads were modified cross map tiles without segmentation.

Major changes in 2001:

- Blockfaces were defined for the entire country, rather than only in urban centres covered by the former street network files.
- Blockfaces were formed by addressable and non-addressable streets, rather than by addressable streets only.
- Two blockfaces were generated opposite a road T-junction, rather than just one blockface.
- Blockfaces were not formed when physical features (such as rivers or railroads) intersected the road, unless these features were coincident with a boundary of a standard geographic area.
- Blockfaces were not formed when a single-address enumeration area (EA) was smaller than a city block. In these cases, known as an EA sub-block, the polygon was offset from the street and digitally represented as a standardized trapezoid, rather than represented as a polygon intersecting the street.
- Blockfaces were formed when streets crossed the limits of map tiles. (The map tiles, which were based on the National Topographic System of Natural Resources Canada, formed the Canada-wide coverage in the 2001 National Geographic Base.)
- Population and dwelling counts were not disseminated for individual blockfaces.

Prior to 2001:

- Blockfaces were defined only in urban centres covered by street network files.
- Blockfaces were formed by addressable streets only.
- Only one blockface was generated opposite a road T-junction.
- Blockfaces were formed when physical features intersected roads, even when the boundaries of standard geographic areas were not coincident with these features.
- Blockfaces were formed when a single-address EA was smaller than a city block since the EA was digitally represented as a polygon intersecting the street.
- Blockfaces were not formed when streets crossed the limits of map tiles, since map tiles were not used.
- Population and dwelling counts were disseminated for individual blockfaces.

Prior to 1991, blockfaces were not created when EA boundaries split city blocks.

Census agglomeration (CA)

See the definition of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA).

Census agricultural region (CAR)

Definition

Census agricultural regions (CARs) are composed of groups of adjacent census divisions.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981

Remarks

In Prince Edward Island, for the purpose of disseminating data, each of the three existing census divisions (counties) is treated as a census agricultural region.

Each census agricultural region is assigned a two-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each CAR in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code must precede the CAR code. For example:

PR-CAR code	CAR name
46 03	Agricultural Region 3 (Man.)
59 03	Thompson–Okanagan (B.C.)

Table 1.1 shows the number of census agricultural regions by province.

Census agricultural regions are used by the Census of Agriculture for disseminating agricultural statistics.

Refer to the related definitions of census division (CD) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census

Prior to 2016, in Saskatchewan, census agricultural regions were made up of groups of census consolidated subdivisions, but these groups did not necessarily respect census division boundaries.

Prior to 2016, census agricultural regions were not defined in Yukon, Northwest Territories and Nunavut.

Prior to 1996, census agricultural regions were called 'agricultural regions.'

Census consolidated subdivision (CCS)

Definition

A census consolidated subdivision (CCS) is a group of adjacent census subdivisions within the same census division. Generally, the smaller, more densely-populated census subdivisions (towns, villages, etc.) are combined with the surrounding, larger, more rural census subdivision, in order to create a geographic level between the census subdivision and the census division.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966

Remarks

Census consolidated subdivisions are defined within census divisions (CDs) according to the following criteria:

1. A census subdivision (CSD) with a land area greater than 25 square kilometres can form a CCS of its own. Census subdivisions having a land area smaller than 25 square kilometres are usually grouped with a larger census subdivision.
2. A census subdivision with a land area greater than 25 square kilometres and surrounded on more than half its perimeter by another census subdivision is usually included as part of the CCS formed by the surrounding census subdivision.
3. A census subdivision with a population greater than 100,000 according to the last census usually forms a CCS on its own.
4. The census consolidated subdivision's name and code usually coincide with its largest census subdivision component in terms of land area.
5. A CCS with fewer than 16 farms in the last census is merged with adjacent CCS(s) to help reduce data suppression while maintaining the confidentiality of the data for these smaller CCSs.

The final criterion is new for 2016. As a result of this new criterion, a significant number of CCSs were merged resulting in over 570 fewer CCSs in 2016.

The geographic code assigned to each census consolidated subdivision is the seven-digit Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) code of one of its component CSDs, usually the one with the largest land area (Figure 1.5 shows a hypothetical example). This assignment process also makes the CCS code unique across Canada. For example:

PR-CD-CCS code	CCS name
24 32 045	Plessisville (Que.)
35 32 045	Blandford-Blenheim (Ont.)

Table 1.1 shows the number of census consolidated subdivisions by province and territory.

CCSs are used primarily for disseminating Census of Agriculture data. CCSs are relatively stable geographic areas because they have infrequent boundary changes and therefore can be useful for longitudinal analysis.

Refer to the related definitions of census division (CD), census subdivision (CSD) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census

For 1991, significant boundary changes were made to CCSs in Quebec when census divisions were restructured to recognize the *municipalités régionales de comté*.

For 1976, the term 'census consolidated subdivision' was introduced. Prior to 1976, CCSs were referred to by the term 'reference code.'

Census division (CD)

Definition

Group of neighbouring municipalities joined together for the purposes of regional planning and managing common services (such as police or ambulance services). These groupings are established under laws in effect in certain provinces of Canada. Census division (CD) is the general term for provincially legislated areas (such as county, *municipalité régionale de comté* and regional district) or their equivalents. In other provinces and the territories where laws do not provide for such areas, Statistics Canada defines equivalent areas for statistical reporting purposes in cooperation with these provinces and territories. Census divisions are intermediate geographic areas between the province/territory level and the municipality (census subdivision).

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

Census divisions (CD) have been established in provincial law to facilitate regional planning, as well as the provision of services that can be more effectively delivered on a scale larger than a municipality. In Newfoundland and Labrador, Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta, Yukon, Northwest Territories and Nunavut, provincial or territorial law does not provide for these administrative geographic areas. Therefore, Statistics Canada, in cooperation with these provinces and territories, has created equivalent areas called CDs for the purpose of disseminating statistical data. In Yukon, the CD is equivalent to the entire territory.

Next to provinces and territories, census divisions (CD) are the most stable administrative geographic areas, and are therefore often used in longitudinal analysis.

Census division type

Census divisions are classified into 12 types according to official designations adopted by provincial or territorial authorities. Two exceptions are 'census division / division de recensement' (CDR) and 'territory / territoire' (TER), which are geographic areas created as equivalents by Statistics Canada, in cooperation with the provinces and territories, for the purpose of disseminating statistical data.

Table 1.4 shows census division types, their abbreviated forms, and their distribution by province and territory.

Census division code

The census division (CD) code is a two-digit code that is based on the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). In order to uniquely identify each CD in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code must precede the two-digit CD code. For example:

PR-CD code	CD name
13 01	Saint John (N.B.)
24 01	Les Îles-de-la-Madeleine (Que.)

Changes to census divisions for the 2016 Census

The following CDs have had name or type changes for the 2016 Census:

- (CD 24 59) Lajemmerais, MRC becomes Marguerite-D'Youville, MRC
- In New Brunswick, the boundary between Gloucester (CD (census division) 13 15) and Northumberland (CD (census division) 13 09) was adjusted because Saumarez, P (Parish / Paroisse (municipalité de)) (CSD (census subdivision) 13 15 001) and Tracadie-Sheila, TV (Town / Ville) (CSD (census subdivision) 13 15 003) were amalgamated and parts of Saint-Isidore, P (Parish / Paroisse (municipalité de)) (CSD (census subdivision) 13 15 021) and Alnwick, P (Parish / Paroisse (municipalité de)) (CSD (census subdivision) 13 09 036) and Inkerman, P (Parish / Paroisse (municipalité de)) (CSD (census subdivision) 13 15 024) to form the incorporated municipality of Tracadie, RGM (Regional municipality) (CSD (census subdivision) 13 15 002).
- In Manitoba, there were 3 census division boundary changes:
    - the boundary between Division No. 6 (CD (census division) 46 06) and Division No. 8 (CD (census division) 46 08) was adjusted because Notre Dame de Lourdes, VL (Village) (CSD (census subdivision) 46 08 033) and Somerset, VL (Village) (CSD (census subdivision) 46 04 006) and Lorne, RM (Rural Municipality) (CSD (census subdivision) 46 04 063) were amalgamated to form Lorne, MU (Municipality) (CSD (census subdivision) 46 04 064).
    - the boundary between Division No. 7 (CD (census division) 46 07) and Division No. 15 (CD (census division) 46 15) was adjusted because Langford, RM (Rural Municipality) (CSD (census

  subdivision) 46 15 018) and North Cypress, RM (Rural Municipalty) (CSD (census subdivision) 46 07 065) were amalgamated to form North Cypress-Langford, MU (Municipality) (CSD (census subdivision) 46 07 066).
  - the boundary between Division No. 2 (CD (census division) 46 02) and Division No. 3 (CD (census division) 46 03) was adjusted because Franklin, RM (Rural Municipality) (CSD (census subdivision) 46 02 025) and Emerson, T (Town) (CSD (census subdivision) 46 03 033) were amalgamated to form Emerson-Franklin, MU (Municipality) (CSD (census subdivision) 46 02 024).

The boundaries, names and codes of census divisions reflect those in effect on January 1, 2016, the geographic reference date for the 2016 Census of Canada. Information about any CD changes that were effective on or before the January 1, 2016 reference date must have been received by Statistics Canada prior to March 1, 2016, in order to be processed in time for the census.

Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census

The following CDs have had name or type changes for the 2011 Census:

- (CD 24 31) L'Amiante, MRC became Les Appalaches, MRC
- (CD 24 40) Asbestos, MRC became Les Sources, MRC
- (CD 24 53) Le Bas-Richelieu, MRC became Pierre-De Saurel, MRC
- (CD 24 98) Minganie–Basse-Côte-Nord, CDR became Minganie–Le Golfe-du-Saint-Laurent, CDR
- (CD 35 10) Frontenac, MB became Frontenac, CTY.

In the Northwest Territories, the CDs have been restructured, increasing in number from two to six. The naming convention of CDs in the Northwest Territories is now:

- (CD 61 01) Region 1, REG
- (CD 61 02) Region 2, REG
- (CD 61 03) Region 3, REG
- (CD 61 04) Region 4, REG
- (CD 61 05) Region 5, REG
- (CD 61 06) Region 6, REG.

Census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA)

Definition

A census metropolitan area (CMA) or a census agglomeration (CA) is formed by one or more adjacent municipalities centred on a population centre (known as the core). A CMA must have a total population of at least 100,000 of which 50,000 or more must live in the core based on adjusted data from the previous Census of Population Program. A CA must have a core population of at least 10,000 also based on data from the previous Census of Population Program. To be included in the CMA or CA, other adjacent municipalities must have a high degree of integration with the core, as measured by commuting flows derived from data on place of work from the previous Census Program.

If the population of the core of a CA falls below 10,000, the CA is retired from the next census. However, once an area becomes a CMA, it is retained as a CMA even if its total population declines below 100,000 or the population of its core falls below 50,000. All areas inside the CMA or CA that are not population centres are rural areas.

When a CA has a core of at least 50,000, based on data from the previous Census of Population, it is subdivided into census tracts. Census tracts are maintained for the CA even if the population of the core subsequently falls below 50,000. All CMAs are subdivided into census tracts.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961, 1956, 1951, 1941

Remarks

The terms 'population centre,' 'core,' 'fringe' and 'rural area' replace the terms 'urban area,' 'urban core,' 'urban fringe' and 'rural fringe' since the 2011 Census.

The type of population centre is determined by the relationship between the population centre and the structure of the census metropolitan areas (CMAs) or census agglomerations (CAs). Possible types within a CMA or CA are as follows: core, secondary core, fringe and rural area.

Cores

A census metropolitan area (CMA) or a census agglomeration (CA) can have more than one core. The boundaries and population data for the cores that are used to delineate CMAs and CAs are taken from the previous census. Moreover, the core of a CMA must have a population of at least 50,000 and the core of a CA must have a population of at least 10,000. In all other cases where a CMA or a CA has more than one core, the additional cores are called fringes if they are in the same municipality (census subdivision), or secondary cores if they are in another municipality. In both cases, the population exceeds 10,000. If the previous census population count of a population centre does not exceed 10,000, it is also called a fringe. Also, when a CA is merged with a CMA, the core of the former CA also becomes a secondary core of that CMA. If the population of a fringe exceeds 10,000, and it is not in the same municipality as an existing core, it becomes a secondary core of the CMA or CA in which it exists.

Delineation rules for CMAs and CAs

A CMA or CA is delineated using adjacent municipalities (census subdivisions) as building blocks. These census subdivisions (CSDs) are included in the CMA or CA if they meet at least one of the following rules. The rules are ranked in order of priority. A CSD obeying the rules for two or more CMAs or CAs is included in the one for which it has the highest ranked rule. If the CSD meets rules that have the same rank, the decision is based on the population or the number of commuters (journey to work) involved. A CMA or CA is delineated to ensure spatial contiguity.

1. **Delineation core rule:** The CSD falls completely or partly (at least 50% of its population) inside the core.

For the purposes of CMA and CA delineation, a delineation core composed of one or more CSDs is created. For a CSD to be included in the primary or secondary delineation core, at least 50% of its population must reside in the core. In Figure 1.6, CSD A is part of the delineation core since its entire population resides in the core. CSD B is also part of the delineation core because at least 50% of its population resides in the core. The core hole, i.e., CSD K, is not considered to be included in the delineation core and will therefore be available for other delineation rules described below.

2. **Forward commuting flow rule:** Given a minimum of 100 commuters, at least 50% of the employed labour force living in the CSD works in the delineation core, as determined by the previous rule. See the addition of the CSD C in the Figure 1.7. These counts are established based on responses to the place of work question from the previous Census Program (see note below).

Note: To delineate the CMAs and CAs, the data on place of work are taken from the Census Program. Commuting, i.e., the journey to work, comprises four categories: at home; outside Canada; no fixed workplace address and usual place of work. The calculation of the employed labour force excludes the category of no fixed workplace address. Moreover, all calculations of commuting flows exclude data on no fixed workplace address.

3. **Reverse commuting flow rule:** Given a minimum of 100 commuters, at least 50%* of the employed labour force working in the CSD lives in the delineation core as determined from commuting data based on the place of work question from the previous Census Program. In Figure 1.8, at least 50%* of the employed labour force working in CSD D lives in the CSDs A and B (see note for rule 2).

* In 2011, the percentage was set at 25%.

4. Spatial contiguity rule: Where necessary to eliminate holes, CSDs that do not meet a commuting flow threshold may be included in a CMA or CA, and CSDs that do meet a commuting flow threshold may be excluded from a CMA or CA.

Two situations can lead to the inclusion or exclusion of a CSD in a CMA or CA for reasons of spatial contiguity. Specifically, these are:

Outlier – A CSD (E in Figure 1.9) with sufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse) is enclosed by a CSD (F in Figure 1.9) with insufficient commuting flows, but which is adjacent to the CMA or CA. When this situation arises, the CSDs within and including the enclosing CSD are grouped to create a minimum CSD set (E + F). The total commuting flows for the minimum CSD set are then considered for inclusion in the CMA or CA. If the minimum CSD set has sufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse) and the total minimum of commuters is at least 100, then all of its CSDs are included in the CMA or CA.

Hole – A CSD (G in Figure 1.9) with insufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse) is enclosed by a CSD (H in Figure 1.9) with sufficient commuting flows, and which is adjacent to the CMA or CA. When this situation arises, the CSDs within and including the enclosing CSD are grouped to create a minimum CSD set (G + H). The total commuting flows for the minimum CSD set are then considered for inclusion in the CMA or CA. If the minimum CSD set has sufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse) and the total minimum of commuters is at least 100, then all of its CSDs are included in the CMA or CA.

5. Historical comparability rule: To maintain historical comparability for CMAs and larger CAs (those with census tracts in the previous census), CSDs are retained in the CMA or CA under this rule for one census even if their commuting fall below the minimum commuting flow thresholds (rules 2, 3 or 4). Users should be forewarned that a CSD can be excluded from a CMA or from a larger CA at the next census or the next delineation. See Figure 1.10 for the addition of the CSD I.

An exception to the historical comparability rule is made in cases where CSDs have undergone changes to their boundaries, such as annexations. To determine whether to keep or exclude a CSD, place of work data are re-tabulated for the CSD with boundary changes, and a decision to include or exclude the CSD is made according to the previous rules.

6. Manual adjustments: A CMA or CA represents an area that is economically and socially integrated. However, there are certain limitations to the extent by which this ideal can be met. Since the CSDs that are used as building blocks in CMA and CA delineation are administrative units, their boundaries do not always match other statistical units (i.e., population centre cores). There can be situations where the application of the above rules creates undesirable outcomes, or where the rules cannot be easily applied. In these circumstances, a manual override is sometimes applied to ensure that the integrity of the program is retained.

For example, when the CSD is partially inside the core and, based on data from the previous Census of Population, less than 50% of its population resides in the core and it does not meet any of the other delineation rules (rules 1, 2, 3 or 4). In Figure 1.16, CSDs A and B are included in the CMA under the delineation core rule, while CSD J is retained under the manual adjustment rule (core).

Another example of manual adjustment of a core hole, which refers to a CSD that does not qualify for any delineation rule (rules 1, 2, 3 or 4) that is located inside another CSD that does qualify under the delineation core rule (rule 1). In these situations, core holes are included in the CMA or CA to maintain spatial contiguity. In Figure 1.16, CSDs A and B are included in the CMA under the delineation core rule, while CSD K is retained under the manual adjustment rule (core hole).

Thus, in Figure 1.16, CSDs A and B are included in the CMA under the delineation core rule, while CSDs J and K are both part of the manual adjustment rule, specifically under the core and core hole criteria respectively.

Finally, the CSDs that consist of several parts or that contain holes also influence application of the manual adjustment rule. An example of this situation can be found in Miramichi CA (New Brunswick), where the CSD of Red Bank 4, IRI, which is in two parts, is included to maintain spatial contiguity. See CSD L, in two parts, in Figure 1.16.

7. Merging adjacent CMAs and CAs and secondary core rule: A CA adjacent to a CMA can be merged with the CMA if the total percentage commuting (journey to work) interchange between the CA and CMA is equal to at least 35% of the employed labour force living in the CA, based on place of work data from the previous Census Program. The total percentage commuting interchange is the sum of the commuting flow in both directions between the CMA and the CA as a percentage of the labour force living in the CA (i.e., resident employed labour force, excluding the no fixed workplace address category).

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c}\text{Total resident employed labour force}\\ \text{living in the CA and working in the CMA}\end{array} + \begin{array}{c}\text{Total resident employed labour force}\\ \text{living in the CMA and working in the CA}\end{array}}{\text{Resident employed labour force of the CA}} \quad \text{X} \quad 100\%$$

If more than one CA is adjacent to the same CMA, each CA is assessed separately with the CMA. Several CAs may be merged with one CMA. If the total percentage commuting interchange is less than 35%, the CMA and CA are not merged. After a CA is merged with a CMA, the core of the former CA is called the secondary core of the CMA. See Figure 1.11.

Naming convention for CMAs and CAs

Prior to May 25, 2009, the convention for the naming of a CMA or CA was based on the name of the principal population centre or largest city at the time the CMA or CA was first formed. This standard had been used since the 1971 Census. Through the years, the CMA and CA names have remained stable. The most important changes resulted from name changes to the census subdivisions (resulting from municipal dissolutions, incorporations and name changes).

Guidelines for CMA name change requests

The key revision to the convention is the establishment of 'Guidelines for CMA name change requests' as published in *Preliminary 2011 Census Metropolitan and Census Agglomeration Delineation* (Catalogue no. 92F0138M). Below are the guidelines for requesting a change:

1. CMA names can consist of up to three legislated municipal names of eligible census subdivisions (CSDs) that are components of the CMA. However, the number of name elements in any new CMA name request is limited to five. If any of the eligible CSD names are already hyphenated or compound, the number of CSD names will be limited to two or one if the number of name elements exceeds five.
2. The eligible municipal names include the historic central municipality name and the two component CSDs with the largest population, and having a population of at least 10,000, according to the last census.
3. The ordering of the municipal names within the CMA name is determined by the historic (central) municipality and the population size of the eligible CSDs. The first component of the CMA name is always the historic (central) CSD even if its census population count is less than the other eligible component CSDs. This ensures that CMA names retain a measure of stability for better longitudinal recognition. The second and third place name order is determined by population size. The component CSD with the higher census population count at the time of the name change assumes the second position and the next largest component CSD, the third position.
4. In order for a requested CMA name change to be implemented, there must be explicit consensus among all eligible component municipalities on a proposed new name and a formal request, in accordance with these guidelines, must be sent to the Director of the Statistical Registers and Geography Division at Statistics Canada by June 1 of the year prior to the census. The CMA name change will be implemented in the revision of the Standard Geographical Classification related to the census under consideration.
5. Statistics Canada will continue to change CMA names whenever the legislated name of a municipality changes. Any other request for a name change will only be considered within the context of these guidelines.

CMA/CA coding structure

Each CMA and CA is assigned a three-digit code that identifies it uniquely in Canada. The first digit is the same as the second digit of the province code in which the CMA or CA is located. If a CMA or CA spans a provincial boundary, then the province code assigned represents the province with the greater proportion of core population. Codes for CAs in Yukon and the Northwest Territories begin with the same digit as for those CMAs or CAs located in British Columbia. There are currently no CMAs or CAs in Nunavut.

CMA/CA code	CMA/CA name
001	St. John's CMA (N.L.)
215	Truro CA (N.S.)
462	Montréal CMA (Que.)
995	Yellowknife CA (N.W.T.)

If data for provincial parts are required, it is recommended that the two-digit province/territory (PR) code precede the CMA/CA code for those CMAs/CAs that cross provincial boundaries. For example:

PR-CMA/CA code	CMA/CA name
24 505	Ottawa - Gatineau CMA (Quebec part)
35 505	Ottawa - Gatineau CMA (Ontario part)
47 840	Lloydminster CA (Saskatchewan part)
48 840	Lloydminster CA (Alberta part)

Table 1.1 shows the number of census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations by province and territory.

Changes to the number of CMAs and CAs for the 2016 Census

Some CAs may change type between censuses. For the 2016 Census, Belleville (Ont.) and Lethbridge (Alta.), which were both a CA in 2011, became CMAs, while Grande Prairie (Alta.) and Wood Buffalo (Alta.) are now subdivided into census tracts because their core population was at least 50,000 in 2011.

Eight new CAs were created: Gander (N.L.), Sainte-Marie (Que.), Arnprior (Ont.), Carleton Place (Ont.), Wasaga Beach (Ont.), Winkler (Man.), Weyburn (Sask.) and Nelson (B.C.).

The CAs of Amos (Que.) and Temiskaming Shores (Ont.) were retired because the population of their cores dropped below 10,000 in 2011.

Data quality

CMAs and CAs are statistically comparable because they are delineated in the same way across Canada. They differ from other areas such as trading or marketing areas, or regional planning areas designated by regional authorities for planning and other purposes, and should be used with caution for non-statistical purposes.

The CSD limits used in CMA and CA delineation are those in effect on January 1, 2016 (the geographic reference date for the 2016 Census) and received by Statistics Canada before March 1, 2016. In addition, CMA and CA delineation uses commuting (journey to work) data based on the place of work question asked in the previous Census Program.

Refer to the related definitions of population centre (POPCTR); core, fringe and rural area; census subdivision (CSD).

Changes prior to the current census

2011

- In 2011, the CMA of Abbotsford became Abbotsford–Mission (B.C.) and the CMA of Kitchener became Kitchener–Cambridge–Waterloo (Ont.).
- Five new CAs were created: Steinbach (Man.), High River (Alta.), Strathmore (Alta.), Sylvan Lake (Alta.) and Lacombe (Alta.).
- The CAs of La Tuque (Que.) and Kitimat (B.C.) were retired because the population of their cores dropped below 10,000 in 2006.
- The terms 'population centre,' 'core,' 'fringe' and 'rural area' replace the terms 'urban area,' 'urban core,' 'urban fringe' and 'rural fringe' for the 2011 Census.

2006

- For 2006, CAs were no longer required to have an urban core population of 100,000 to be promoted to the status of a CMA. Instead, CAs assumed the status of a CMA if they had attained a total population of at least 100,000 of which 50,000 or more lived in the urban core.
- Prior to the 2011 Census, CMA and CA delineation used commuting data based on the place of work question asked in the decennial census. The 2006 CMAs and CAs are based on the population and place of work data from the 2001 Census while the 2001 and 1996 CMAs and CAs are based on population and place of work data from the 1991 Census.

2001

- For 2001, CAs were required to have an urban core population of at least 100,000 to be changed to the status of a CMA.
- For 2001, consolidated CMAs were no longer defined for dissemination purposes. As a result, primary CMAs and primary CAs were also not defined. However, the consolidation rule was retained and incorporated into the CMA delineation methodology. There was no substantive change to the methodology for defining CMAs and no change to the limits of CMAs resulting from this rule change.
- Prior to 2001, adjacent CMAs and CAs that had sufficient commuting interchange (35% or more) and were merged were identified by the terms 'primary census metropolitan area (PCMA)' and 'primary census agglomeration (PCA).' The terms 'consolidated census metropolitan area (CCMA)' and 'consolidated census agglomeration (CCA)' described the sum of the component CMAs and CAs. Census data were disseminated for these areas. These terms were not used for the standard dissemination program for 2001.
- Six of 27 CMAs were affected significantly as a result of municipal restructuring: Halifax (N.S.), Ottawa - Hull (Ont./Que.), Kingston (Ont.), Greater Sudbury (Ont.), London (Ont.) and Windsor (Ont.).

1996

- Two changes to CMA/CA delineation rules were implemented to preserve data comparability over time. CMAs could be consolidated with CAs, but they could not be consolidated with other CMAs. A primary census agglomeration (PCA) could not be retired from a consolidated CMA or CA (with census tracts at the previous census) even if its total commuting interchange percentage dropped below the consolidation threshold of 35%. Exceptions to this rule could occur due to changes in the physical structure of the urban areas used to determine the urban cores.
- Minimum sets of CSDs were used instead of the census consolidated subdivisions (CCSs) for evaluation in the spatial contiguity rule. Refer to the spatial contiguity rule (rule 4).

1986

- Introduction of the consolidated and primary CMA and CA concept.

- The forward commuting threshold was raised from 40% to 50% to control for differences in processing of the place of work data between 1971 and 1981.
- Introduction of the minimum of 100 commuters for forward and reverse commuting for both CMAs and CAs. Single CSD (component) CAs were permitted.

1981

- Commuting data based on the place of work question of the previous decennial census were used for the first time to delineate CAs. For both CMAs and CAs, the forward commuting threshold was 40% and the reverse commuting threshold was 25%.
- The minimum urbanized core population for CAs was raised from 2,000 to 10,000.
- CAs were eligible for census tracts if they had a CSD with a population of at least 50,000 at the time of the previous census. Single CSD (component) CAs could be created for subdivision into census tracts.

1976

- Commuting data based on the place of work question of the previous decennial census were used for the first time to delineate CMAs. The forward commuting threshold was 40% and the reverse commuting threshold was 25% for the CMAs.
- For CAs, see 1971.

1971

- CMAs were defined as main labour market areas, but were delineated according to alternate criteria based on the labour force composition, population growth rate and accessibility. At this time, the CMA of Saint John, N.B. was 'grandfathered.'
- CAs were comprised of at least two adjacent municipal entities. These entities had to be at least partly urban and belong to an urbanized core having a population of at least 2,000. The urbanized core included a largest city and a remainder, each with a population of at least 1,000, and had a population density of at least 1,000 per square mile (386 people per square kilometre).

1966

- See 1961.

1961

- CMAs were delineated around cities with a population of at least 50,000, if the population density and labour force composition criteria were met, and the total CMA population was at least 100,000.
- CAs were called major urban areas; see 1951.

1956

- See 1951.

1951

- The term 'census metropolitan area' appeared for the first time. This term designated cities of over 50,000 having fringe municipalities in close geographic, economic and social relations, the whole constituting a unit of over 100,000.
- The concept of 'major urban areas,' the forerunners to CAs, was introduced. The term designated urban areas in which the largest city had a population of at least 25,000 and fewer than 50,000.

1941

- Data were published for 'greater cities,' i.e., those cities which have well-defined satellite communities in close economic relationship to them.

Census subdivision – previous census

Definition

'Census subdivision – previous census' refers to the census subdivisions as of January 1, 2011, the geographic reference date for the 2011 Census. A 'best fit' linkage is established between dissemination blocks for the 2016 Census and census subdivisions (municipalities) for the 2011 Census. This linkage ensures that data from the current census can be tabulated for the census subdivisions from the previous census.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001

Remarks

The boundaries and names of census subdivisions (municipalities) can change from one census to the next because of annexations, dissolutions and incorporations. These changes can result in fewer, larger census subdivisions and historical data analyses becoming more complex. The concept of 'census subdivision – previous census' was established to provide a means of tabulating current census data according to census subdivisions as they were delineated for the previous census.

Census data are tabulated for each standard geographic area by aggregating the data for individual dissemination blocks. Dissemination blocks respect the boundaries of census subdivisions for the current census (2016 Census), but do not necessarily respect the boundaries of census subdivisions for the previous census (2011 Census). In order to facilitate the tabulation of 2016 Census data for the census subdivisions (CSDs) as they existed for the 2011 Census, the 2016 dissemination block representative points are overlaid onto the previous census CSD boundaries. The goal is to ensure that at least one dissemination block is linked to each previous census CSD. In a few cases, there is not an exact match – that is, some dissemination blocks straddle two or more CSDs from the previous census, but can only be linked to one CSD. For these cases, a 'best fit' approach is used to ensure that the representative point for at least one dissemination block is linked to every previous census CSD. Thus, reasonably accurate tabulations of 2016 Census data can be produced for the census subdivisions as of January 1, 2011, the geographic reference date for the 2011 Census.

Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD); dissemination block (DB); geographic reference date and representative point.

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Census subdivision (CSD)

Definition

Census subdivision (CSD) is the general term for municipalities (as determined by provincial/territorial legislation) or areas treated as municipal equivalents for statistical purposes (e.g., Indian reserves, Indian settlements and unorganized territories). Municipal status is defined by laws in effect in each province and territory in Canada.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

Census subdivision type

Census subdivisions (CSDs) are classified into 53 types according to official designations adopted by provincial/ territorial or federal authorities. Two exceptions are 'subdivision of unorganized' (SNO) in Newfoundland and

Labrador, and 'subdivision of county municipality' (SC) in Nova Scotia, which are geographic areas created as equivalents for municipalities by Statistics Canada, in cooperation with those provinces, for the purpose of disseminating statistical data.

The census subdivision type accompanies the census subdivision name in order to distinguish CSDs from each other, for example, Balmoral, VL (for the village of Balmoral) and Balmoral, P (for the parish / *paroisse* (*municipalité de*) of Balmoral).

Table 1.5 shows CSD types, their abbreviated forms, and their distribution by province and territory.

Census subdivision types associated with 'on reserve' population

On reserve population is a derived census variable that is captured by using the census subdivision (CSD) type according to criteria established by Indigenous and Northern Affairs Canada (INAC; formerly Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development Canada [AANDC]). On reserve population includes people living in any of the six CSD types legally affiliated with First Nations or Indian bands (described below).

The following census subdivision types are based on the legal definition of communities affiliated with First Nations or Indian bands.

1. Indian reserve (IRI) – A tract of federally owned land with specific boundaries that is set apart for the use and benefit of an Indian band and that is governed by Indigenous and Northern Affairs Canada (INAC). Statistics Canada only recognizes the subset of Indian reserves that are populated (or potentially populated) as census subdivisions. For 2016, of the more than 3,200 Indian reserves across Canada, there are 949 Indian reserves classified as CSDs (including the 9 reserves added for 2016). Statistics Canada works closely with INAC to identify those reserves to be added as CSDs.
2. Indian settlement (S-É) – A place where a self-contained group of at least 10 Indian (Aboriginal) persons resides more or less permanently. It is usually located on Crown lands under federal or provincial/territorial jurisdiction. Indian settlements have no official limits and have not been set apart for the use and benefit of an Indian band as is the case with Indian reserves. Statistics Canada relies on INAC to identify Indian settlements to be recognized as census subdivisions, and their inclusion must be with the agreement of the provincial or territorial authorities. An arbitrary boundary is delineated to represent each Indian settlement as a census subdivision. (Exclusions: Champagne Landing 10, Klukshu, Two Mile and Two and One-Half Mile Village and Kloo Lake which have CSD type S-É are excluded from this tabulation.)
3. Indian government district (IGD) – Sechelt reserve lands in British Columbia. The *Sechelt Indian Band Self-Government Act* is a transfer by Her Majesty in right of Canada to the Sechelt Band in all Sechelt reserve lands, recognizing that the Sechelt Band would assume complete responsibility for the management, administration and control of all Sechelt lands. The *Sechelt Indian Government District Enabling Act* (British Columbia) recognizes the district Council as the governing body of the Sechelt Indian Government District. The district Council may enact laws or by-laws that a municipality has power to enact under an act of the province.
4. *Terres réservées aux Cris* (TC) – Parcels of land in Quebec set aside for the permanent residence of Cree First Nations of Quebec. Terres réservées aux Cris are adjacent to villages cris. The area of a village cri is set aside for the use of Cree bands, but members of Cree bands are not permanently residing there. Note that a *village cri* and its *adjacent terre réservée aux Cris* can have the same name, e.g., the *village cri* of Waswanipi and the *terre reservée* aux Cris of Waswanipi.
5. Terres *réservées aux Naskapis* (TK) – Parcels of land in Quebec set aside for the permanent residence of Naskapi First Nations of Quebec. *Terres réservées aux Naskapis* are adjacent to *village Naskapi*. The lone area of *village Naskapi* is set aside for the use of the Naskapi band, although its members do not reside there permanently.
6. Nisga'a land (NL) – Part of the territory whose title has been transferred to the Nisga'a Nation by the Final Land Claims Agreement of 1998 between the Nisga'a Nation, the Government of Canada and the Government of British Columbia. Together with the four Nisga'a villages (NVL), this territory makes up the Nisga'a Lands defined by the land claims agreement.

Census subdivision code

The census subdivision (CSD) code is a three-digit code that is based on the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). In order to uniquely identify each CSD in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code and the two-digit census division (CD) code must precede the CSD code. For example:

PR-CD-CSD code	CSD name and type
12 06 008	Mahone Bay, T (N.S.)
35 06 008	Ottawa, CV (Ont.)

There are two municipalities in Canada that straddle provincial limits: Flin Flon (Manitoba and Saskatchewan) and Lloydminster (Saskatchewan and Alberta). Each of their provincial parts is treated as a separate CSD. Indian reserves are also treated as separate CSDs when they straddle provincial limits.

Changes to census subdivisions for the 2016 Census

Noteworthy municipal restructuring occurred in Manitoba, with 107 dissolutions and 47 incorporations.

The following reserve CSDs were deleted because they are not to be populated.

- Ocean Man 69B (4701811), Chief Joseph Custer (4715846), Potato River 156A (4718810), Fond du Lac 229 (4718833), Fond du Lac 232 (4718846), Fond du Lac 231 (4718847) in Saskatchewan
- Charles Lake 225 (4816855), Fort McKay 174 (4816856), Namur River 174A (4816857), Namur Lake 174B (4816858), Kapawe'no First Nation (Halcro 150C) (4817852), Kapawe'no First Nation (Grouard 230) (4817858) in Alberta
- Klahkowit 5 (5933830), Alexis Creek 24 (5941819), Alexis Creek 25 (5941820), Alexis Creek 17 (5941842), Seymour Meadows 19 (5941843), Toby's Meadow 4 (5941846), Alexis Creek 6 (5941847), Tatelkus Lake 28 (5941865), Kluachon Lake 1 (5949830) in British Columbia

The boundaries, names, codes and statuses of census subdivisions reflect those in effect on January 1, 2016, the geographic reference date for the 2016 Census of Canada. Information about any CSD changes that were effective on or before the January 1, 2016 reference date must have been received by Statistics Canada prior to March 1, 2016, in order to be processed in time for the census.

Refer to the related definition of Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) and to the *2016 Standard Geographical Classification (SGC), Volume I* (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/eng/subjects/standard/sgc/2016/index) (Catalogue no. 12-571-X) for summaries of the intercensal census subdivision changes to codes, names and statuses.

Changes prior to the current census

British Columbia: The following reserve and settlement CSDs were combined in order to provide more meaningful statistics.

- Alert Bay 1 (5943801) and Alert Bay 1A (5943802) to Alert Bay (5943837)
- Alexandria 1 (5941815), Alexandria 1A (5941870), Alexandria 3 (5941816) and Alexandria 3A (5941814) to Alexandria (5941882)
- Anahim's Meadow 2 (5941822) and Anahim's Meadow 2A (5941823) to Anahim's Meadow (5941883)
- Chuchhriaschin 5 (5933816) and Chuchhriaschin 5A (5933822) to Chuchhriaschin (5933810)
- Cowichan 1 (5919807) and Cowichan 9 (5919806) to Cowichan (5919822)
- Garden 2 (5941830) and Garden 2A (5941832) to Garden (5941884)
- Halhalaeden 14 (5933818) and Halhalaeden 14A (5933815) to Halhalaeden (5933813)
- Inkluckcheen 21 (5933820) and Inkluckcheen 21B (5933894) to Inkluckcheen (5933833)
- Kanaka Bar 1A (5933826) and Kanaka Bar 2 (5933827) to Kanaka Bar (5933882)

- Little Springs 8 (5941874) and Little Springs 18 (5941875) to Little Springs (5941885)
- Mount Currie 1 (5931803), Mount Currie 2 (5931811), Mount Currie 6 (5931838), Mount Currie 8 (5931837) and Mount Currie 10 (5931804) to Mount Currie (5931843)
- Nanaimo River 2 (5921802), Nanaimo River 3 (5921801) and Nanaimo River 4 (5921803) to Nanaimo River (5921807)
- Nequatque 1 (5931805), Nequatque 2 (5931840) and Nequatque 3A (5931810) to Nequatque (5931844)
- Neskonlith 1 (Neskainlith 1) (5933883) and Neskonlith 2 (5933885) to Neskonlith (5933838)
- North Tacla Lake 7 (5951812) and North Tacla Lake 7A (5951841) to North Tacla Lake (5951848)
- Sachteen 2 (5909855) and Sachteen 2A (5909860) to Sachteen (5909883)
- Siska Flat 3 (5933860) and Siska Flat 8 (5933864) to Siska Flat (5933849)
- Skowkale 10 (5909822) and Skowkale 11 (5909823) to Skowkale (5909884)
- Spences Bridge 4 (5933867) and Spences Bridge 4C (5933871) to Spences Bridge (5933881)
- Squiaala 7 (5909828) and Squiaala 8 (5909829) to Squiaala (5909885)
- Switsemalph 6 (5939809) and Switsemalph 7 (5939810) to Switsemalph (5939811)
- Telegraph Creek 6 (5949826) and Telegraph Creek 6A (5949827) to Telegraph Creek (5949847)
- T'Sou-ke 1 (Sooke 1) (5917817) and T'Sou-ke 2 (Sooke 2) (5917818) to T'Sou-ke (5917819)
- Aiyansh (Kitladamas) 1, NVL (5949836); Gingolx, NVL (5949842); Gitwinksihlkw, NVL (5949838); Laxgalts'ap, NVL (5949840) and New Aiyansh, NVL (5949834) to Nisga'a, NL (5949035).

Census tract (CT)

Definition

Census tracts (CTs) are small, relatively stable geographic areas that usually have a population of less than 10,000 persons, based on data from the previous Census of Population Program. They are located in census metropolitan areas and in census agglomerations that had a core population of 50,000 or more in the previous census.

A committee of local specialists (for example, planners, health and social workers, and educators) initially delineates census tracts in conjunction with Statistics Canada. Once a census metropolitan area (CMA) or census agglomeration (CA) has been subdivided into census tracts, the census tracts are maintained even if the core population subsequently declines below 50,000.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961, 1956, 1951, 1941

Remarks

Rules are used to delineate census tracts. The initial delineation rules are ranked in the order of the following priorities:

1. Census tract (CT) boundaries must follow permanent and easily recognizable physical features. However, street extensions, utility or transportation easements, property lines and former municipal limits may be used as CT boundaries if physical features are not in close proximity or do not exist.
2. For the 2016 Census, CT boundaries must follow the boundaries of the Census subdivision types associated with 'on reserve' population.
3. The population of a CT usually range between 2,500 and 10,000, with a preferred average of 5,000. CTs on reserves, in the central business district, in major commercial and industrial zones, or in peripheral areas can have populations outside this range.

4. CTs should be as homogeneous as possible in terms of socioeconomic characteristics, such as similar economic status and social living conditions at the time of its creation.
5. The shape of CTs should be as compact as possible.
6. CT boundaries respect census metropolitan area, census agglomeration and provincial boundaries, but do not necessarily respect census subdivision (municipality) boundaries.

Changes to census tract boundaries are discouraged to ensure data comparability between censuses. Boundary revisions rarely occur, and only when essential. Road construction, railroad abandonment, community redevelopment, neighborhood growth and municipal annexations may contribute to changes in boundaries. A census tract may be split into two or more new census tracts (usually when its population exceeds 10,000). CT splits are usually done in a way that allows users to re-aggregate the splits to the original census tract for historical comparison.

Naming convention for census tracts

Each census tract is assigned a seven-character numeric "name" (including leading zeros, decimal point and trailing zeros). To uniquely identify each census tract in its corresponding census metropolitan area (CMA) or tracted census agglomeration (CA), the three-digit CMA/CA code must precede the CT "name." For example:

CMA/CA code – CT name	CMA/CA name
562 0005.00	Samia CA (Ont.)
933 0005.00	Vancouver CMA (B.C.)

Census tract naming is consistent from census to census to facilitate historical comparability.

When a census agglomeration enters the census tract program, the census subdivision (CSD) that gives the CA its name is assigned the first CT "name," starting at 0001.00. When all of the CTs in the first CSD are named, then the CTs of the adjoining CSDs are named, and finally those on the periphery.

If a census tract is split into two or more parts due to a population increase, the number after the decimal point identifies the splits. For example, CT 0042.00 becomes CT 0042.01 and CT 0042.02. If CT 0042.01 is subsequently split, it becomes CT 0042.03 and CT 0042.04. Similarly, if CT 0042.02 is split after CT 0042.01, it becomes CT 0042.05 and CT 0042.06. Any splits occurring after this would be numbered in a similar way, with the next sequential number. This allows users to re-aggregate the splits to the original census tract.

Table 1.1 shows the number of census tracts by province and territory.

The nature of the census tract concept, along with the availability of a wide range of census data, makes census tracts useful in many applications. These include:

- municipal and regional planning and research, such as the development, evaluation and revision of official plans
- educational and research studies in high schools, community colleges and universities
- market research, such as identifying areas of opportunity and evaluating market or service potential for housing, health, educational, recreational or retailing facilities.

Census tracts should be used with caution for non-statistical purposes.

Refer to the related definition of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA).

Changes prior to the current census

Beginning in 1996, census agglomerations were eligible for census tracts based on the population size of their cores (50,000 or more at the previous census). This was a change from previous censuses, when census agglomerations had to contain a municipality (census subdivision) with a population of 50,000 or more at the previous census to be eligible for census tracts.

From 1971 to 1991, a provincial census tract program existed. Provincial census tracts were similar in concept to census tracts, but covered areas outside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations. Taken together, census tracts and provincial census tracts covered all of Canada.

In 1941 and 1946, census tracts were called 'social areas.'

Core, fringe and rural area

Definition

The terms 'core,' 'fringe' and 'rural area' distinguish between population centres (POPCTR) and rural areas (RA) within a census metropolitan area (CMA) or census agglomeration (CA).

A CMA or CA can have two types of cores: the core and the secondary core. The **core** is the population centre (POPCTR) with the highest population, around which a CMA or a CA is delineated. The boundaries and population counts of the population centres (core) used to delineate the CMAs or CAs are taken from the previous census. The core must have a population of at least 50,000 persons in the case of a CMA, or at least 10,000 persons in the case of a CA.

The **secondary core** is a population centre with at least 10,000 persons (based on the previous census) and that is within a CMA or CA, but outside the main municipality (census subdivision) that contains the core. The secondary core can also be the core of a CA that has been merged with an adjacent CMA.

The term '**fringe**' is applied to all population centres (POPCTRs) within a CMA or CA that have less than 10,000 persons (based on the previous census) that are not contiguous to a core or a secondary core. In some circumstances (POPCTRs) that have 10,000 or more persons (based on the previous census) are designated 'fringe'. These are POPCTRs that exist inside census subdivisions (CSD) that are already contiguous with a core or a secondary core. All territory within a CMA or CA that is not classified as a core or fringe is classified as '**rural area**'.

Reported in

2016, 2011

Remarks

While every CMA and CA has a core, it may or may not have a secondary core, a fringe or a rural area. See Figure 1.12.

Population counts for population centres are published according to the class of population centre, regardless of whether they are inside or outside of a CMA or CA. Population centres are classified into one of three groups, depending on the size of their population:

- small population centres, with a population between 1,000 and 29,999
- medium population centres, with a population between 30,000 and 99,999
- large urban population centres, with a population of 100,000 or more.

Refer to related definitions of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); population centre (POPCTR) and rural area (RA).

Changes prior to the current census

For the 2011 Census, the terms 'core,' 'fringe' and 'rural area' replace the terms 'urban core,' 'urban fringe' and 'rural fringe.' These terms distinguish between population centres (POPCTRs) and rural areas (RAs) within a census metropolitan area (CMA) or census agglomeration (CA).

Prior to 2011, the terms 'urban core,' 'secondary urban core,' 'urban fringe' and 'rural fringe' were used.

Beginning in 2001, the concept of the secondary urban core was used to describe the urban core of a CA that merged with an adjacent CMA.

Beginning in 1996, the term 'urban core' replaced the term 'urbanized core.' The term 'urbanized core' was used from 1971 to 1991.

Prior to 1996, this concept was known as CMA/CA parts.

Beginning in 1986, primary CMAs (PCMAs) and primary CAs (PCAs) were delineated within some CMAs and CAs. Because of this change, some urban areas that were urban fringes of 1981 CMAs or CAs became urban cores of 1986 PCMAs or PCAs.

For 1976 and 1971, the urbanized core was further broken down into the 'largest city' and 'remainder.'

For 1966 and 1961, the urban part of the CMA was divided into the 'metropolitan area – urban' (continuous built-up area) and the 'metropolitan area – outside urban' (non-continuous built-up area); the remaining rural part was known as 'metropolitan area – rural.'

Designated place (DPL)

Definition

Usually a small community that does not meet the criteria used to define municipalities or population centres (areas with a population of at least 1,000 and a density of 400 persons per square kilometre). Designated places are created by provinces and territories, in cooperation with Statistics Canada, to provide data for submunicipal areas.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996

Remarks

The criteria that small communities or settlements must meet in order to become a designated place (DPL) include:

- an area less than or equal to 10 square kilometres
- a boundary that respects the block structure from the previous census, where possible.

In cooperation with the provinces and territories, DPLs are updated, added or deleted once every five years in accordance with the criteria that define them.

The areas recognized as DPLs may not represent all places having the same status within a province or territory.

Two new DPL types were added for 2016: Northern settlement (NS) in Saskatchewan, and Retired population centres (RPC) in all provinces or territories, where applicable.

The 2011 population centres which no longer meet the criteria to be included in the 2016 population centre program are considered for inclusion in the designated place program for 2016. Those retired population centres that qualify to be part of the DPL program are assigned the retired population centre (RPC) DPL type. Due to the rebasing of population centres for 2016, a total of 38 RPC-type DPLs were added.

New for 2016, designated places and population centre overlap is permitted.

Table 1.1 shows the number of designated places by province and territory.

Table 1.6 shows the types of designated places, their abbreviated forms and their distribution by province and territory.

Each designated place is assigned a four-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each DPL in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code must precede the DPL code. For example:

PR code	DPL code	DPL name
12	0085	Masstown (N.S.)
13	0085	Saint-Pons (N.B.)
35	0085	McGregor Bay part B (Ont.)

Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD) and population centre (POPCTR).

Changes prior to the current census

For 2011, the term 'population centre' replaced the term 'urban area.'

Although designated places (DPLs) were not intended to overlap population centre (POPCTR) boundaries in 2011, there were some exceptions. For example,

- the DPL of Cowichan 1 (DPL 59 0321) in British Columbia overlapped the POPCTR of Duncan (POPCTR 0243). In an effort to minimize data suppression for this area, this DPL still represents a formerly discontiguous Aboriginal community which had been combined to form a single discontiguous census subdivision (CSD).

Prior to the 2016 Census, a retired population centre may have been eligible to become a DPL, however, they were assigned a DPL type that was valid within the affected province or territory since the DPL type retired population centre (RPC) did not exist.

In 2011, designated places were no longer required to respect census subdivision boundaries.

In 2006, the criteria that small communities were required to respect in order to become a DPL included:

- a minimum population of 100 and a maximum population of 1,000. The maximum population limit may have been exceeded provided that the population density was less than 400 persons per square kilometre, which was the population density that defined an urban area
- a population density of 150 persons or more per square kilometre
- an area less than or equal to 10 square kilometres
- a boundary that respected the block structure from the previous census, where possible
- a boundary that respected census subdivision (CSD) limits.

The final two criteria were new for 2006, the last of which was established to eliminate the need to maintain DPL parts. To ensure that DPLs created in 2001 or earlier respected 2006 CSD boundaries, DPLs straddling CSD boundaries were split to create independent DPLs. To maintain historical comparability and ease the transition into this new criteria, each new independent DPL kept its existing name, with 'part' added to it, such as part A, part B, and was assigned its own unique code.

In 2001 and earlier, designated places were not required to respect census subdivision (CSD) boundaries. As a result, a number of DPLs straddled two or more CSDs. To identify these DPLs and the CSDs that they straddled, the seven-digit SGC code (PR-CD-CSD) had to precede the DPL code. The DPL part flag identified the number of parts the DPL was divided into as a result of straddling CSDs.

In 1996, Statistics Canada introduced the concept of designated places as a new geographic area for data dissemination to respond to the increasing demand for population counts and census data according to 'submunicipal' or unincorporated areas. The concept generally applied to small communities for which there may have been some level of legislation, but they fell below the criteria established for municipal status.

Between 1981 and 1991, Statistics Canada had facilitated the retrieval of census data by delineating these submunicipal areas at the enumeration area level only. The number of areas delineated expanded from fewer than 50 northern communities in Manitoba in 1981, to more than 800 areas across Canada by 1996.

Dissemination area (DA)

Definition

A dissemination area (DA) is a small, relatively stable geographic unit composed of one or more adjacent dissemination blocks with an average population of 400 to 700 persons based on data from the previous Census of Population Program. It is the smallest standard geographic area for which all census data are disseminated. DAs cover all the territory of Canada.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001

Remarks

For 2016, dissemination area (DA) boundary updates were undertaken where census tract and census subdivision boundaries were modified. In addition, a limited number of user-defined DA updates were completed.

Dissemination area rules

Dissemination areas respect several delineation criteria designed to maximize their usefulness for data analysis and to meet operational constraints.

1. Dissemination area (DA) boundaries respect the boundaries of census subdivisions and census tracts. DAs therefore remain stable over time, to the extent that census subdivisions and census tracts do.
2. Dissemination area boundaries follow roads. DA boundaries may follow other features (such as railways, water features, power transmission lines), where these features form part of the boundaries of census subdivisions or census tracts.
3. Dissemination areas are uniform in terms of population size, which is usually targeted from 400 to 700 persons to avoid data suppression. DAs with lower population counts (including zero population) may result in order to respect the boundaries of census subdivisions and census tracts. DAs with higher population counts may also result.
4. Dissemination areas are delineated based on the block population counts from the previous census due to operational constraints.
5. Dissemination areas are compact in shape, to the extent possible while respecting the above criteria.

Dissemination area codes

Each dissemination area (DA) is assigned a four-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each DA in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code and the two-digit census division (CD) code must precede the DA code. For example:

PR-CD-DA code	Description
12 09 0103	Province 12: Nova Scotia CD 09: Halifax DA 0103
59 09 0103	Province 59: British Columbia CD 09: Fraser Valley DA 0103

When dissemination areas were first created, geographic proximity was embedded in the DA code by assigning DA codes in a serpentine manner within each census division. As DAs evolve, this coding structure cannot be maintained. Therefore, DA codes can no longer ensure geographic proximity.

Table 1.1 shows the number of dissemination areas by province and territory.

Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD); census tract (CT) and dissemination block (DB).

Changes prior to the current census

Previous to 2016, the number of dissemination blocks that were included in a dissemination area was limited to 99 due to operational constraints. This is no longer a constraint for the 2016 Census.

For 2011, dissemination areas (DAs) were defined as needed, rather than being completely re-delineated. This was to help ensure the comparability of data with previous censuses. To do this, planners located in areas with census tracts were surveyed for their input regarding the delineation of DAs that experienced high population growth between the 2001 and 2006 Censuses or that exceeded the DA maximum population limit. Other user-defined DA updates were accepted in areas where the DA structure either changed substantially between 2001 and 2006 as a result of automated delineation or simply did not provide users (local area experts) with relevant data since the DAs were not representative of their communities. The implementation of both of these types of user-defined updates eliminated the requirement for a fully automated delineation, which was used in previous censuses.

In 2006, dissemination areas (DAs) were delineated outside of census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs) using an automated area delineation system. Within CMAs and CAs that contained census tracts (CTs), DAs were kept relatively stable since the previous census. Some DAs in these areas were adjusted to respect changes to CT, CA, and CMA boundaries.

In 2001, the DA was a new standard geographic area. It replaced the enumeration area (EA) as a basic unit for dissemination. The 1996 population counts were used to delineate the DAs, mainly in blockface geocoding areas of CMAs and those CAs that contained CTs. Everywhere else, the 2001 DAs were the same as the 2001 EAs used for data collection.

Dissemination block (DB)

Definition

A dissemination block (DB) is an area bounded on all sides by roads and/or boundaries of standard geographic areas. The dissemination block is the smallest geographic area for which population and dwelling counts are disseminated. Dissemination blocks cover all the territory of Canada.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006 (dissemination block)
2001 (block)

Remarks

Dissemination blocks are primarily an artefact of the road network. As such, the number of DBs created is a function of the timeliness and accuracy of the road network prior to the census. For the 2016 Census, the road network used for DB creation is up to date as of June 2016.

In preparation for the 2016 Census, Statistics Canada developed strategies to ensure dissemination geographies match with topographic datasets used outside Statistics Canada for policy and planning purposes. This convergence work resulted in updates to the current road network and corresponding DB structure. Convergence work was completed in British Columbia, Alberta, Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia and Prince Edward Island.

Highway medians, ramp areas and other irregular polygons may form dissemination blocks on their own. A morphological dissemination block is split to form two or more DBs wherever it is traversed by the boundaries of selected standard geographic areas. This makes it possible to aggregate dissemination block data to all higher level standard geographic areas. In 2011, DB boundaries had to respect the following standard geographic areas: federal electoral districts (FEDs), census subdivisions (CSDs), census tracts (CTs), designated places (DPLs) and dissemination areas (DAs). The 2016 DBs must respect three additional standard geographic areas: namely health regions (HRs), local health integration networks (LHNs) and previous census population centres (POPCTRs).

In rural areas where the road network is sparse or even non-existent, the boundaries of collection blocks are used to avoid creating very large dissemination blocks.

Each dissemination block is assigned a three-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each dissemination block in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code, the two-digit census division (CD) code and the four-digit dissemination area (DA) code must precede the DB code. For example:

PR-CD-DA-DB code	Description
12 09 0103 002	Province 12: Nova Scotia CD 09: Halifax DA 0103 DB 002
59 09 0103 003	Province 59: British Columbia CD 09: Fraser Valley DA 0103 DB 003

Only population and dwelling counts are disseminated at the dissemination block level (with the dissemination area being the smallest standard geographic area for which characteristic data are disseminated). To ensure confidentiality, population counts are adjusted for dissemination blocks having a population of less than 15.

Table 1.1 in the introduction shows the number of dissemination blocks by province and territory.

Refer to the related definitions of census division (CD); census subdivision (CSD); census tract (CT); designated place (DPL); dissemination area (DA); federal electoral district (FED); population centre (POPCTR) and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census

In 2006, the term 'dissemination block' replaced the term 'block.'

In 2001, the term 'block' was used.

Prior to 2001, households and their associated population and dwelling counts were geographically referenced to the enumeration area at the time of collection. For more information, refer to the *Geography Working Paper Series – Introducing the Dissemination Area for the 2001 Census: An Update* (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/bsolc/olc-cel/olc-cel?catno=92F0138MIE2000004&lang=eng) (Catalogue no. 92F0138MIE2000004).

Economic region (ER)

Definition

An economic region (ER) is a grouping of complete census divisions (CDs), with one exception in Ontario, created as a standard geographic unit for analysis of regional economic activity.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996 (economic region)
1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971 (subprovincial region)

Remarks

Within the province of Quebec, economic regions (*régions administratives*) are designated by law. In all other provinces and territories, economic regions (ERs) are created by agreement between Statistics Canada and the province/territory concerned. Prince Edward Island and the three territories each consist of one ER. In Ontario, there is one exception where the ER boundary does not respect census division boundaries: the census division of Halton is split between the ER of Hamilton–Niagara Peninsula and the ER of Toronto.

Each economic region is assigned a two-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each ER in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code must precede the two-digit ER code. For example:

PR-ER code	ER name
10 10	Avalon Peninsula (N.L.)
35 10	Ottawa (Ont.)

Changes to economic regions for the 2016 Census

In Manitoba, the boundary between Southeast (ER 46 10) and South Central (ER 46 20) was affected because part of Division No. 3 (CD 46 03) was given to Division No. 2 (CD 46 02) because Franklin, RM (CSD 46 02 025) and Emerson, T (CSD 46 03 033) were amalgamated to form Emerson–Franklin, MU (CSD 46 02 024).

Also in Manitoba, the boundary between South Central (ER 46 20) and North Central (ER 46 40) was adjusted because part of Division No. 8 (CD 46 08) was given to Division No. 4 (CD 46 04) because Notre Dame de Lourdes, VL (CSD 46 08 033) and Somerset, VL (CSD 46 04 006) and Lorne, RM (CSD 46 04 063) were amalgamated to form Lorne, MU (CSD 46 04 064).

Table 1.1 (available on February 8, 2017) shows the number of economic regions by province and territory.

Refer to the related definitions of census division (CD); census subdivision (CSD) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census

In New Brunswick, the boundary between Campbellton–Miramichi (ER 13 10) and Fredericton–Oromocto (ER 13 40) was affected because part of Stanley, P (CSD 13 10 036) was taken from York (CD 13 10) and annexed to Upper Miramichi, RCR (CSD 13 09 027) in Northumberland (CD 13 09).

In Ontario, the boundary between London (ER 35 60) and Stratford–Bruce Peninsula (ER 35 80) was affected because part of Perth East, TP (CSD 35 31 030) was taken from Perth (CD 35 31) and annexed to East Zorra-Tavistock, TP (CSD 35 32 038) in Oxford (CD 35 32).

In Alberta, the boundary between Edmonton (ER 48 60) and Banff–Jasper–Rocky Mountain House (ER 48 40) was affected because part of Yellowhead County, MD (48 14 003) was taken from Division No. 14 (CD 48 14) and annexed to Brazeau County, MD (CSD 48 11 032) in Division No. 11 (CD 48 11).

Federal electoral district (FED)

Definition

A federal electoral district (FED) is an area represented by a member of the House of Commons. The federal electoral district boundaries used for the 2016 Census are based on the 2013 Representation Order.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

Following the release of population counts from each decennial census, the Chief Electoral Officer determines the number of seats in the House of Commons and publishes the information in the *Canada Gazette*. Electoral boundaries commissions then determine the adjustments to the constituency boundaries. Based on reports from these commissions, the Chief Electoral Officer prepares a representation order (RO) that describes the boundaries and specifies the name and the population of each federal electoral district (FED). The representation order is in force on the first dissolution of Parliament that occurs at least one year after its proclamation. The 2013 Representation Order (proclaimed on October 5, 2013) was based on 2011 Census population counts, and increased the number of FEDs to 338, up from 308 for the previous 2003 Representation Order. Ontario received additional seats as well as Alberta and British Columbia. The names of FEDs may change at any time through an Act of Parliament.

The 2016 Census was taken according to the 2013 Representation Order. The FED boundaries and names used for the 2016 Census reflect those in effect on January 1, 2016 (the geographic reference date for the 2016 Census of Canada).

Each federal electoral district is assigned a three-digit code. In order to uniquely identify each FED in Canada, the two-digit province/territory (PR) code must precede the FED code. For example:

PR-FED code	FED name
46 008	Provencher (Man.)
59 023	Port Moody – Coquitlam (B.C.)

Table 1.1 shows the number of federal electoral districts (2013 Representation Order) by province and territory.

Changes prior to the current census

The 2011 and 2006 Censuses were taken according to the 2003 Representation Order.
The 2001 Census was taken according to the 1996 Representation Order.
The 1996 and 1991 Censuses were taken according to the 1987 Representation Order.
The 1986 and 1981 Censuses were taken according to the 1976 Representation Order.
The 1976 and 1971 Censuses were taken according to the 1966 Representation Order.
The 1966 and 1961 Censuses were taken according to the 1952 Representation Order.

Geographical region of Canada

Definition

The geographical regions of Canada are groupings of provinces and territories established for the purpose of statistical reporting. The six geographical regions of Canada are:

- Atlantic
- Quebec
- Ontario
- Prairies
- British Columbia
- Territories

Reported in

2016, 2011

Remarks

Refer to the related definition of Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Place name (PN)

Definition

'Place name' refers to selected names of active and retired geographic areas as well as names from the Canadian Geographical Names Data Base. Place names also include names of census subdivisions (municipalities), census divisions, designated places, population centres, provinces, federal electoral districts, economic regions and census metropolitan areas as well as the names of some local places. There can be duplicate place names, however the place name point co-ordinates have been offset for cartographic display purposes.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

The term 'place name' replaces the term 'locality' for the 2011 Census.

The purpose is to provide users with a means for searching and mapping on 'localized' place names.

Place name data keeps evolving and may not be comparable between censuses.

Refer to the related definitions of census subdivision (CSD); designated place (DPL) and population centre (POPCTR).

Changes prior to the current census

Prior to 2011, the term 'locality' was used to describe historical place names, such as former census subdivisions (municipalities), designated places and urban areas. However, the locality and place name concepts were not identical.

Prior to 2001, localities did not exist.

Prior to 1996, designated places did not exist.

Population centre (POPCTR)

Definition

A population centre (POPCTR) has a population of at least 1,000 and a population density of 400 persons or more per square kilometre, based on population counts from the current Census of Population. All areas outside population centres are classified as rural areas.

Taken together, population centres and rural areas cover all of Canada.

Population centres are classified into three groups, depending on the size of their population:

- small population centres, with a population between 1,000 and 29,999
- medium population centres, with a population between 30,000 and 99,999
- large urban population centres, with a population of 100,000 or more.

Population centre population includes all population living in the cores, secondary cores and fringes of census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs), as well as the population living in population centres outside CMAs and CAs.

Reported in

2016, 2011

Remarks

A review of the population centre concept was undertaken in 2012. The purpose of this review was to determine if the delineation rules that had been maintained over the years could be updated to optimize population centre boundaries. Based on the review, population centres were redelineated using a revised set of criteria for the 2016 Census. This rebase allowed the addition of new delineation thresholds, the inclusion of new data sets, and removal of certain constraints limiting spatial overlap with other administrative geographies.

Table 1.7 indicates how each of the three groups of population centres have changed since 2011.

To begin the rebase of population centres, the first rule, which stated that previous census population centres had to be retained if their population was 1,000 or more, was removed. Instead of retaining the previous census (2011) population centres and using them as a starting point, current census (2016) dissemination blocks (DBs) were used as building blocks for the delineation. In addition, new thresholds were added to the delineation steps.

The population density of 400 persons per square kilometre was retained as the primary density threshold and a secondary population density threshold of 200 persons per square kilometre was added. Employment density was also added to the delineation. Employment density was calculated for each dissemination block based on data obtained from Statistics Canada's Business Register and a threshold of 400 employees per square kilometre was chosen for the delineation.

The 2016 delineation rules for population centres (POPCTR) are ranked in order of priority:

1. If a dissemination block or group of contiguous dissemination blocks, each having a population density of at least 400 persons per square kilometre for the current census, then the dissemination block or group of contiguous dissemination blocks is delineated as a population cluster.
2. If a dissemination block has a population density of at least 200 persons per kilometre or an employment density of 400 employees per square kilometre and it is adjacent to a population cluster, then it is added to that cluster.
3. In order to be retained as a population centre, the resulting population cluster must have a minimum population of 1,000 and a population density of at least 400 persons per square kilometre.
4. The distance by road between population centres is measured. If the distance is less than two kilometres, then the population centres are, in most cases, combined to form a single population centre. Certain restrictions apply when combining population centres located less than two kilometres apart. For example, population centres are only combined provided they do not cross census metropolitan area (CMA) or census agglomeration (CA) boundaries, or if the population centre, which is also a secondary core, is not combined with another core. In some instances, population centres are not combined because the current block structure does not always permit such a merger. For example, if the addition of intermediate blocks would cause the population density of the newly-formed population centre to drop below 400, then the blocks would not be added and the two near adjacent population centres would remain separated.
5. Dissemination blocks that correspond to airport locations and are less than two kilometres away from the population centre are added to the population centre, provided they do not compromise the population density threshold of 400 persons per square kilometre.
6. Interior holes are filled and irregularities to outer boundaries are smoothed.

The resulting population centres are reviewed and may be modified to ensure spatial contiguity and optimal boundaries.

New for 2016, population centre, designated place and census subdivision overlap is permitted.

Most population centres contain commercial and industrial districts, railway yards, airports, parks and other uninhabited areas that result in the inclusion of dissemination blocks with population densities of less than 400 persons per square kilometre. The inclusion of less populated areas can be explained in part by the use of employment density and airport data. In general, the impact on the total population within population centres is minor, but the impact on specific land areas could be significant.

Once a population centre attains a population of 10,000 persons, it is eligible to become the core of a census agglomeration (CA). Once a population centre attains a population of 50,000 and is the core of a CA with a minimum total population of 100,000, then it is eligible to become the core of a census metropolitan area (CMA). When a population centre with a population of at least 50,000 persons is also the core of a CA, the CA is eligible for the census tract program.

Naming convention

The name of the population centre is the name of the principal census subdivision (CSD) when the CSD is (or was) a city, town or village. If two or more principal CSDs are involved, the population centre may be given a compound name. In other cases, the name of the population centre is an appropriate place name. If two previous census population centres are amalgamated, the previous census names are considered for a compound name.

In order to maintain historical comparability, an effort is made to keep core and secondary core names unchanged between censuses. Only two core names were updated between 2011 and 2016 as a direct result of the spatial representation of the rebased population centres.

Bowmanville – Newcastle was renamed to Bowmanville

St. Catharines – Niagara was renamed to St. Catharines – Niagara Falls

Geographic code

Population centre codes are unique four-digit codes that are assigned sequentially upon the POPCTR creation. These codes remain constant between censuses. If a population centre is retired due to amalgamation or failure to meet the current census population or density thresholds, then its code is retired. If a population centre is added, it is assigned the next available POPCTR code.

It is recommended that the two-digit province/territory (PR) code precede the POPCTR code in order to identify each POPCTR uniquely within its corresponding province/territory. For example:

PR-POPCTR code	POPCTR name
11 0159	Charlottetown (P.E.I.)
13 0122	Campbellton (N.B.)
24 0122	Campbellton (Que.)
46 0282	Flin Flon (Man.)
47 0282	Flin Flon (Sask.)
60 1023	Whitehorse (Y.T.)

Five POPCTRs straddle provincial boundaries: Campbellton (New Brunswick and Quebec), Hawkesbury (Ontario and Quebec), Ottawa – Gatineau (Ontario and Quebec), Flin Flon (Manitoba and Saskatchewan) and Lloydminster (Alberta and Saskatchewan).

Table 1.1 shows the number of population centres by province and territory.

Refer to the related definitions of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); census subdivision (CSD); core, fringe and rural area; designated place (DPL); dissemination block (DB); land area; place name (PN) and population density.

Changes prior to the current census

For the 2011 Census, the term 'population centre' replaced the term 'urban area'. The term 'urban area' existed at Statistics Canada from the 1961 to 2006 censuses.

Prior to 2011, urban areas included a wide range of densely-populated areas, from small centres with a population of 1,000 to very large centres of more than 1 million. This approach ignored size differences by treating all urban areas as a single group. Given the widely accepted view that a more dynamic urban-rural continuum exists, the use of the term 'urban area' could lead to misinterpretations.

In 2011, population centres were divided into three groups for the first time based on the size of their population to reflect the existence of an urban-rural continuum.

The 2011 delineation rules for population centres (POPCTR), ranked in order of priority, were as follows:

1. The 2006 urban areas were retained as 2011 population centres if their current census population remained at 1,000 or more.
2. If a dissemination block with a population density of at least 400 persons per square kilometre was adjacent to a population centre, then it was added to that population centre.
3. If a dissemination block or group of contiguous dissemination blocks, having a minimum population of 1,000 and a population density of at least 400 persons per square kilometre for the current census, then the dissemination block or group of contiguous dissemination blocks was delineated as a new population centre.
4. The distance by road between population centres was measured. If the distance was less than two kilometres, then the population centres were combined to form a single population centre, provided they did not cross census metropolitan area (CMA) or census agglomeration (CA) boundaries.
5. If a population centre was contained within a census subdivision (CSD) or a designated place (DPL), the difference in land area between the population centre and the CSD or DPL was calculated. For confidentiality purposes, if the difference between the CSD and the population centre was less than 10 square kilometres, then the boundary for the population centre was adjusted to match the CSD boundary. However, if the difference between the DPL and the population centre was less than 10 square kilometres and the remaining population was less than 100, then the population centre annexed the entire DPL and the DPL was retired.

Previous to the 2016 Census, DPLs could not overlap POPCTR boundaries, with one exception permitted in 2011. The DPL of Cowichan 1 (DPL 59 0321) in British Columbia overlapped the POPCTR of Duncan (POPCTR 0243). In an effort to minimize data suppression for this area, this DPL represented a formerly discontiguous Aboriginal community which had been combined to form a single discontiguous census subdivision (CSD).

For 2006, the boundaries of 412 urban areas for 2001 were adjusted to correct for over-bounding which largely resulted from the 2001 block structure. This correction resulted in the reduction of land area of these 2001 urban areas in preparation for the delineation of the 2006 urban areas. The correction also resulted in the reinstatement of four urban areas for 2006 which had been merged with other urban areas in 2001: Fortune (10 0300), Sainte-Croix (24 0878), Châteauguay (24 1177) and Dowling (35 1084).

One of the 2006 urban areas, Attawaspiskat 91A (UA 35 1275), was an area that had been identified as being an incompletely enumerated Indian reserve. Data for 2006 were not available for the incompletely enumerated reserves and settlements, and were not included in tabulations. Because of the missing data, users were cautioned that for the affected geographic areas, comparisons (e.g., percentage change) between 2001 and 2006 were not exact.

In 2001, the delineation of urban areas became an automated process that made it possible to use population counts and population density data from the current census.

Prior to 2001, the geographic units used for urban area delineation were census subdivisions, designated places and enumeration areas. Population counts and population density from the previous census were used in all cases, except when enumeration area boundaries had been adjusted for the current census.

For 1976, urban areas contained a population concentration of at least 1,000 persons and a population density of at least 1,000 persons per square mile (386 per square kilometre). Urban areas were combined if they were *separated by less than one mile (1.6 kilometres)*.

For 1971, 1966 and 1961, urban areas included:

- all incorporated cities, towns and villages with a population of 1,000 persons or over;
- all unincorporated places with a population of 1,000 persons or over and a population density of at least 1,000 persons per square mile; and
- the urbanized fringe and the urbanized core of a census agglomeration or census metropolitan area, that had a minimum population of 1,000 persons and a density of at least 1,000 persons per square mile.

Province or territory

Definition

'Province' and 'territory' refer to the major political units of Canada. From a statistical point of view, province and territory are basic areas for which data are tabulated. Canada is divided into 10 provinces and 3 territories.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

Statistics Canada uses standard codes and abbreviations to represent provinces and territories. The two-digit code that uniquely identifies each province/territory is based on the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). The code is assigned from east to west. The first digit represents the geographical region of Canada in which the province/territory is located and the second digit denotes one of the 10 provinces and 3 territories (Table 1.8).

Refer to the related definitions of census division (CD) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes prior to the current census

Effective October 20, 2008, the names 'Yukon Territory' in English and 'Territoire du Yukon' in French become 'Yukon' in English and in French, as per the *Yukon Act* (Chapter 7, assented March 27, 2002).

Users should be aware that there is no change to the abbreviations or to the numeric and alpha codes for Yukon. The abbreviations remain Y.T. in English and Yn in French, 60 for the numeric code and YT for the alpha code.

On October 21, 2002, the alpha code for the province of Newfoundland and Labrador changed from NF to NL. Furthermore, the official English abbreviation for Newfoundland and Labrador changed from Nfld.Lab. to N.L. The official French abbreviation remains unchanged.

Rural area (RA)

Definition

Rural areas (RAs) include all territory lying outside population centres (POPCTRs). Taken together, population centres and rural areas cover all of Canada.

Rural population includes all population living in rural areas of census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs), as well as population living in rural areas outside CMAs and CAs.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

The rural area of Canada is the area that remains after the delineation of population centres using current census population data.

Within rural areas, population densities and living conditions can vary greatly. Included in rural areas are:

- small towns, villages and other populated places with less than 1,000 population according to the current census
- rural areas of census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations that may contain estate lots, as well as agricultural, undeveloped and non-developable lands
- agricultural lands
- remote and wilderness areas.

Refer to the related definitions of census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA); core, fringe and rural areas; designated place (DPL); population centre (POPCTR) and population density.

Changes prior to the current census

Prior to 2011, rural areas were the residual after the delineation of urban areas (now called population centres).

Prior to 2001, rural areas were the residual after the delineation of urban areas that was based on population data from the previous census.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS)

Coordinate system

Definition

A coordinate system is a reference system based on mathematical rules for specifying positions (locations) on the surface of the earth. The coordinate values can be spherical (latitude and longitude) using angular units of measure such as degrees, minutes and seconds or planar (Universal Transverse Mercator) using linear units such as metres.

Cartographic boundary files, digital boundary files, representative points and road network files are disseminated in lambert coordinates.

Reported in

2016 (Lambert conformal conic)
2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981 (latitude/longitude)
1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971 (Universal Transverse Mercator)

Remarks

A coordinate system is usually defined by a datum, ellipsoid and projection, and is specified in terms of units (e.g., degrees, metres).

The Lambert conformal conic projection provides good directional and shape relationships for mid-latitude regions having a mainly east-to-west extent. Standard parallels at 49° N and 77° N are most commonly used. The scale is correct along the standard parallels only; areal deformation decreases between and increases away from the standard parallels. The central meridian, normally at 91° 52' W, is a straight line about which the projection is symmetrical. False eastings and northings are given to ensure positive coordinate values in linear units of measure (metres).

Lambert conformal conic map projection is the most common map projection used at Statistics Canada and generates lambert coordinates in metres.

It is now common for Geographic Information System (GIS) software to convert coordinates from one frame of reference to coordinates of another frame of reference, such as transforming the Lambert conformal conic projection to latitude/longitude coordinates.

The Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinate system is no longer used as the working coordinate system or for disseminating spatial digital data.

Refer to related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); datum; digital boundary files (DBFs); map projection; representative point; road network file (RNF) and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census

For 2011, cartographic boundary files, digital boundary files, representative points and road network files were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates.

For 1996, street network files were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates, but the working coordinate system was UTM.

Prior to 1996, street network files were disseminated in UTM coordinates only.

Datum

Definition

A datum is a geodetic reference system which includes an ellipsoid (a mathematical reference model of the earth) and an origin against which the latitude and longitude of all other points on the earth's surface are referenced. A datum may often be associated with a particular ellipsoid.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001 (North American Datum of 1983)
1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971 (North American Datum of 1927)

Remarks

Datums and the coordinate reference systems based on them were developed to describe geographic positions for surveying, mapping and navigation. Over the years, datums evolved from spherical to ellipsoidal models using satellite measurements. The earth is not a sphere, but an ellipsoid flattened slightly at the poles and bulging somewhat at the equator. The ellipsoid is used as a surface of reference for the mathematical model of the earth. Since mathematical models of the size and shape of the earth are now more precise, it has become necessary to change to a more accurate model.

There are two datums used in Canada: the North American Datum of 1927 (NAD27) and the North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83). Both are geodetic reference systems, but each is based on different measurements and reference ellipsoids. The NAD27 is based on the Clarke ellipsoid of 1866, and its reference point is a fixed point in Kansas. The NAD83 is an earth-centred datum based on a newly defined ellipsoid – the Geodetic Reference System of 1980 (GRS80) – and its reference point is the centre of the earth, as opposed to a point on the earth's surface.

The National Transformation software, developed by the Geodetic Survey of Canada, is used to convert coordinates between the NAD27 and the NAD83 reference systems in Canada. Spatial data based on one datum will not be coincident with the same spatial data based on the other datum. Positional differences between NAD27 and NAD83 can be as great as hundreds of metres in some instances. Other longitudinal analyses will also be affected by a change in datum. For example, blockface and census subdivision (CSD) representative points from censuses prior to 2001 may not fall in the correct current census standard geographic area due to a shift caused by using different datums.

Refer to the related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); coordinate system; digital boundary files (DBFs); map projection; representative point; road network file (RNF) and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census

Prior to 2001, digital boundary files (DBFs), digital cartographic files (DCFs), street network files (SNFs), blockface and EA representative points, and other spatial data were based on the NAD27.

Ecumene

Definition

Ecumene is a term used by geographers to mean inhabited land. It generally refers to land where people have made their permanent home, and to all work areas that are considered occupied and used for agricultural or any other economic purpose. Thus, there can be various types of ecumenes, each having its own unique characteristics (population ecumene, agricultural ecumene, industrial ecumene, etc.).

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976 (national population ecumene)
2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976 (national agricultural ecumene)
1986 (urban population ecumene for 12 census metropolitan areas)

Remarks

Statistics Canada delineates the population and agricultural ecumenes as follows:

1. The national population ecumene includes dissemination blocks with a minimum population density. To ensure visibility for small-scale thematic mapping, the detailed ecumene limits are manually generalized and small, discontiguous ecumene pockets are aggregated.
2. The national agricultural ecumene includes all dissemination areas with 'significant' agricultural activity. Agricultural indicators, such as the ratio of agricultural land on census farms relative to total land area, and total economic value of agricultural production, are used. Regional variations are also taken into account. The ecumene is generalized for small-scale mapping.

It is recommended that the ecumene concept be used for dot and choropleth maps. If an ecumene is not applied to dot maps, the requisite number of dots may be randomly spread over entire unit areas. This approach defeats the main attributes of dot mapping (i.e., showing correct location, extent and density of the dot symbols). One of the inherent limitations of choropleth maps is that the statistical distribution is assumed to be homogeneous or uniformly spread over each unit area, and is consequently represented by tones or colours covering the entire unit. Thus, an ecumene renders a more accurate depiction of the spatial distribution of data.

Refer to related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); datum; dissemination area (DA); dissemination block (DB); Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and thematic map.

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Geocoding

Definition

Geocoding is the process of assigning geographic identifiers (codes or x,y coordinates) to map features and data records. The resulting geocodes permit data to be linked geographically to a place on the earth.

Households, postal codes^{OM} and place of work data are linked to blockface representative points (coordinates) when the street and address information is available; otherwise, they are linked to dissemination block (DB) representative points. In some cases, postal codes^{OM} and place of work data are linked to dissemination area (DA) representative points when they cannot be linked to DBs. As well, place of work data are linked to census subdivision representative points when the data cannot be linked to DAs.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Remarks

Statistics Canada's Custom Area Creation Service provides census data tabulations for user-defined areas, such as provincial electoral districts, local planning areas and school districts. When tabulating census data for user-defined areas, households are included or excluded depending on whether the representative points to which they are linked fall inside or outside the user-defined area (Figure 1.13). Thus, the data retrieved are most precise when user-defined areas coincide with dissemination block boundaries. Census data for individual blockfaces are not disseminated.

Refer to related definitions of blockface; census subdivision (CSD); dissemination area (DA); dissemination block (DB); postal code^{OM}; representative point and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census

Prior to 2001, households, postal codes^{OM} and place of work data were linked to enumeration area (EA) representative points when they could not be linked to blockface representative points. As well, unrounded blockface population counts were provided for user confirmation before tabulating characteristic data for custom areas.

Map projection

Definition

A map projection is the mathematical formula used in the process of transforming positions from the earth's three-dimensional curved surface to a two-dimensional flat surface. The positions on the earth are defined using spherical coordinates of latitude and longitude, usually given in degrees. On a map, the positions may still be defined by spherical coordinates, or by linear coordinates, usually given in metres.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976 (Lambert conformal conic)
1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971 (transverse Mercator)

Remarks

The earth's surface cannot be flattened without distorting geometrical properties, such as area, shape, distance and direction. These properties can be preserved individually (at least locally) and in certain combinations on map projections. However, the four basic properties of area, shape, distance and direction cannot all be held true simultaneously. Therefore, it is important to select a projection having the properties that are suited to the mapping situation. For example, a projection that accurately represents the shapes of the continents (called a conformal projection) will distort their relative sizes.

The Lambert conformal conic map projection is widely used for general maps of Canada at small scales and is the most common map projection used at Statistics Canada. The Lambert conformal conic projection (Figure 1.14) provides good directional and shape relationships for mid-latitude regions having a mainly east-to-west extent. Standard parallels at 49° N and 77° N are most commonly used. The scale is correct along the standard parallels only; areal deformation decreases between and increases away from the standard parallels. The central meridian, normally at 91° 52' W, is a straight line about which the projection is symmetrical. False eastings and northings are added to coordinate values to ensure positive values in linear units of measure (metres).

A map which treats the spherical coordinates of latitude and longitude as linear values, by displaying them on a grid is an equirectangular map projection, also called the geographical projection. Such maps are not very useful for display as they do not preserve the spatial properties of area, shape, distance or direction. However, data in this format is easy to transfer, and then transform into a more useful projection. For a comparison of the Lambert conformal conic and geographic projections, see Figure 1.14.

The Lambert conformal conic map projection is the working projection for cartographic boundary files, digital boundary files, road network files and the Spatial Data Infrastructure, and for generating representative points. For calculating land area, the working projection is Albers equal area.

Refer to related definitions of cartographic boundary files (CBFs); coordinate system; datum; digital boundary files (DBFs); representative point; road network file (RNF) and Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI).

Changes prior to the current census

Prior to 2001, street network files were based on the transverse Mercator map projection/Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinate system.

Reference map

Definition

A reference map shows the location of the geographic areas for which census data are tabulated and disseminated. The maps display the boundaries, names and unique identifiers of standard geographic areas, as well as selected cultural and physical features, such as roads, railroads, coastlines, rivers and lakes.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

The boundaries, names and unique identifiers of the standard geographic areas reflect those in effect on January 1, 2016 (the geographic reference date for the 2016 Census).

The geographic area boundaries, names, types and unique identifiers, and the relationships among the various geographic levels, are found on Statistics Canada's Spatial Data Infrastructure. The vector base map information (coastlines, rivers and lakes) is taken from the National Geographic Database, a joint initiative between Statistics Canada and Elections Canada. Water toponymy (river names, lake names, names of bays, oceans, gulfs, straits, seas and islands) is taken from the Canadian Geographical Names Data Base maintained by Natural Resources Canada.

Reference maps can assist users in relating published census data to actual locations on the ground, or in defining their own custom areas relative to the standard geographic areas.

Refer to related definitions of geographic reference date; Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and to the *Reference Maps and Thematic Maps, Reference Guide* (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/bsolc/olc-cel/olc-cel?lang=eng&catno=92-143-G) (Catalogue no. 92-143-G).

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Representative point

Definition

A representative point is a coordinate point that represents a line or a polygon. The point is centrally located along the line, and centrally located or population weighted in the polygon.

Representative points are generated for blockfaces, as well as for selected geographic areas – province/territory (PR), federal electoral district (FED), economic region (ER), census division (CD), census metropolitan area/census agglomeration (CMA/CA), census subdivision (CSD), census consolidated subdivision (CCS), population centre (POPCTR), designated place (DPL), census tract (CT), dissemination area (DA), aggregate dissemination area (ADA) and dissemination block (DB).

Households, postal codes^{OM} and place of work data are linked to blockface representative points (coordinates) when the street and address information is available; otherwise, they are linked to dissemination block (DB) representative points. In some cases, postal codes and place of work data are linked to dissemination area (DA) representative points when they cannot be linked to DBs. As well, place of work data are linked to census subdivision (CSD) representative points when the data cannot be linked to DAs.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Remarks

Representative points are located by the following methods:

1. **Blockface representative points**

   The blockface representative points are generated using the ArcGIS® software (version 10.2.2) in conjunction with the Spatial Data Infrastructure, including water polygons. The points are calculated and stored based on the Lambert conformal conic projection.

   The blockface representative points are computed along addressable and non-addressable streets, midway (or approximately midway) between two consecutive features intersecting a street. The intersecting features can be other streets or boundaries of standard geographic areas.

   The points are set back a perpendicular distance of 10, 5, 1 or 0.5 metres from the street centre line to ensure that all points have unique coordinates, and are located in the correct block and on the correct side of the street. Exceptions are made when these criteria cannot be met at the smallest distance of 0.5 metres. In these cases, the points may be set back a perpendicular distance of less than 0.5 metres or may be moved from the centre of the road to an area where the perpendicular distance can be kept between 10 and 0.5 metres.

   Some blockface representative points may fall in water bodies if the points are adjacent to bridges or causeways.

   Some geometry shifts and realignments may cause 2016 representative points for blockfaces to be different from 2011.

2. **Geographic area representative points**

   The representative points for standard geographic areas are generated using ArcGIS® software (version 10.2.2) in conjunction with their respective digital boundary file (DBF). The most detailed hydrography is used to ensure that representative points do not fall in water where possible. The points are calculated and stored based on the Lambert conformal conic projection.

   Representative points for 2016 are generated for the basic block (BB[29]) as label points to ensure they do not fall in water. The geographic area representative points are initially derived as centroids, which may fall in water. To ensure geographic area representative points do not fall in water, except in cases where entire polygons are in water, the BB representative point nearest to the geographic area centroid is selected as the new representative point for that geographic area.

A. Unweighted representative points

The representative points for all geographic areas excluding the dissemination area (DA) are unweighted. The points are generated using the ArcGIS® software. The software locates the point as nearest to the geographical centre of the polygon as possible, ensuring the point falls on land areas whenever possible. Topology checks are applied to ensure that the points fall within the appropriate geographic area. Since some dissemination blocks (DB), dissemination areas (DA) and designated places (DPL) are located in water only, their representative points will fall in water. Where the geographic area is in multiple parts, the point is located in the portion having the largest area.

---

[29] The basic block (BB) is the smallest polygon unit in the Spatial Data Infrastructure. BBs are formed by the intersection of all roads and boundary arcs of standard geographic areas that do not follow roads.

B. Weighted representative points

Mean centre weighted by population

The representative points for dissemination areas (DAs) are weighted using the population mean centre. Formula 1 depicts the mathematical methods for calculating the weighted mean centre representative points. One of two pairs of equations is used, depending on the population of the DA. The first pair of equations is used when the DA has a population greater than zero. The second equation is used when the DA has a population equal to zero.

In the first pair of equations, the x-coordinate is calculated by first multiplying the population of each dissemination block (DB) in the DA by the x-coordinate (easting) of its representative point. The products are summed over all DBs in the DA, and the result is then divided by the total population of the DA. The y-coordinate (northing) of the DA is calculated by applying the same methodology, only using the y-coordinate information for the component DBs.

The second pair of equations is used when the DA has zero population. For this, the x-coordinate (easting) is calculated by summing the x-coordinate of the representative points of all DBs in the DA. This sum is then divided by the number of DBs in the DA. The y-coordinate (northing) of the DA is calculated by applying the same methodology, only using the y-coordinate information for the component DBs.

Examples of calculating the mean centre representative points weighted by population using the above methods are shown immediately below the formulae.

Formula 1 Mean centre weighted by population

1. When at least one dissemination block in the DA has population > 0

$$x = \frac{\sum p_i x_i}{\sum p_i}$$

$$y = \frac{\sum p_i y_i}{\sum p_i}$$

2. When all dissemination blocks in the DA have population = 0

$$x = \frac{\sum x_i}{n}$$

$$y = \frac{\sum y_i}{n}$$

where

p_i = population of the ith dissemination block in the DA
x_i = x-coordinate (easting) in metres, of representative point of the ith dissemination block in the DA
y_i = y-coordinate (northing) in metres, of representative point of the ith dissemination block in the DA
n = number of dissemination blocks in the DA

For example:

	Population	x (easting)	y (northing)
DA1 Dissemination block 1	300	7471000	1205000
DA1 Dissemination block 2	150	7472000	1206000
DA1 Dissemination block 2	50	7473000	1207000
Total	500		

Using **equation 1**, the weighted representative point for DA1 is:

$$x = [(300 * 7471000) + (150 * 7472000) + (50 * 7473000)] \div 500 = 7471500$$
$$y = [(300 * 1205000) + (150 * 1206000) + (50 * 1207000)] \div 500 = 1205500$$

Using **equation 2**, the representative point for DA1 is:

$$x = (7471000 + 7472000 + 7473000) \div 3 = 7472000$$
$$y = (1205000 + 1206000 + 1207000) \div 3 = 1206000$$

Minimum squared distance weighted by population

If any weighted representative points fall outside the dissemination area (DA) (e.g., for crescent-shaped polygons) or fall in water bodies, the points are generated using the minimum squared distance weighted by population (formula 2). The first equation is used when the DA has a population greater than zero. The second equation is used when the DA has a population equal to zero.

In the first equation, the population weighted squared distance is calculated for each dissemination block (DB) and the DB with the minimum value is chosen. For each DB, the population weighted squared distance is calculated by measuring the distance between its representative point and the representative points of all other DBs. Each distance is then squared and further multiplied by the population of the other DBs. These values are then all summed to create a value for the DB in question.

In the second equation, an unweighted squared distance is calculated for each DB, and the DB with the minimum value is chosen. For each DB, the population weighted squared distance is calculated by measuring the distance between its representative point and the representative points of all other DBs. Each distance is then squared and these values are all summed to create a value for the DB in question.

Topology checks are applied to ensure that the points fall within the DA. Since some DAs are located in water only, their representative points fall in water.

Examples of calculating the minimum squared distance representative point weighted by population using the above methods are shown immediately below the formulae.

Formula 2 Minimum squared distance weighted by population

1. When at least one dissemination block in the DA has population > 0

$$d_{\min} = \operatorname*{Min}_{j-1}^{n} [\sum_{i-1}^{n} \left[\left(x_j - x_i\right)^2 + \left(y_j - y_i\right)^2 \right] * p_i]$$

2. When all dissemination blocks in the DA have population = 0

$$d_{\min} = \operatorname*{Min}_{j-1}^{n} \sum_{i-1}^{n} \left[\left(x_j - x_i\right)^2 + \left(y_j - y_i\right)^2 \right]$$

where

$d_{\min}$ = minimum squared distance between dissemination block representative points
p_i = population of the ith dissemination block in the DA

x_i = x-coordinate (easting) in metres, of representative point of the ith dissemination block in the DA
y_i = y-coordinate (northing) in metres, of representative point of the ith dissemination block in the DA

x_j = x-coordinate (easting) in metres, of representative point of the ith dissemination block in the DA
y_j = y-coordinate (northing) in metres, of representative point of the ith dissemination block in the DA

For example:

	Population	x (easting)	y (northing)
DA1 Dissemination block 1	300	7471000	1205000
DA1 Dissemination block 2	150	7472000	1206000
DA1 Dissemination block 2	50	7473000	1207000
Total	500		

Using **equation 1**, the iterations and results are:

Distance 1. Block 1 → Block 2 = $[(7471000 - 7472000)^2 + (1205000 - 1206000)^2] * 150$ = 300,000,000
Block 1 → Block 3 = $[(7471000 - 7473000)^2 + (1205000 - 1207000)^2] * 50$ = 400,000,000
700,000,000

Distance 2. Block 2 → Block 1 = $[(7472000 - 7471000)^2 + (1206000 - 1205000)^2] * 300$ = 600,000,000
Block 2 → Block 3 = $[(7472000 - 7473000)^2 + (1206000 - 1207000)^2] * 50$ = 100,000,000
700,000,000

Distance 3. Block 3 → Block 1 = $[(7473000 - 7471000)^2 + (1207000 - 1205000)^2] * 300$ = 2,400,000,000
Block 3 → Block 2 = $[(7473000 - 7472000)^2 + (1207000 - 1206000)^2] * 150$ = 300,000,000
2,700,000,000

The existing representative points for either ***dissemination block 1*** *or* ***dissemination block 2*** *are selected since they have the minimum squared distance weighted by population.*

Using **equation 2**, the iterations and results are:

$$\begin{array}{llcllr}
\text{Distance 1.} & \text{Block 1} \rightarrow \text{Block 2} & = & [(7471000 - 7472000)^2 + (1205000 - 1206000)^2] & = & 2{,}000{,}000 \\
 & \text{Block 1} \rightarrow \text{Block 3} & = & [(7471000 - 7473000)^2 + (1205000 - 1207000)^2] & = & \underline{8{,}000{,}000} \\
 & & & & & 10{,}000{,}000 \\
\text{Distance 2.} & \text{Block 2} \rightarrow \text{Block 1} & = & [(7472000 - 7471000)^2 + (1206000 - 1205000)^2] & = & 2{,}000{,}000 \\
 & \text{Block 2} \rightarrow \text{Block 3} & = & [(7472000 - 7473000)^2 + (1206000 - 1207000)^2] & = & \underline{2{,}000{,}000} \\
 & & & & & 4{,}000{,}000 \\
\text{Distance 3.} & \text{Block 3} \rightarrow \text{Block 1} & = & [(7473000 - 7471000)^2 + (1207000 - 1205000)^2] & = & 8{,}000{,}000 \\
 & \text{Block 3} \rightarrow \text{Block 2} & = & [(7473000 - 7472000)^2 + (1207000 - 1206000)^2] & = & \underline{2{,}000{,}000} \\
 & & & & & 10{,}000{,}000
\end{array}$$

The existing representative point for ***dissemination block 2*** *is selected since it has the minimum squared distance.*

Refer to related definitions of blockface; census subdivision (CSD); designated place (DPL); digital boundary files (DBFs); dissemination area (DA); dissemination block (DB); geocoding; population centre (POPCTR); postal code; Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) and the *Postal Code$^{\text{OM}}$ Conversion File (PCCF), Reference Guide* (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/92-153-g/92-153-g2011002-eng.htm) (Catalogue no. 92-153-G).

Changes prior to the current census

Prior to 2001, enumeration area (EA) representative points were disseminated.

Prior to 1996, all representative points were called 'centroids.'[30]

1. Geographic area representative points

- For 2011, representative points for geographic areas were generated at the dissemination block (DB) level. The DB representative point that fell nearest to the centroid of a geographic area was used as the point for that geographic area.
- For 2006, the representative points for geographic areas were generated as centroids and then moved if they fell into water bodies.
- For 2001, the representative points for blocks, dissemination areas, census subdivisions and designated places could fall in water bodies. In addition, the dissemination area points were not weighted.

---

[30] A centroid is the term given to the centre of a polygon or area. In cases of irregular shaped polygons, the centroid is calculated to approximate the 'centre' of a polygon.

- For 1996, EA representative points were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates and in x,y coordinates of the Lambert conformal conic projection. The representative points were created either with the Street Network File (SNF) or manually.
    - Representative points located in EAs within the SNF were created using the ArcGIS® software, which located the point suitable for label or symbol placement in each polygon. Steps were taken so that the points did not fall in bodies of water. If the EA was in multiple parts, the point was located, when possible, in the portion with the largest number of occupied private dwellings (based on the 1991 blockface counts). In some cases, however, the representative point was located in the EA portion having the largest land area.
    - Representative points located in EAs outside SNF coverage were created by a manual procedure based on the visual inspection of building and/or street patterns on EA reference maps (some of which had topographic base map information). The representative point was located, when possible, within a predominant cluster of buildings and/or streets. If there was no predominant cluster, then the point was located between two or more clusters. In the absence of any cluster, the point was placed at the visual centre of the EA. If an EA was in multiple parts, the point was located in the portion with the largest number of dwellings. The representative point was located in the land-based portion of the EA.
- For 1991, the EA representative points within SNF coverage were created using the ArcGIS® software, which locates the point suitable for label or symbol placement in each polygon; some points were located in bodies of water. In addition, for EAs in multiple parts in SNF coverage, there was no rule for selecting the EA part to which the representative point was assigned. The EA representative points were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates, UTM coordinates, and in x,y coordinates of the Lambert conformal conic projection.
- Prior to 1991, EA representative points within SNF coverage were computed by a different method. An algorithm selected one of the existing blockface representative points (based on their number and concentration) within an EA as the overall EA representative point. The points were calculated and disseminated in UTM coordinates.

2. Blockface representative points

- For 2001, blockface representative points were set back a distance of 10, 5 or 1 metre(s) from the street centre line. As well, points were generated when streets crossed the limits of National Topographic Database (NTDB) map tiles.
- Prior to 2001, blockface representative points were not generated when streets crossed the limits of map tiles, since map tiles were not used.
- For 1996, blockface representative points were generated within Street Network File coverage only, and the points were set back a distance of 22, 11, 5 or 1 metre(s) from the street centre line. The points were calculated in Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinates, but were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates.
- Prior to 1996, some blockface representative points did not have unique coordinate values, and all points were set back a perpendicular distance of 22 metres from the street centre line. The points were calculated and disseminated in UTM coordinates.
- Prior to 1991, blockfaces were not created when EA boundary segments did not follow visible features.

Thematic map

Definition

A thematic map shows the spatial distribution of one or more specific data themes for selected geographic areas. The map may be qualitative in nature (e.g., predominant farm types) or quantitative (e.g., percentage population change).

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

A thematic map is also called a special-purpose, single-topic, or statistical map. It focuses on the spatial variability of a specific distribution or theme, such as population density or average annual income. It can be used for exploratory spatial data analysis, confirming hypotheses, synthesizing spatial data by revealing patterns and relationships, and data visualization.

A thematic map is composed of two elements: a base map showing locational or reference information, such as place names or selected water bodies; and statistical data, which overlay the base map.

The statistical data can be symbolized in a variety of methods. Some common thematic maps produced at Statistics Canada are choropleth, graduated symbol, or dot maps. For the first two types, the data are classified into ranges, then displayed for a particular geographic area as either a colour or a symbol. In general, lighter colours/smaller symbols mean smaller data values, while darker colours/larger symbols mean larger data values. These maps use standardized data (ratios or percentages), rather than absolute values, to avoid the size of the geographic area influencing the data interpretation.

Dot maps use absolute data values, where one dot represents a certain number of units of the data. More dots within a particular geographic area indicate higher values of data. At Statistics Canada, this method of data visualization has been used to display where people live and work.

A smaller scale thematic map may use the population ecumene, which shows only the parts of the geographic areas where people actually live.

To ensure confidentiality, all census data are subject to random rounding and/or data suppression.

Refer to related definitions of ecumene and reference map.

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Other

Forward sortation area (FSA)©

Definition

The forward sortation area© is the first three characters of the postal code^{OM}, designating a postal delivery area within Canada. See the definition of postal code^{OM}.

© : This data includes information copied with permission from Canada Post Corporation.

^{OM} : Postal code is an official mark of Canada Post Corporation.

Geographic reference date

Definition

The geographic reference date is a date determined by Statistics Canada for the purpose of finalizing the geographic framework for which census data will be collected, tabulated and reported. For the 2016 Census, the geographic reference date is January 1, 2016.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks

Names, boundaries and other attributes of geographic areas change frequently (examples of these changes include municipal amalgamations and annexations, and changes in the name and status of municipalities). Since the geographic framework is used for census data collection, the geographic reference date must be set sufficiently in advance of Census Day to permit all changes to be processed in time. Furthermore, notification of these changes is normally not received from the applicable federal and provincial authorities until after the changes have occurred. For these reasons, the census reports data according to the geographic areas that are in effect on January 1, 2016, provided that Statistics Canada receives the information on the changes by March 1, 2016.

Since the geographic framework is established according to the geographic areas in effect as of January 1, 2016, and census data refer to conditions as they exist on Census Day (May 10, 2016), census data may be reported for geographic areas that have subsequently changed during this period.

The geographic framework established for census purposes may not reflect the actual geographic framework in effect on January 1, 2016, if Statistics Canada never receives, or does not receive by March 1, 2016, the appropriate notification from relevant federal and provincial authorities.

Changes prior to the current census

Prior to 1981, the geographic reference date was set to the same date as Census Day. From the 1981 Census onwards, it has been set at January 1 of the census year, which has improved the timeliness of the release of census products.

Postal code^{OM}

Definition

The postal code^{OM} is a six-character code defined and maintained by Canada Post Corporation for the purpose of sorting and delivering mail.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996 (100% data)
1991, 1986 (20% sample)

Remarks

Structure of the postal code^{OM}

The form of the postal code^{OM} is 'ANA NAN,' where A is an alphabetic character and N is a numeric character. The first character of a postal code^{OM} represents a province or territory, or a major sector entirely within a province (Table 1.9).

The first three characters of the postal code^{OM} identify the forward sortation area (FSA)©. FSAs© are associated with a postal facility from which mail delivery originates.

Table 1.1 in the Introduction shows the number of postal codes^{OM} and forward sortation areas by province and territory. They are provided by Canada Post Corporation and are valid as of May 2016.

Postal codes^{OM} captured from census questionnaires

The postal code^{OM} is captured for all households from the address information provided by the respondent on the front page of the census questionnaire on May 10, 2016. The respondent's postal code^{OM} is accepted whether or not it is the same as the postal code^{OM} assigned by Canada Post Corporation to that address. The postal code^{OM} of a household is validated and processed using the following criteria:

- The respondent's postal code^{OM} is validated against a reference file at the census subdivision level. Priority is always given to accepting the postal code^{OM} that is most likely to have been active and in use on Census Day. However, postal codes^{OM} that may have been retired by Canada Post Corporation within the last six months but continue to be used may be accepted in some cases.
- In cases where a postal code^{OM} is not provided or is not valid, an imputation process assigns a valid postal code^{OM}.

The postal code^{OM} provided by respondents may not be the same as the postal code^{OM} of the dwelling in which they live. For example, they may denote the postal code^{OM} of their mailing address, such as a post office location (as in the case of general delivery) or a business location. Consequently, some respondents' postal codes^{OM} may fall outside the FSA© in which their dwelling is located.

Users should proceed with caution if postal codes^{OM} are used as a proxy for standard geographic areas. Postal codes^{OM} do not necessarily respect the boundaries of standard geographic areas (e.g., the same postal code^{OM} can fall in two or more census subdivisions).

For more detailed information, refer to the *Postal code^{OM} Conversion File, Reference Guide* (Catalogue no. 92-154-G).

^{OM}: Postal code is an official mark of Canada Post Corporation.

Changes prior to the current census

Not applicable

Spatial data quality elements

Definition

Spatial data quality elements provide information on the fitness for use of a spatial database by describing why, when and how the data are created, and how accurate the data are. The elements include an overview describing the purpose and usage, as well as specific quality elements reporting on the lineage, positional accuracy, attribute accuracy, logical consistency and completeness. This information is provided to users for all spatial data products disseminated for the census.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991

Remarks

Current technology makes it possible for a growing number of spatial data producers and users to access geospatial data. Digital datasets can now be obtained through geospatial clearinghouses/warehouses by users with diverse backgrounds. Furthermore, data producers can now more easily add new features, attributes and relationships to those already in the database. Therefore, any given dataset may be the result of the contributions of a number of data producers. Since perfect, complete and correct spatial data rarely exist, the assumptions and limitations affecting the creation or modification of data must be fully documented. Consequently, the need to communicate information about datasets to this ever-increasing pool of users becomes critical.

Data quality concepts provide an important framework for both data producers and users. Proper documentation provides spatial data producers with a better knowledge of their holdings, and allows them to more effectively manage data production, storage, updating and reuse. Data users can use this information to determine the appropriateness of a dataset for a given application and lessen the possibility of misuse. Highlighted below are elements of spatial data quality.

Overview elements

1. Purpose statement – Describes the rationale for creating a dataset and contains information about its intended use.
2. Usage statement – Describes the application(s) for which a dataset is used by the data producer or by data users.

Specific elements

1. Lineage – Describes the history of the spatial data, including descriptions of the source material from which the data were derived, and the methods of derivation. It also contains the dates of the source material, and all transformations involved in producing the final digital files or map products.
2. Positional accuracy – Refers to the absolute and relative accuracy of the positions of geographic features. 'Absolute accuracy' is the closeness of the coordinate values in a dataset to values accepted as or being true. 'Relative accuracy' is the closeness of the relative positions of features to their respective relative positions accepted as or being true. Descriptions of positional accuracy include the quality of the final file or product after all transformations.
3. Attribute accuracy – Refers to the accuracy of the quantitative and qualitative information attached to each feature (such as population for a population centre, street name, census subdivision name and code).
4. Logical consistency – Describes the dependability of relationships encoded in the data structure of the digital spatial data.
5. Completeness – Refers to the degree to which geographic features, their attributes and their relationships are included or omitted in a dataset. It also includes information on selection criteria, definitions used, and other relevant mapping rules.

These elements are reported in the reference guides that accompany the spatial files and products, and form a subset of information contained in the metadata.

Changes prior to the current census

Prior to 1991, the data quality elements were not described in the supporting documentation for spatial data products.

Housing

Annual payment for electricity

Definition

Refers to yearly payments (last 12 months) for electricity.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[31] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Private households in non-farm dwellings

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F8 a)

Responses

None; included in rent or other payments; dollar value

Remarks

See also the shelter cost definition.

Before the 1991 Census, the response categories 'None' and 'Included in rent or other payments' were grouped into a single category.

Annual payment for fuels

Definition

Refers to yearly payments (last 12 months) for oil, gas, coal, wood or other fuels.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

---

[31] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[32] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Private households in non-farm dwellings

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F8b)

Responses

None; Included in rent or other payments; Dollar value

Remarks

See also the shelter cost definition.

Before 1991, the response categories 'None' and 'Included in rent or other payments' were grouped into a single category.

Annual payment for water and other municipal services

Definition

Refers to yearly payments (last 12 months) for water and other municipal services.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[33] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Private households in non-farm dwellings

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F8c)

Responses

None; Included in rent or other payments; Dollar value

---

[32] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[33] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Remarks

See also the shelter cost definition.

Before 1991, the response categories 'None' and 'Included in rent or other payments' were grouped into a single category.

Annual property taxes

Definition

Refers to yearly property taxes (municipal and school) for an owner-occupied dwelling when reported separately from mortgage or loan payments.

Statistical unit(s)

Owner household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[34] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample).

Reported for

Owner households in non-farm private dwellings

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F10c)

Responses

None; Dollar value

Remarks

Includes local improvement taxes as well, even if billed separately.

See also the shelter cost definition.

Bedrooms

Definition

'Bedrooms' refers to rooms in a private dwelling that are designed mainly for sleeping purposes even if they are now used for other purposes, such as guest rooms and television rooms. Also included are rooms used as bedrooms now, even if they were not originally built as bedrooms, such as bedrooms in a finished basement. Bedrooms exclude rooms designed for another use during the day such as dining rooms and living rooms even if they may be used for sleeping purposes at night. By definition, one-room private dwellings such as bachelor or studio apartments have zero bedrooms.

---

[34] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Private dwelling

Classification(s)

Number of bedrooms (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=87592)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[35] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Private dwellings occupied by usual residents

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F4b)

Responses

Range of values: 0 to 15

Remarks

Not applicable

Condominium fees

Definition

Condominium fees refer to monthly payments for maintenance and various condominium services.

Statistical unit(s)

Owner household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[36] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991 (20% sample).

Reported for

Owner households in non-farm private dwellings which form part of a condominium development

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F10e)

---

[35] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[36] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

None; Dollar value

Remarks

Although the condominium status question is asked to owner and renter households, the condominium fee question is only asked to owners. Renters of condominiums are not usually responsible for the direct payment of condominium fees.

See also the condominium status and shelter cost definitions.

Condominium status

Definition

'Condominium status' refers to whether the private dwelling is part of a condominium development. A condominium is a residential complex in which dwellings are owned individually while land and common elements are held in joint ownership with others.

Statistical unit(s)

Private dwelling

Classification(s)

Condominium status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=298076)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[37] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986[38] and 1981 (20% sample).

Reported for

Private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F3

Responses

Yes; No

Remarks

Prior to 2011, 'condominium status' was referred to as 'tenure – condominium' in the Census Dictionary.

---

[37] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[38] In 1986, the condominium status was not collected for dwellings on reserves.

Core housing need

Definition

A household is said to be in 'core housing need' if its housing falls below at least one of the adequacy, affordability or suitability standards and it would have to spend 30% or more of its total before-tax income to pay the median rent of alternative local housing that is acceptable (meets all three housing standards).

Housing standards are defined as follow:

Adequate housing is reported by their residents as not requiring any major repairs.

Affordable housing has shelter costs equal to less than 30% of total before-tax household income.

Suitable housing has enough bedrooms for the size and composition of resident households according to National Occupancy Standard (NOS) requirements.

Only private, non-farm, non-reserve and owner- or renter-households with incomes greater than zero and shelter-cost-to-income ratios less than 100% are assessed for 'core housing need.'

Non-family households with at least one maintainer aged 15 to 29 attending school are considered not to be in 'core housing need' regardless of their housing circumstances. Attending school is considered a transitional phase, and low incomes earned by student households are viewed as being a temporary condition.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

Not applicable

Reported for

Not applicable

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Dwelling condition

Definition

'Dwelling condition' refers to whether the dwelling is in need of repairs. This does not include desirable remodelling or additions.

Statistical unit(s)

Private dwelling

Classification(s)

Dwelling condition (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=87591)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[39] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981 and 1961[40] (20% sample).

Reported for

Private dwellings occupied by usual residents

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F6

Responses

Regular maintenance needed; Minor repairs needed; Major repairs needed

Remarks

The 'regular maintenance needed' category includes dwellings where only regular maintenance such as painting or furnace cleaning is required.

The 'minor repairs needed' category includes dwellings needing only minor repairs such as dwellings with missing or loose floor tiles, bricks or shingles or defective steps, railing or siding.

The 'major repairs needed' category includes dwellings needing major repairs such as dwellings with defective plumbing or electrical wiring, and dwellings needing structural repairs to walls, floors or ceilings.

Prior to 2016, 'dwelling condition' was referred to as 'condition of dwelling.'

Household maintainer

Definition

Refers to whether or not a person residing in the household is responsible for paying the rent, or the mortgage, or the taxes, or the electricity or other services or utilities. Where a number of people may contribute to the payments, more than one person in the household may be identified as a household maintainer. If no person in the household is identified as making such payments, the reference person is identified by default.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

---

[39] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[40] In 1961, the dwelling condition was determined by the census enumerator.

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[41] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986[42] and 1981[42] (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question F1

Responses

Person is not a household maintainer; Person is a household maintainer

Remarks

Up to five household maintainers can be identified. In order for a person identified as being responsible for the household payments to be considered as a household maintainer, that person must be 15 years of age or older and be related to Person 1 in terms other than as an employee (or as an employee's census family).

See also the primary household maintainer definition.

Housing suitability

Definition

'Housing suitability' refers to whether a private household is living in suitable accommodations according to the National Occupancy Standard (NOS); that is, whether the dwelling has enough bedrooms for the size and composition of the household. A household is deemed to be living in suitable accommodations if its dwelling has enough bedrooms, as calculated using the NOS.

'Housing suitability' assesses the required number of bedrooms for a household based on the age, sex, and relationships among household members. An alternative variable, 'persons per room,' considers all rooms in a private dwelling and the number of household members.

Housing suitability and the National Occupancy Standard (NOS) on which it is based were developed by Canada Mortgage and Housing Corporation (CMHC) through consultations with provincial housing agencies.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household

Classification(s)

Housing suitability (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=141809)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample) and 2011[43] (30% sample).

---

[41] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[42] In 1981 and 1986, only one person could be counted as the household maintainer. Since 1991, more than one person can be identified as responsible for the shelter expenses. Comparisons with the 1981 and 1986 censuses can be made using the primary household maintainer variable from 1991 to 2016.

[43] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported for

Private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and F4b)

Responses

In the standard products, the most detailed classification is as follows:

Suitable
Not suitable
  One-bedroom shortfall
  Two-bedroom shortfall
  Three-or-more-bedroom shortfall

Remarks

The NOS derives the number of bedrooms a household requires as follows:

- A maximum of two persons per bedroom.
- Household members, of any age, living as part of a married or common-law couple share a bedroom with their spouse or common-law partner.
- Lone parents, of any age, have a separate bedroom.
- Household members aged 18 or over have a separate bedroom, except those living as part of a married or common-law couple.
- Household members under 18 years of age of the same sex share a bedroom, except lone parents and those living as part of a married or common-law couple.
- Household members under 5 years of age of the opposite sex share a bedroom if doing so would reduce the number of required bedrooms. This situation would arise only in households with an odd number of males under 18, an odd number of females under 18, and at least one female and one male under the age of 5.

An exception to the above is a household consisting of one individual living alone. Such a household would not need a bedroom (i.e., the individual may live in a studio apartment and be considered to be living in suitable accommodations).

See also the persons per room definition.

Monthly mortgage payment

Definition

Refers to regular monthly mortgage or loan payments for the dwelling.

Statistical unit(s)

Owner household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[44] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample).

Reported for

Owner households in non-farm private dwellings

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F10a)

Responses

None; Dollar value

Remarks

In cases where mortgage payments are made in increments other than monthly (e.g., biweekly), all payments made in that year are added and then divided by 12, to obtain the average monthly amount paid.

See also the shelter cost definition.

Owner household

Definition

'Owner household' refers to a private household where some member of the household owns the dwelling, even if it is still being paid for.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Owner households in private dwellings

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question F2

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, refer to the Census Dictionary: Private household and Tenure.

---

[44] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Owner's major payments

The term 'owner's major payments' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'shelter cost.'

Period of construction

Definition

'Period of construction' refers to the period in time during which the building or dwelling was originally constructed.

This refers to the period in which the building was completed, not the time of any later remodelling, additions or conversions.

Statistical unit(s)

Private dwelling

Classification(s)

Period of construction (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299295)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[45] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Private dwellings occupied by usual residents

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F5

Responses

1920 or before; 1921 to 1945; 1946 to 1960; 1961 to 1970; 1971 to 1980; 1981 to 1990; 1991 to 1995; 1996 to 2000; 2001 to 2005; 2006 to 2010; 2011 to 2016[46]

Remarks

This refers to the period in which the building was completed, not the time of any later remodelling, additions or conversions. Respondents were asked to indicate the period of construction, to the best of their knowledge.

Persons per room

Definition

'Persons per room' refers to an indicator of the level of crowding in a private dwelling. It is calculated by dividing the number of persons in the household by the number of rooms in the dwelling.

---

[45] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[46] Up to May 10, 2016.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household

Classification(s)

Number of persons per room (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=141835)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[47] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question F4a)

Responses

In the standard products, the most detailed classification is as follows:

One person or fewer per room
More than 1 person per room
  More than 1 but less than 1.50
  1.50 persons or more

Remarks

'Persons per room' is a measure of crowding that considers all rooms in a private dwelling and the number of household members. A higher value of 'persons per room' indicates a higher level of crowding.

An alternative measure is the housing suitability, according to the National Occupancy Standard (NOS), which assesses the required number of bedrooms for a household based on the age, sex, and relationships among household members.

Presence of mortgage payments

Definition

'Presence of mortgage payments' refers to whether an owner household makes regular mortgage or loan payments for their dwelling.

Statistical unit(s)

Owner household

Classification(s)

Status of presence of mortgage payments (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299362)

---

[47] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[48] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Owner households in non-farm private dwellings

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F10a)

Responses

With mortgage; Without mortgage

Remarks

See also the monthly mortgage payment definition.

Primary household maintainer

Definition

First person in the household identified as someone who pays the rent or the mortgage, or the taxes, or the electricity bill, and so on, for the dwelling.

In the case of a household where two or more people are listed as household maintainers, the first person listed is chosen as the primary household maintainer.

The order of the persons in a household is determined by the order in which the respondent lists the persons on the questionnaire. Generally, an adult is listed first followed, if applicable, by that person's spouse or common-law partner and by their children. The order does not necessarily correspond to the proportion of household payments made by the person.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[49] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991 (20% sample).

Reported for

Persons in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question F1

---

[48] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[49] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

Person is not the primary household maintainer; Person is the primary household maintainer

Remarks

See also household maintainer definition.

Property taxes included in mortgage payments

Definition

Refers to whether property taxes (municipal and school) are included in the total regular monthly mortgage or loan payments for the dwelling.

Statistical unit(s)

Owner household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[50] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample).

Reported for

Owner households in non-farm private dwellings with a mortgage

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F10b)

Responses

Yes; No

Remarks

See also the shelter cost definition.

Rent, gross

The term 'gross rent' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'shelter cost.'

Rent, monthly cash

Definition

Refers to the monthly cash rent paid by tenant households.

Statistical unit(s)

Renter household

---

[50] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[51] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Renter households in non-farm private dwellings

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F9a)

Responses

Rented without payment of cash rent; Dollar value

Remarks

Also included are parking fees paid with the rent, if any.

See also the shelter cost definition.

Renter household

Definition

'Renter household' refers to private households where no member of the household owns their dwelling. The dwelling is considered to be rented even if no cash rent is paid.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981. For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Renter households in private dwellings

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question F2

Responses

Not applicable

---

[51] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Remarks

For more information, refer to the Census Dictionary: Private household and Tenure.

Rooms

Definition

'Rooms' refers to enclosed areas within a private dwelling which are finished and suitable for year round living. The number of rooms in a private dwelling includes kitchens, bedrooms and finished rooms in the attic or basement. The number of rooms in a private dwelling excludes bathrooms, halls, vestibules and rooms used solely for business purposes. Partially divided rooms are considered to be separate rooms if they are considered as such by the respondent (e.g., L-shaped dining-room and living-room arrangements).

Statistical unit(s)

Private dwelling

Classification(s)

Number of rooms (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299322)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[52] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Private dwellings occupied by usual residents

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F4a)

Responses

Range of values: 1 to 20

Remarks

Not applicable

Shelter cost

Definition

'Shelter cost' refers to the average monthly total of all shelter expenses paid by households that own or rent their dwelling.

Shelter costs for owner households include, where applicable, mortgage payments, property taxes and condominium fees, along with the costs of electricity, heat, water and other municipal services. For renter households, shelter costs include, where applicable, the rent and the costs of electricity, heat, water and other municipal services.

---

[52] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[53] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986[54] and 1981[55] (20% sample).

Reported for

Owner and renter households in non-farm private dwellings

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions F8a), b), c), F9a), F10a), c) and e)

Responses

Dollar value

Remarks

Prior to 2016, the term 'shelter cost' was referred to as 'owner's major payments' for owner households and 'gross rent' for tenant households.

In 2016, the name of the concept 'shelter cost' has changed in French.

Shelter-cost-to-income ratio

Definition

'Shelter-cost-to-income ratio' refers to the proportion of average total income of household which is spent on shelter costs.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household

Classification(s)

Shelter cost to income ratio (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299278)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[56] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample).

Reported for

Owner and renter households with household total income greater than zero non-farm private dwellings

---

[53] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[54] In 1986, no distinction was made between band housing and other types of tenure on reserves. For this reason, shelter costs were not published for households living on reserves.

[55] In 1981, reserve dwellings were included in the universe for this variable. Prior to 1981, shelter cost was collected for renter households only.

[56] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Question number(s)

Derived variable: F8a), b), c), F9a), F10a), c) and e)

Responses

In the standard products, the most detailed classification is as follows:

Spending less than 30% of income on shelter costs
  Less than 15%
  15% to less than 30%

Spending 30% or more of income on shelter costs
  30% to less than 50%
  50% or more
    50% to less than 100%

Remarks

The shelter-cost-to-income ratio is calculated by dividing the average monthly shelter costs by the average monthly total household income and multiplying the result by 100.

Prior to 2011, the term 'shelter-cost-to-income ratio' was referred to as 'owner's major payments or gross rent as a percentage of household income'.

For more information on household total income, see total income.

See also the 'Remarks' under shelter cost.

Subsidized housing

Definition

'Subsidized housing' refers to whether a renter household lives in a dwelling that is subsidized. Subsidized housing includes rent geared to income, social housing, public housing, government-assisted housing, non-profit housing, rent supplements and housing allowances.

Statistical unit(s)

Renter household

Classification(s)

Status of subsidized housing (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299407)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample) and 2011[57] (30% sample).

Reported for

Renter households in non-farm private dwellings

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F9b)

---

[57] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

Yes; No

Remarks

Not applicable

Tenure

Definition

'Tenure' refers to whether the household owns or rents their private dwelling. The private dwelling may be situated on rented or leased land or be part of a condominium. A household is considered to own their dwelling if some member of the household owns the dwelling even if it is not fully paid for, for example if there is a mortgage or some other claim on it. A household is considered to rent their dwelling if no member of the household owns the dwelling. A household is considered to rent that dwelling even if the dwelling is provided without cash rent or at a reduced rent, or if the dwelling is part of a cooperative.

For historical and statutory reasons, shelter occupancy on Indian reserves or settlements does not lend itself to the usual classification by standard tenure categories. Therefore, a special category, band housing, has been created for census purposes.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household

Classification(s)

Status of tenure of household (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299389)
Variant of status of tenure of household (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299390)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[58] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986[59] and 1981[60] (20% sample).
For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F2

Responses

Owned; Rented; Band housing

Remarks

Not applicable

---

[58] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[59] In 1986, dwellings on Indian reserves or settlements were all classified in the 'On reserve' category.

[60] Prior to 1986, dwellings on Indian reserves or settlements were classified as being 'owned' or 'rented.'

Value (owner estimated)

Definition

'Value (owner estimated)' refers to the dollar amount expected by the owner if the asset were to be sold.

In the context of dwelling, it refers to the value of the entire dwelling, including the value of the land it is on and of any other structure, such as a garage, which is on the property. If the dwelling is located in a building which contains several dwellings, or a combination of residential and business premises, all of which the household owns, the value is estimated as a portion of the market value that applies only to the dwelling in which the household resides.

Statistical unit(s)

Private dwelling

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[61] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Owner-occupied non-farm private dwellings

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question F10d)

Responses

Dollar value

Remarks

Since 1986, the variable 'value of dwelling' refers to non-reserve dwellings only. This is consistent with changes introduced that year to the 'tenure' classification of dwellings on reserves. See also the tenure definition.

---

[61] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Immigration and ethnocultural diversity

Activities of daily living

Definition

Refers to difficulties a person may have doing certain activities as a result of physical, mental, or other health-related conditions or problems.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[62] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991 and 1986 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Question 11

Responses

Question 11: Does this person have any:

a) difficulty seeing (even when wearing glasses or contact lenses)?

No
Sometimes
Often
Always

b) difficulty hearing (even when using a hearing aid)?

No
Sometimes
Often
Always

c) difficulty walking, using stairs, using his/her hands or fingers or doing other physical activities?

No
Sometimes
Often
Always

---

[62] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

d) difficulty learning, remembering or concentrating?

No
Sometimes
Often
Always

e) emotional, psychological or mental health conditions (e.g., anxiety, depression, bipolar disorder, substance abuse, anorexia, etc.)?

No
Sometimes
Often
Always

f) other health problem or long-term condition that has lasted or is expected to last six months or more?

No
Sometimes
Often
Always

Remarks

In 2016, the following instruction was provided to respondents:

The following question is about difficulties a person may have doing certain activities. **Only difficulties or long-term conditions** that have lasted or are expected to last for **six months or more** should be considered.

In addition, further instructions were given for three of the six components of the question, as follows:

Question 11a) Does this person have any difficulty seeing (even when wearing glasses or contact lenses)?

If you use glasses or contact lenses, please answer this question based on your ability to see when using these aids.

Question 11b) Does this person have any difficulty hearing (even when using a hearing aid)?

If you use a hearing aid or a cochlear implant, please answer this question based on your ability to hear when using these aids.

Question 11f) Does this person have any other health problem or long-term condition that has lasted or is expected to last for six months or more?

Exclude: any health problems previously reported in questions 11a) to 11e).

Question 11 (activities of daily living) provides information on the number of people in Canada who have difficulties with their daily activities, and whose activities are reduced because of a long-term physical, mental or other health condition. This question, which is intended only to be used to identify people who are likely to have a disability for a follow-up survey, does not itself provide an estimate of disability in Canada.

Rather, the 2017 Canadian Survey on Disability (CSD), which is conducted as a follow-up survey to the census, is the main source of disability data in Canada. The population covered by the CSD includes all adults who answered 'sometimes,' 'often,' or 'always' to any of the components of the activities of daily living question on the census.

The main reason that responses to the activities of daily living question cannot be used to estimate disability in Canada is the large number of 'false positives' reported. In other words, a respondent may report a limitation on the census but may not report a disability on the CSD.

There can be a number of reasons for these false positives. For example, the response may have been obtained by proxy whereby the person answering the census believed that the individual in question had some type of activity limitation or disability, however, the individual does not consider himself or herself to have any type of limitation at the time of the CSD. Other examples of false positives are persons who were injured, sick or recovering from surgery at the time of the census but who were no longer limited in their activities at the time of the CSD.

As a result of this phenomenon, it is essential that users of the census activity limitations data be aware that this question cannot be used on its own as an estimate of the population with a disability.

Activity limitations data from the 2016 Census will be available upon special request only. These data have received minimum edits and should be used with caution.

Admission category

Definition

Admission category refers to the name of the immigration program or group of programs under which an immigrant has been granted for the first time the right to live in Canada permanently by immigration authorities.

Statistical unit(s)

Immigrant

Classification(s)

Admission category of immigrant (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=323293)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample)

Reported for

Persons in private households who are, or who have ever been, landed immigrants or permanent residents since 1980.

Question number(s)

Data on admission category are collected by Immigration, Refugees and Citizenship Canada (http://www.cic.gc.ca/) (IRCC) using administrative records. This variable was added to the 2016 Census of Population through a record linkage.

Responses

Please refer to Appendix 5.5 for the list of admission categories disseminated for the 2016 Census of Population. For a visual representation of the classification, please refer to Figure 5.4.

Remarks

In the 2016 Census of Population, data on admission category are available for immigrants who landed in Canada between January 1st, 1980 and May 10th, 2016.

For more information on immigration variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Place of Birth, Generation Status, Citizenship and Immigration Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/007/98-500-x2016007-eng.cfm).

For additional information regarding admission category, please refer to the Immigration, Refugees and Citizenship Canada (http://www.cic.gc.ca/) website.

Age at immigration

Definition

'Age at immigration' refers to the age at which an immigrant first obtained landed immigrant or permanent resident status.

Statistical unit(s)

Immigrant

Classification(s)

Age categories by five-year age groups (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=61988)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[63] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample).

Reported for

Persons in private households who are, or who have ever been, landed immigrants or permanent residents

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 3 and 15

Responses

Individual years of age, ranging from 0 (less than one year) to the maximum age on the Census of Population.

Remarks

Age at immigration is derived from the immigrant's date of birth and year of immigration.

Respondents who answered 'Yes' to the landed immigrant status question (Question 14) were asked to answer the year of immigration question (Question 15). For more information on questions 14 and 15, please refer to the definitions for immigrant status and year of immigration.

Some immigrants have resided in Canada for a number of years, while others have arrived recently. In the 2016 Census of Population, 'Immigrants' includes immigrants who landed in Canada on or prior to May 10, 2016, the reference date for the 2016 Census of Population.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration and place of birth, please refer to Figure 5.1.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration and citizenship, please refer to Figure 5.2.

For more information on immigration variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Place of Birth, Generation Status, Citizenship and Immigration Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/007/98-500-x2016007-eng.cfm).

---

[63] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Applicant type

Definition

Applicant type refers to whether an immigrant was identified as the principal applicant, the spouse or the dependant on the application for permanent residence.

Statistical unit(s)

Immigrant

Classification(s)

Applicant type of immigrant (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=328790)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample)

Reported for

Persons in private households who are, or who have ever been, landed immigrants or permanent residents since 1980.

Question number(s)

Data on applicant type are collected by Immigration, Refugees and Citizenship Canada (http://www.cic.gc.ca/) (IRCC) using administrative records. This variable was added to the 2016 Census of Population through a record linkage.

Responses

The standard classification for applicant type is 'Principal applicant,' 'Spouse of a principal applicant' and 'Dependant of a principal applicant'.

Remarks

In the 2016 Census of Population, data on applicant type are available for immigrants who landed in Canada between January 1st, 1980 and May 10th, 2016.

Applicant type is most often used in combination with admission category, particularly with the economic immigrant categories, in which principal applicants are selected based on their ability to contribute to the Canadian economy.

For more information on immigration variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Place of Birth, Generation Status, Citizenship and Immigration Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/007/98-500-x2016007-eng.cfm).

For additional information regarding admission category and applicant type, please refer to the Immigration, Refugees and Citizenship Canada (http://www.cic.gc.ca/) website.

Citizenship

Definition

'Citizenship' refers to the country where the person has citizenship. A person may have more than one citizenship. A person may be stateless, that is, they may have no citizenship. Citizenship can be by birth or naturalization.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Canadian citizenship status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117126)
Type of Canadian Citizenship (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117123)
Number of Citizenships (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117145)
Type of Citizenship Response (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117133)
Country of Citizenship 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=370394)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[64] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 13

Responses

Response categories included 'Canada, by birth,' 'Canada, by naturalization' and 'Other country – specify.' A write-in space for country of citizenship (other than Canada) was provided.

Respondents were asked to indicate more than one citizenship, if applicable. Other than Canada, up to 2 countries of citizenship were retained. Refer to Appendix 5.3 for the list of countries of citizenship disseminated for the 2016 Census of Population.

Remarks

The 2016 Census of Population citizenship question asked: "Of what country is this person a citizen?" Notes accompanying the citizenship question stated:

Indicate more than one citizenship, if applicable.

'Canada, by naturalization' refers to the process by which an immigrant is granted citizenship of Canada, under the *Citizenship Act*.

As well, additional instructions were provided to respondents in the *2016 Census of Population Long-form Guide*:

For persons born in Canada, unless—at the time of their birth—one or both parents were government representatives of another country (for example, in diplomatic service) and neither parent was a Canadian citizen or a landed immigrant:

- mark 'Canada, by birth.'

For persons born outside Canada, if at the time of their birth, one or both parents were Canadian citizens:

- mark 'Canada, by birth.'

For persons who have applied for, and have been granted, Canadian citizenship (i.e., persons who have been issued a Canadian citizenship certificate):

- mark 'Canada, by naturalization.'

For persons who were born outside Canada and have not become Canadian citizens:

- report under 'Other country – specify' the name of the other country for which they hold citizenship.

---

[64] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

For persons who are dual citizens of Canada and another country, do not report 'dual citizenship':

- mark either 'Canada, by birth' or 'Canada, by naturalization' and report the name of the other country.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration and citizenship, please refer to Figure 5.2.

For more information on citizenship variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Place of Birth, Generation Status, Citizenship and Immigration Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/007/98-500-x2016007-eng.cfm).

Ethnic origin

Definition

'Ethnic origin' refers to the ethnic or cultural origins of the person's ancestors. An ancestor is usually more distant than a grandparent.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Ethnic origin: Single or multiple response indicator (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=257505)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[65] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 17

Responses

Respondents were asked to specify as many origins as applicable in Question 17: ethnic origin. Four lines were provided for write-in responses and up to six ethnic origins were retained. Refer to Appendix 5.1 for the 2016 Census of Population classification for ethnic origin.

Remarks

Additional instructions were provided to respondents in the *2016 Census of Population long-form Guide*:

This question refers to the ethnic or cultural origin or origins of a person's ancestors. Other than Aboriginal persons, most people can trace their origins to their ancestors who first came to this continent. Ancestry should not be confused with citizenship or nationality.

---

[65] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

For all persons, report the specific ethnic or cultural group or groups to which their ancestors belonged, not the language they spoke.

For persons of East Indian or South Asian origins, report a specific origin or origins. Do not report "Indian". For example, report "East Indian from India", "East Indian from Guyana", or indicate the specific group, such as "Punjabi" or "Tamil".

For persons with Aboriginal ancestors, report a specific origin or origins. For example, report "Cree", "Mi'kmaq", "Ojibway", "Métis", or "North American Indian". Do not report "Indian".

For additional information on the collection and dissemination of ethnic origin data, refer to the *Ethnic Origin Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/008/98-500-x2016008-eng.cfm)

Generation status

Definition

'Generation status' refers to whether or not the person or the person's parents were born in Canada.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Generation Status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117200)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[66] (30% sample); 2006 and 2001 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 12 and 24 a) and b)

Responses

The standard classification for Generation status is 'First generation,' 'Second generation' and 'Third generation or more.'

Remarks

Generation status is derived from responses to questions concerning the person's place of birth (Question 12) and the places of birth of his or her parents (Question 24).

For more information on the place of birth questions in the 2016 Census of Population, refer to the definitions of place of birth, place of birth of father and place of birth of mother.

---

[66] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Within the generation status variable, the three main categories are defined as follows:

'First generation' includes persons who were born outside Canada. For the most part, these are people who are now, or once were, immigrants to Canada.

'Second generation' includes persons who were born in Canada and had at least one parent born outside Canada. For the most part, these are the children of immigrants.

'Third generation or more' includes persons who were born in Canada with both parents born in Canada.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration, place of birth and generation status please refer to Figure 5.1.

For more information on generation status variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Place of Birth, Generation Status, Citizenship and Immigration Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/007/98-500-x2016007-eng.cfm).

Immigrant

Definition

'Immigrant' refers to a person who is, or who has ever been, a landed immigrant or permanent resident. Such a person has been granted the right to live in Canada permanently by immigration authorities. Immigrants who have obtained Canadian citizenship by naturalization are included in this group.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[67] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Persons in private households who are, or who have ever been, landed immigrants or permanent residents

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

In the 2016 Census of Population, 'Immigrant' includes immigrants who landed in Canada on or prior to May 10, 2016.

---

[67] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this statistical unit.

Immigrant status

Definition

'Immigrant status' refers to whether the person is a non-immigrant, an immigrant or a non-permanent resident.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Immigrant status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=297962)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[68] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 13 and 14

Responses

Immigrant status is derived from the responses to the citizenship question (Question 13) and the landed immigrant status question (Question 14).

The standard classification for Immigrant status is 'Non-immigrant,' 'Immigrant' and 'Non-permanent resident.'

Remarks

In the 2016 Census of Population, the landed immigrant status question (Question 14) and the citizenship question (Question 13) are used to identify non-immigrants (Canadian citizens by birth), immigrants and non-permanent residents.

The landed immigrant status question (Question 14) asked: "Is this person now, or has this person ever been, a landed immigrant?" Notes accompanying the landed immigrant question stated:

- A 'landed immigrant' (permanent resident) is a person who has been granted the right to live in Canada permanently by immigration authorities.

As well, additional instructions were provided to respondents in the *2016 Census of Population Long-form Guide*:

- For persons who are Canadian citizens by birth, foreign students, foreign workers, or refugee claimants: mark "No."
- For persons who are Canadian citizens by naturalization or are permanent residents under the *Immigration Act* (permanent residents have been granted the right to live permanently in Canada by Canadian immigration authorities but have not yet obtained Canadian citizenship): mark "Yes."

Respondents who mark 'Yes' to the landed immigrant status question (Question 14) are 'immigrants.'

Respondents who mark 'No' to the landed immigrant status question (Question 14) are either 'non-immigrants' or 'non-permanent residents.'

---

[68] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

The citizenship question (Question 13) is used to derive the two groups. If a respondent is a Canadian citizen by birth according to Question 13, then he is a non-immigrant. If a respondent does not have Canadian citizenship and is not a landed immigrant, he is a non-permanent resident.

Within the immigrant status variable, the three categories are defined as follows:

'Non-immigrant' includes persons who are Canadian citizens by birth.

'Immigrant' includes persons who are, or who have ever been, landed immigrants or permanent residents. Such persons have been granted the right to live in Canada permanently by immigration authorities. Immigrants who have obtained Canadian citizenship by naturalization are included in this category. In the 2016 Census of Population, 'Immigrant' includes immigrants who landed in Canada on or prior to May 10, 2016.

'Non-permanent resident' includes persons from another country who have a work or study permit or who are refugee claimants, and their family members sharing the same permit and living in Canada with them.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration and place of birth, please refer to Figure 5.1.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration and citizenship, please refer to Figure 5.2.

For more information on the citizenship question in the 2016 Census of Population, refer to the definition for citizenship.

For more information on immigration variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Place of Birth, Generation Status, Citizenship and Immigration Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/007/98-500-x2016007-eng.cfm).

Knowledge of non-official languages

Definition

'Knowledge of non-official languages' refers to whether the person can conduct a conversation in a language other than English or French. For a child who has not yet learned to speak, this includes languages that the child is learning to speak at home. The number of languages that can be reported may vary between surveys, depending on the objectives of the survey.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Non-official Language(s) 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381043)
Number of Non-official Languages (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=61359)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[69] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population

---

[69] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 16

Responses

See Figures 3.3, 3.3A, 3.3B, 3.3C and 3.3D.

Remarks

For more information on language variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Languages Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/003/98-500-x2016003-eng.cfm).

Period of immigration

Definition

'Period of immigration' refers to the period in which the immigrant first obtained landed immigrant or permanent resident status.

For more information, please refer to the definition of 'Year of immigration.'

Statistical unit(s)

Immigrant

Place of birth

Definition

'Place of birth' refers to the name of the geographic location where the person was born. The geographic location is specified according to geographic boundaries current at the time of data collection, not the geographic boundaries at the time of birth.

In the 2016 Census of Population, the geographic location refers to the name of the province, territory or country in which the person was born. It refers to a province or territory if the person was born in Canada. It refers to a country if the person was born outside Canada.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Countries and Areas of Interest for Social Statistics - SCCAI 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=367512)
Place of birth (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117287)
Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314300)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[70] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 12

Responses

Response categories included the 13 provinces and territories of Canada for those Born in Canada and one write-in space where those Born outside Canada could specify their country of birth.

Refer to Appendix 5.2 for the places of birth disseminated for the 2016 Census of Population.

Remarks

In the 2016 Census of Population, the place of birth question is: Where was this person born?

Respondents were asked to indicate their place of birth according to the boundaries in existence on May 10, 2016, the reference date for the 2016 Census of Population.

As well, additional instructions were provided to respondents in the *2016 Census of Population Long-form Guide*:

For persons who were born in Canada, please mark the province or territory of birth.

For persons who were born outside Canada, please report the country of birth according to present boundaries. For example, persons born in the former U.S.S.R., should report the specific country or republic that is now a nation state, such as Ukraine, Latvia, Russia, etc.

For persons who are not sure of the country because its boundaries have changed since the time of birth, please report the name of the nearest city, state or province.

For adopted persons, if the place of birth is unknown, please report the place of birth of their adoptive parents.

The responses to the questions on place of birth, place of birth of father and place of birth of mother are used to derive the generation status variable.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration and place of birth, please refer to Figure 5.1.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration and citizenship, please refer to Figure 5.2.

For more information on place of birth variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Place of Birth, Generation Status, Citizenship and Immigration Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/007/98-500-x2016007-eng.cfm).

---

[70] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Place of birth of father

Definition

'Place of birth of father' refers to the name of the geographic location where the father of the person was born. The geographic location is specified according to geographic boundaries current at the time of data collection, not the geographic boundaries at the time of birth.

In the 2016 Census of Population, the geographic location refers to the name of the country in which the father of the person was born.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Countries and Areas of Interest for Social Statistics - SCCAI 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=367512)
Generation Status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117200)
Place of birth of father (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=279373)
Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314300)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[71] (30% sample); 2006 and 2001 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 24a)

Responses

Response categories included a mark-in circle for Born in Canada and a write-in space for Born outside Canada – specify country.

Refer to Appendix 5.2 for the places of birth disseminated for the 2016 Census of Population.

Remarks

In the 2016 Census of Population, the place of birth of parents question is: "Where was each of this person's parents born?"

Respondents were asked to indicate the place of birth of their father according to the boundaries in existence on May 10, 2016, the reference date for the 2016 Census of Population.

As well, additional instructions were provided to respondents in the *2016 Census of Population Long-form Guide*:

For parents who were born in Canada, please mark "Born in Canada."

---

[71] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

For parents who were born outside Canada, please report the country of birth according to present boundaries. For example, for parents born in the former U.S.S.R., please report the specific country or republic that is now a nation state, such as Ukraine, Latvia, Russia, etc.

For persons who are not sure of the country because its boundaries have changed since the time of their parents' birth, please report the name of the nearest city, state or province.

For adopted persons, if the place of birth of parents is unknown, please report the place of birth of their adoptive parents.

For persons of same-sex parents, please report the place of birth of one parent in Question 24a) and that of the other parent in Question 24b).

The responses to the questions on place of birth, place of birth of father and place of birth of mother are used to derive the generation status variable.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration, place of birth and generation status please refer to Figure 5.1.

For more information on place of birth variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Place of Birth, Generation Status, Citizenship and Immigration Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/007/98-500-x2016007-eng.cfm).

Place of birth of mother

Definition

'Place of birth of mother' refers to the name of the geographic location where the mother of the person was born. The geographic location is specified according to geographic boundaries current at the time of data collection, not the geographic boundaries at the time of birth.

In the 2016 Census of Population, the geographic location refers to the name of the country in which the mother of the person was born.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Countries and Areas of Interest for Social Statistics - SCCAI 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=367512)
Generation Status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=117200)
Place of birth of mother (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=279369)
Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314300)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[72] (30% sample); 2006 and 2001 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

---

[72] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 24b)

Responses

Response categories included a mark-in circle for Born in Canada and a write-in space for Born outside Canada – specify country.

Refer to Appendix 5.2 for the places of birth disseminated for the 2016 Census of Population.

Remarks

In the 2016 Census of Population, the place of birth of parents question is: "Where was each of this person's parents born?"

Respondents were asked to indicate the place of birth of their mother according to the boundaries in existence on May 10, 2016, the reference date for the 2016 Census of Population.

As well, additional instructions were provided to respondents in the *2016 Census of Population Long-form Guide*:

For parents who were born in Canada, please mark "Born in Canada."

For parents who were born outside Canada, please report the country of birth according to present boundaries. For example, for parents born in the former U.S.S.R., please report the specific country or republic that is now a nation state, such as Ukraine, Latvia, Russia, etc.

For persons who are not sure of the country because its boundaries have changed since the time of their parents' birth, please report the name of the nearest city, state or province.

For adopted persons, if the place of birth of parents is unknown, please report the place of birth of their adoptive parents.

For persons of same-sex parents, please report the place of birth of one parent in Question 24a) and that of the other parent in Question 24b).

The responses to the questions on place of birth, place of birth of father and place of birth of mother are used to derive the generation status variable.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration, place of birth and generation status please refer to Figure 5.1.

For more information on place of birth variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Place of Birth, Generation Status, Citizenship and Immigration Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/007/98-500-x2016007-eng.cfm).

Population group

Definition

'Population group' refers to the population group or groups to which the person belongs, for example, White, South Asian, Chinese, Black, Filipino, Latin American, Arab, Southeast Asian, West Asian, Korean or Japanese. These population groups are the groups used on questionnaires which collect data on the visible minority population for Employment Equity purposes. The *Employment Equity Act* defines visible minorities as "persons, other than Aboriginal peoples, who are non-Caucasian in race or non-white in colour".

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Population group (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=279330)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[73] (30% sample); 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 19 and 18

Responses

The population group variable is derived from information collected in Question 19: population group and Question 18: Aboriginal group. Persons who reported 'Yes, First Nations (North American Indian),' 'Yes, Métis' or 'Yes, Inuk (Inuit)' to Question 18 (Aboriginal group) were not asked the population group question but are included in the 'Aboriginal peoples' category. All other persons are classified according to their population group as reported in Question 19.

In Question 19: population group, respondents were asked to use one or more of the mark-in circles provided to indicate their population group(s). The following mark-in circles were provided on the questionnaire: White, South Asian, Chinese, Black, Filipino, Latin American, Arab, Southeast Asian, West Asian, Korean and Japanese. A write-in space was also provided for respondents who wanted to specify a population group not included in the list of mark-in circles.

For more information on the population group variable, including information on its classification, the questions from which it is derived, data quality and its comparability with other sources of data, refer to the *Visible Minority and Population Group Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/006/98-500-x2016006-eng.cfm).

Remarks

The population group question is also used to derive the visible minority variable. For information on the visible minority variable, refer to the definition 'visible minority.'

For more information on the visible minority variable, including information on its classification, the questions from which it is derived, data quality and its comparability with other sources of data, refer to the *Visible Minority and Population Group Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/006/98-500-x2016006-eng.cfm).

Visible minority

Definition

'Visible minority' refers to whether a person belongs to a visible minority group as defined by the *Employment Equity Act* and, if so, the visible minority group to which the person belongs. The *Employment Equity Act* defines visible minorities as "persons, other than Aboriginal peoples, who are non-Caucasian in race or non-white in colour". The visible minority population consists mainly of the following groups: South Asian, Chinese, Black, Filipino, Latin American, Arab, Southeast Asian, West Asian, Korean and Japanese.

---

[73] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Visible minority (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=257518)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[74] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, and 1996 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 19 and 18

Responses

The visible minority variable is derived from information collected in Question 19: population group and Question 18: Aboriginal group. Persons who reported 'Yes, First Nations (North American Indian),' 'Yes, Métis' or 'Yes, Inuk (Inuit)' to Question 18 (Aboriginal group) were not asked the population group question but are included in the 'Not a visible minority' category in the visible minority variable, along with persons reporting other selected groups such as 'White.' All other respondents are classified according to their population group as reported in Question 19.

In Question 19: population group, respondents were asked to use one or more of the mark-in circles provided to indicate their population group(s). The following mark-in circles were provided on the questionnaire: White, South Asian, Chinese, Black, Filipino, Latin American, Arab, Southeast Asian, West Asian, Korean and Japanese. A write-in space was also provided for respondents who wanted to specify a population group not included in the list of mark-in circles.

For more information on the visible minority variable, including information on its classification, the questions from which it is derived, data quality and its comparability with other sources of data, refer to the *Visible Minority and Population Group Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/006/98-500-x2016006-eng.cfm).

Remarks

The population group question is also used to derive the population group variable. For information on the population group variable, refer to the definition population group.

For more information on the population group variable, including information on its classification, the questions from which it is derived, data quality and its comparability with other sources of data, refer to the *Visible Minority and Population Group Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/006/98-500-x2016006-eng.cfm).

---

[74] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Year of immigration

Definition

'Year of immigration' refers to the year in which the immigrant first obtained landed immigrant or permanent resident status.

Statistical unit(s)

Immigrant

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[75] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Persons in private households who are, or who have ever been, landed immigrants or permanent residents

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 15

Responses

Single years, from the earliest year on the file to the reference year.

Typically, single years of immigration are collapsed to form larger categories of five or ten years to derive the variable period of immigration.

Remarks

Respondents who answered 'Yes' to the landed immigrant status question (Question 14) were asked to answer the year of immigration question (Question 15). The 2016 Census of Population year of immigration question is: "In what year did this person first become a landed immigrant?" Respondents who were unable to give the exact year of immigration were asked to enter the best estimate.

As well, additional instructions were provided to respondents in the *2016 Census of Population Long-form Guide:*

For persons who obtained their landed immigrant (permanent resident) status while living in Canada:

- report the year landed immigrant (permanent resident) status was obtained.

For persons who immigrated to Canada more than once:

- report the year when landed immigrant status was first obtained.

Some immigrants have resided in Canada for a number of years, while others have arrived recently. In the 2016 Census of Population, 'Immigrant' includes immigrants who landed in Canada on or prior to May 10, 2016.

---

[75] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Respondents who answered 'No' to Question 14 will not have gone through the immigration process and, thus, did not have to answer the year of immigration question (Question 15). These persons include Canadian citizens by birth (non-immigrants) and non-permanent residents. A non-permanent resident refers to a person from another country who has a work or study permit or who is a refugee claimant, and the family members sharing the same permit and living in Canada with them.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration and place of birth, please refer to Figure 5.1.

To better understand the relationship between the concepts of immigration and citizenship, please refer to Figure 5.2.

For more information on immigration variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Place of Birth, Generation Status, Citizenship and Immigration Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/007/98-500-x2016007-eng.cfm).

Income

Adjusted after-tax income

Definition

'Adjusted after-tax income' refers to after-tax income of the statistical unit that is adjusted for economies of scale. The adjustment factor, also known as the equivalence scale, is the square root of the number of persons in the statistical unit. The adjusted after-tax income is calculated by dividing the after-tax income by this adjustment factor. The adjustment made to income addresses the fact that individuals living together can share resources and the marginal increase in need decreases as the number of individuals sharing resources increases.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household
Economic family
Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[76] (30% sample).

Reported for

Private households
Economic families and persons not in economic families in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

See also after-tax income.

Adjusted after-tax incomes of households are used to determine the thresholds for Low-income measure, after tax (LIM-AT).

Adjusted after-tax incomes of economic families and persons not in economic families are used to derive the economic family after-tax income decile group. For persons not in an economic family, the adjusted after-tax income is equivalent to the after-tax income as the adjustment factor is equal to 1.

A similar variable existed for economic families and persons not in economic families in the 2006 Census. In that version, income was adjusted using an equivalence scale that was based on economic family composition.

For additional information about the data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

---

[76] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Adjusted market income

The term 'Adjusted market income' is discontinued for the 2016 Census.

Adjusted total income

Definition

'Adjusted total income' refers to total income of the statistical unit that is adjusted for economies of scale. The adjustment factor, also known as the equivalence scale, is the square root of the number of persons in the statistical unit. The adjusted total income is calculated by dividing the total income by this adjustment factor. The adjustment made to income addresses the fact that individuals living together can share resources and the marginal increase in need decreases as the number of individuals sharing resources increases.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household
Economic family
Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[77] (30% sample).

Reported for

Private households
Economic families and persons not in economic families in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For details on the components of total income, see 'Remarks' under total income.

Adjusted total incomes of households are used to determine the thresholds for Low-income measure, before tax (LIM-BT).

A similar variable existed for economic families and persons not in economic families in the 2006 Census. In that version, income was adjusted using an equivalence scale that was based on economic family composition.

For additional information about the data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

---

[77] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

After-tax income

Definition

'After-tax income' refers to total income less income taxes of the statistical unit during a specified reference period. Income taxes refers to the sum of federal income taxes, provincial and territorial income taxes, less abatement where applicable. Provincial and territorial income taxes include health care premiums in certain jurisdictions. Abatement reduces the federal income taxes payable by persons residing in Quebec or in certain self-governing Yukon First Nation settlement lands.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Private household
Economic family
Census family

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[78] (30% sample); 2006 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population 15 years and over in private households
Census families in private households
Economic families in private households
Private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks

See total income and income taxes.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, please refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

---

[78] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Basic Canada child tax benefit (CCTB)

Definition

Basic Canada child tax benefit (CCTB) payments received by parents or guardians with dependent children during the reference period. These benefits aim at helping low- and middle-income families; the amount of benefits received depends on a family's income and the number of children within the family. This variable also includes the child disability benefit (CDB).

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of child benefits. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Disability benefits

Definition

Disability benefits received during the reference period from the Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) benefits. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Retirement benefits

Definition

Retirement benefits received during the reference period from the Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) benefits. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Survivor benefits

Definition

Regular benefits received by surviving spouse or common-law partner, children or estate of a deceased Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan contributor during the reference period from the Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan. Does not include lump-sum death benefits.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) benefits. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) benefits

Definition

Benefits received during the reference period from the Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan in the form of retirement pensions, survivors' benefits and disability benefits. It does not include lump-sum death benefits.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[79] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

See also income sources and the detailed definitions for each of the components: Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) - Retirement benefits, Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) - Disability benefits and Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) - Survivor benefits.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Census family total income

Refer to the definition of 'total income.'

---

[79] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Child benefits

Definition

Payments received by parents or guardians with dependent children from various federal, provincial and territorial child benefit programs during the reference period.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[80] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

See also income sources and the detailed definitions for each of the components: basic Canada child tax benefit (CCTB), national child benefit supplement (NCBS), universal child care benefit (UCCB) and provincial and territorial child benefits.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

Excludes orphans' benefits and payments for foster children.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Child care expenses paid

Definition

All payments made over the reference period for non-parental child care arrangements which allowed the responsible person(s) to earn employment income. Included in these expenses are babysitters, daycares, day camps, live-in caregivers or any arrangement in which money was exchanged for child care services.

---

[80] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Excluded are child care payments made for purposes unrelated to earning employment income, such as entertainment or personal needs.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample), 2011[81] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 48

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

Introduced in the 2011 NHS, child care expenses paid were collected to help compute the deductions required from after-tax income to obtain disposable income for the MBM.

These amounts differ slightly from the related income tax deduction: the value is not capped based on the age of the children, any family member could report them.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Child or spousal support payments

Definition

Child or spousal support payments paid in a reference period under an agreement to pay a fixed amount on a regular basis to a former spouse or partner, or for a child.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

---

[81] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported in

2016 (25% sample), 2011[82] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 49

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

Introduced in the 2011 NHS, child or spousal support payments were taken into account to help compute the deductions required from after-tax income to obtain disposable income for the MBM.

Support payments received from a former spouse or partner would be considered income and included in market income not included elsewhere.

This variable excludes all other gifts or transfers of money.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Composition of income

Definition

The composition of the total income of a population group or a geographic area refers to the relative share of each income source or group of sources, expressed as a percentage of the aggregate total income of that group or area.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[83] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

---

[82] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[83] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Question number(s)

Derived statistic

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

See total income.

The components of total income and the combinations for which percentages may be published are shown in Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Contributions to Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP)

Definition

All contributions paid by an employee or a self-employed person to the Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) during the reference period.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for this contribution variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

This variable represents the net contributions; any excess contributions are excluded.

Employers' contributions to the CPP and QPP are excluded.

One must be at least 18 years old and less than 70 years old to be eligible to make contributions to the CPP and QPP.

For additional information about the data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Contributions to Employment Insurance (EI)

Definition

All premiums paid by an employee or a self-employed person in accordance to the federal Employment Insurance (EI) program and the Québec parental insurance plan (QPIP) during the reference period. The amount of premiums paid varies by one's insurable earnings, province of work (Quebec versus outside of Quebec) and type of employment (employed or self-employed).

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for this contribution variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

This variable represents the net contributions; any excess contributions are excluded.

Employers' contributions to the EI program and QPIP are excluded.

There is no age requirement for deducting EI premiums for an employee through payroll.

The Québec parental insurance plan (QPIP) was introduced in January 2006 to cover maternity, parental, adoption and compassionate care benefits for workers in Quebec. Most of these benefits were previously provided under the federal Employment Insurance (EI) Program. Participation in QPIP is mandatory for both employed and self-employed workers in Quebec.

Certain segments of self-employed workers are eligible to participate in the portion of the federal EI Program that provides special benefits, such as sickness, maternity, parental, adoption and compassionate care benefits. Unlike QPIP, participation in the federal program is voluntary for self-employed workers.

For additional information about the data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Contributions to registered pension plans (RPP)

Definition

Total dollar amount of contributions made by an employee to registered pension plans (RPP) during the reference year. A registered pension plan is an employer-sponsored plan registered with the Canada Revenue Agency. The purpose of such plans is to provide employees with a regular income at retirement.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for this contribution variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

Employers' share of the registered pension plans (RPP) contributions is excluded. Employers' contributions to any pooled registered pension plans (PRPP) are also excluded.

Contributions to various types of RPPs, such as defined benefit plans, defined contribution plans and hybrid plans are included.

For additional information about the data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Contributions to registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs)

Definition

Total registered retirement savings plan (RRSP) contributions a person deducted against his or her income for a given tax year.

Contributions eligible for deductions include deposits made to his or her own registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs) and pooled registered pension plans (PRPPs) as well as his or her spouse's or common-law partner's registered retirement savings plans.

Individuals can make contributions to these plans up to a specified limit, known as the RRSP deduction limit for each tax year. The RRSP deduction limit is set at 18% of the contributor's prior year earned income up to an annual maximum, plus any unused RRSP deduction room carried forward from previous years, less any pension adjustments that are associated with registered pension plans (RPPs) from prior year and any employer's pooled registered pension plan (PRPP) contributions for the given tax year.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for this contribution variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

An individual cannot contribute to his/her own RRSP after the year that he or she turns 71 years of age, but may still contribute to his or her spouse's or common-law partner's RRSP until the year that their spouse or common-law partner turns 71 years of age.

RRSP contributions are eligible for tax deduction for a given tax year as long as they are made prior to the RRSP contribution deadline for that tax year. Contribution deadline typically falls on the last day of February in the year when taxes are filed.

Repayments under the Home Buyers' Plan (HBP) or Lifelong Learning Plan (LLP) are not included.

For additional information about the data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Contributions to tax-free savings accounts (TFSA)

Definition

Total dollar amount of contributions made by a person to tax-free savings accounts (TFSA) during the reference period. Individuals can make contributions to their TFSAs up to a limit, known as the TFSA contribution room, in each calendar year.

The TFSA contribution room is made up of:

- the TFSA dollar limit for the calendar year;
- any unused TFSA contribution room from the previous year;
- any withdrawals made from the TFSA in the previous year.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for this contribution variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

One must be at least 18 years old to be eligible to make contributions to a tax-free savings account.

For additional information about the data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Disposable income for the MBM

Definition

The disposable income for the Market Basket Measure (MBM) is an income concept developed by Employment and Social Development Canada (ESDC) for comparing against the MBM thresholds.

The disposable income for the MBM is the amount of income available to an economic family or a person not in an economic family to purchase goods and services. It is derived by deducting income taxes and non-discretionary spending for the MBM from total income.

For units in households that own a dwelling without a mortgage, the mortgage-free owners' difference in expenditures for the MBM is added to the disposable income. This amount represents typical savings compared to rent or ownership with a mortgage.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Economic family

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample), 2011[84] (30% sample).

Reported for

Economic families and persons not in economic families aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks

Like the MBM thresholds, the mortgage-free homeowner's advantage for the MBM is defined for each of the 50 MBM geographies. These amounts are presented in Table 4.6, Mortgage-free owners' difference in expenditures for the Market Basket Measure (MBM), 2015.

See also non-discretionary spending for the MBM and Market Basket Measure (MBM).

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

For additional information on various low-income concepts, see 'Low income lines,' (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2016002-eng.htm) in the *Income Research Paper Series* (Catalogue no. 75F0002M).

Dividends, interest on bonds, deposits and savings certificates, and other investment income

The term 'Dividends, interest on bonds, deposits and savings certificates, and other investment income' is discontinued for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Investment income.'

Earner or employment income recipient

Definition

Person with employment income during the reference period. Employment income can be in the form of wages, salaries and commissions or net self-employment income.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Census family
Economic family
Private household

---

[84] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[85] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population 15 years and over
Census families in private households
Economic families in private households
Private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

See also employment income, wages, salaries and commissions and net self-employment income.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Economic family after-tax income decile group

Definition

The economic family income decile group provides a rough ranking of the economic situation of a person based on his or her relative position in the Canadian distribution of the adjusted after-tax income of economic families for all persons in private households.

Using data from the 2016 Census of Population, the population in private households is sorted according to its adjusted after-tax family income and then divided into 10 equal groups each containing 10% of the population. The decile cut-points are the levels of adjusted after-tax family income that defined the 10 groups.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

---

[85] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[86] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

In the lowest decile
In the second decile
In the third decile
In the fourth decile
In the fifth decile
In the sixth decile
In the seventh decile
In the eighth decile
In the ninth decile
In the highest decile

Remarks

See adjusted after-tax income.

For additional information about the data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Economic family total income

Refer to the definition of 'total income.'

Employment income

Definition

All income received as wages, salaries and commissions from paid employment and net self-employment income from farm or non-farm unincorporated business and/or professional practice during the reference period.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

---

[86] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[87] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private household

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

See also income sources and the detailed definitions for each of the components: wages, salaries and commissions and net self-employment income.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Employment income decile group

Definition

The employment income deciles divide the population aged 15 years and over with employment income (positive or negative) into 10 equal-sized groups according to the rank of the employment income. Those in the bottom decile group are the ones who fall in the lower 10 percent of the employment income distribution. Those in the top decile group are the ones who fall in the highest ten percent of the employment income distribution.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households who had employment income in 2015

---

[87] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

In the lowest decile
In the second decile
In the third decile
In the fourth decile
In the fifth decile
In the sixth decile
In the seventh decile
In the eighth decile
In the ninth decile
In the highest decile

Remarks

Persons without employment income are excluded from the calculation of the deciles cut-points (i.e., the levels of employment income that define the decile groups).

Since the deciles cut-points are derived based on data from the 2016 Census of Population short-form questionnaire, the percentage of the sampled population in each decile group may not correspond exactly to 10%.

See also employment income.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

For additional information about the data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Employment Insurance (EI) – Other benefits

Definition

Benefits for sickness, maternity, paternity, adoption, compassionate care, work sharing, retraining and benefits to self-employed fishers received under the federal Employment Insurance program or the Québec parental insurance plan during the reference period, before income tax deductions.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of Employment Insurance (EI) benefits. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Employment Insurance (EI) – Regular benefits

Definition

Regular benefits for unemployment received under the federal Employment Insurance program during the reference period, before income tax deductions.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of Employment Insurance (EI) benefits. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Employment Insurance (EI) benefits

Definition

All Employment Insurance benefits received during the reference period, before income tax deductions. It includes benefits for unemployment, sickness, maternity, paternity, adoption, compassionate care, work sharing, retraining, and benefits to self-employed fishers received under the federal Employment Insurance Program or the Québec parental insurance plan.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[88] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

The amount to be repaid based on net income when filing a tax return is excluded.

The Québec parental insurance plan (QPIP) was introduced in January 2006 to cover maternity, parental, adoption and compassionate care benefits for workers in Quebec. Most of these benefits were previously provided under the federal Employment Insurance (EI) Program. Participation in QPIP is mandatory for both employed and self-employed workers in Quebec.

Certain segments of self-employed workers are eligible to participate in the portion of the federal EI Program that provides special benefits, such as sickness, maternity, parental, adoption and compassionate care benefits. Unlike QPIP, participation in the federal program is voluntary for self-employed workers.

See 'Remarks' under total income.

See also income sources and the detailed definitions for each of the components: Employment Insurance (EI) - regular benefits and Employment Insurance (EI) - other benefits.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

---

[88] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Goods and services tax (GST) credit and harmonized sales tax (HST) credit

Definition

Goods and services tax (GST) credit and harmonized sales tax (HST) credit received during the reference period. The GST/HST credit is a series of tax-free payments that help individuals and families with low or modest incomes offset all or part of the GST or HST that they pay.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of other government transfers. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Government transfers

Definition

All cash benefits received from federal, provincial, territorial or municipal governments during the reference period. It includes:

- Old Age Security pension, Guaranteed Income Supplement, Allowance or Allowance for the Survivor;
- retirement, disability and survivor benefits from Canada Pension Plan and Québec Pension Plan;
- benefits from Employment Insurance and Québec parental insurance plan;
- child benefits from federal and provincial programs;
- social assistance benefits;
- workers' compensation benefits;
- Working income tax benefit;
- Goods and services tax credit and harmonized sales tax credit;
- other income from government sources.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[89] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See Remarks under total income.

See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

---

[89] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Government transfers not included elsewhere

Definition

All government transfers received during the reference period, other than those from the following sources:

- Old Age Security pension, Guaranteed Income Supplement, Allowance or Allowance for the Survivor;
- retirement, disability and survivor benefits from Canada Pension Plan and Québec Pension Plan;
- benefits from Employment Insurance and Quebec Parental Insurance Plan;
- child benefits from federal and provincial programs;
- social assistance benefits;
- workers' compensation benefits;
- working income tax benefit;
- goods and services tax credit and harmonized sales tax credit.

The key components of this variable are refundable provincial tax credits, provincial income supplements for seniors, other provincial credits, benefits and rebates, veterans' pensions, war veterans' allowance, pensions to widow(er)s and dependants of veterans.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of other government transfers. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) and spousal allowance

Definition

Guaranteed Income Supplement paid to persons aged 65 years and over, and the Allowance or the Allowance for the Survivor paid to 60- to 64-year-old spouses of old age security recipients or widow(er)s by the federal government during the reference period.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of Old Age Security pension (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS). See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Household total income

Refer to the definition of 'total income.'

Income decile group

The term 'Income decile group' is discontinued for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Economic family after-tax income decile group'.

Income sources

Definition

'Income sources' refers to those income sources that make up total income.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Economic family

Classification(s)

Income sources (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299493)

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[90] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

See Remarks under total income.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Income status

The term 'income status' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'low-income status.'

Income taxes

Definition

Income taxes on income received during the reference period. It is the sum of federal income tax, provincial and territorial income taxes, less abatement where applicable. Provincial and territorial income taxes also include health care premiums and Yukon First Nations Tax in certain jurisdictions. Abatement reduces the federal income taxes payable by persons residing in Quebec or in certain self-governing Yukon First Nation settlement lands.

---

[90] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income taxes variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[91] (30% sample); 2006 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Dollar value or nil

Remarks

Income taxes on 2015 income includes amounts that may not be paid until 2016 or later. Taxes paid in 2015 on income from 2014 or earlier are excluded.

Contributions to Employment Insurance and to Canada Pension Plan (or Québec Pension Plan), both federal programs, are not included in income taxes, nor are they deducted from income to arrive at after-tax income.

Some of the income tax included may be liable for taxable amounts not considered income in our standard statistical definitions such as capital gains or Registered Retirement Savings Plan (RRSP) withdrawals.

Prior to the 2016 Census, health care premiums not collected through tax filings were not included as income taxes.

See also the detailed definitions for each of the components: net federal income tax and provincial and territorial income taxes.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Investment income

Definition

Income received during the reference period in the form of interest from deposits in banks, trust companies, co-operatives, credit unions and caisses populaires, interests on savings certificates, bonds and debentures, dividends from both Canadian and foreign stocks, net rental income from real estate, mortgage and loan interest received, regular income from an estate or trust fund, interest from insurance policies and net partnership income for a limited or non-active partner. This variable does not include net capital gains or losses as they are not part of the standard income definition.

---

[91] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[92] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks

Net partnership income of a limited or non-active partner was included in net self-employment income in previous censuses. In 2016, it is included in investment income.

It was not possible to separate any capital gains or losses incurred from other income earned within a registered tax-free savings account (TFSA). Investment income excludes both kinds of receipts if received within a TFSA.

See also Remarks under total income.

See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT)

Definition

The Low-income cut-offs, after tax refer to income thresholds, defined using 1992 expenditure data, below which economic families or persons not in economic families would likely have devoted a larger share of their after-tax income than average to the necessities of food, shelter and clothing. More specifically, the thresholds represented income levels at which these families or persons were expected to spend 20 percentage points or more of their after-tax income than average on food, shelter and clothing. These thresholds have been adjusted to current dollars using the all-items Consumer Price Index (CPI).

---

[92] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

The LICO-AT has 35 cut-offs varying by seven family sizes and five different sizes of area of residence to account for economies of scale and potential differences in cost of living in communities of different sizes. These thresholds are presented in Table 4.3: Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT — 1992 base) for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015, ***Dictionary, Census of Population, 2016***.

When the after-tax income of an economic family member or a person not in an economic family falls below the threshold applicable to the person, the person is considered to be in low income according to LICO-AT. Since the LICO-AT threshold and family income are unique within each economic family, low-income status based on LICO-AT can also be reported for economic families.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Economic family

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[93] (30% sample); 2006 (20% sample).

Reported for

Economic families and persons not in economic families aged 15 years and over in private households where low-income concepts are applicable (see Remarks).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The first set of Low-income cut-offs, after tax was based on income data and family expenditure patterns in 1986. The most recent Low-income cut-offs, after tax are based on the 1992 Family Expenditure Survey, which estimated that families spent on average 43% of their after-tax income on necessities of food, clothing and shelter. The LICO-AT thresholds were thus set to income levels where 63% of after-tax income would likely be spent on these necessities. Cut-offs for any given reference year are indexed by applying the corresponding annual all-items Consumer Price Index (CPI) to the cut-offs from the 1992 base year.

Low-income cut-offs, after tax is one of a series of low-income lines used in the Census.

See also low-income status; prevalence of low income; low-income gap; low-income gap ratio and after-tax income.

Low-income concepts do not apply to the full population. For example, persons living in collective households are excluded from the concepts because their living arrangements and expenditure patterns can be quite different from those of persons living in private households.

---

[93] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

The low-income concepts are also not applied in the territories and in certain areas based on census subdivision type (such as Indian reserves). The existence of substantial in-kind transfers (such as subsidized housing and First Nations band housing) and sizeable barter economies or consumption from own production (such as product from hunting, farming or fishing) could make the interpretation of low-income statistics more difficult in these situations.

Since their initial publication, Statistics Canada has clearly and consistently emphasized that the low-income lines are not measures of poverty. Rather, low-income lines reflect a consistent and well-defined methodology that identifies those who are substantially worse off than average. These measures have enabled Statistics Canada to report important trends, such as the changing composition of those below the low-income lines over time.

For additional information on various low-income concepts, see 'Low income lines,' (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2016002-eng.htm) in the *Income Research Paper Series* (Catalogue no. 75F0002M).

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT)

Definition

The Low-income cut-offs, before tax refer to income thresholds, defined using 1992 expenditure data, below which economic families or persons not in economic families would likely have devoted a larger share of their total income than average to the necessities of food, shelter and clothing. More specifically, the thresholds represented income levels at which these families or persons were expected to spend 20 percentage points or more of their total income than average on food, shelter and clothing. These thresholds have been adjusted to current dollars using the all-items Consumer Price Index (CPI).

The LICO-BT has 35 cut-offs varying by seven family sizes and five different sizes of area of residence to account for economies of scale and potential differences in cost of living in communities of different sizes. These thresholds are presented in Table 4.4: Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT – 1992 base) for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015, ***Dictionary, Census of Population, 2016***.

When the total income of an economic family member or a person not in an economic family falls below the threshold applicable to the person, the person is considered to be in low income according to LICO-BT.

Since the LICO-BT threshold and family income are unique within each economic family, low-income status based on LICO-BT can also be reported for economic families.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Economic family

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[94] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

---

[94] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported for

Economic families and persons not in economic families aged 15 years and over in private households where low-income concepts are applicable (see Remarks).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The Low-income cut-offs, before tax were first introduced in Canada in 1968 based on 1961 Census income data and 1959 family expenditure patterns. At that time, there were five different cut-offs varying between persons not in economic families and families of size two to five or more. Subsequent to these initial cut-offs, low-income cut-offs were revised based on national family expenditure data from 1969, 1978, 1986 and 1992, and the number of cut-offs increased to 35 compared to 5 in the 1959 base. These 35 cut-offs vary by seven family sizes and five different sizes of area of residence to account for economies of scale and potential differences in cost of living in communities of different sizes.

The most recent Low-income cut-offs, before tax are based on the 1992 Family Expenditure Survey, which estimated that families spent on average 50% of their total income on necessities of food, clothing and shelter. The LICO-BT thresholds were thus set to income levels where 70% of total income would likely be spent on these necessities.

The 1992-based cut-offs are the most commonly used. Cut-offs for any given reference year are indexed by applying the corresponding annual all-items Consumer Price Index (CPI) to the cut-offs from the 1992 base year.

Low-income cut-offs, before tax is one of a series of low-income lines used in the census.

See also low-income status; prevalence of low income; low-income gap; low-income gap ratio and total income.

Low-income concepts do not apply to the full population. For example, persons living in collective households are excluded from the concepts because their living arrangements and expenditure patterns can be quite different from those of persons living in private households.

The low-income concepts are also not applied in the territories and in certain areas based on census subdivision type (such as Indian reserves). The existence of substantial in-kind transfers (such as subsidized housing and First Nations band housing) and sizeable barter economies or consumption from own production (such as product from hunting, farming or fishing) could make the interpretation of low-income statistics more difficult in these situations.

Since their initial publication, Statistics Canada has clearly and consistently emphasized that the low-income lines are not measures of poverty. Rather, low-income lines reflect a consistent and well-defined methodology that identifies those who are substantially worse off than average. These measures have enabled Statistics Canada to report important trends, such as the changing composition of those below the low-income lines over time.

For additional information on various low-income concepts, see 'Low income lines,' (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2016002-eng.htm) in the *Income Research Paper Series* (Catalogue no. 75F0002M).

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Low-income gap

Definition

The low-income gap measures by how many dollars an income falls below a low-income line.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[95] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households where low-income concepts are applicable (see Remarks).

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Between 0 and the applicable low-income line.

Remarks

The low-income gap is calculated for each of the five low-income lines available in the census. These variables are appropriate for distributions and some statistics.

See also low-income status, low-income gap ratio, Low-income measure, after tax (LIM-AT), Low-income measure, before tax (LIM-BT), Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT), Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT) and Market Basket Measure (MBM).

Note that the low-income gap based on the Market Basket Measure (MBM) is only available from the sampled population.

Low-income concepts do not apply to the full population. For example, persons living in collective households are excluded from the concepts because their living arrangements and expenditure patterns can be quite different from those of persons living in private households.

The low-income concepts are also not applied in the territories and in certain areas based on census subdivision type (such as Indian reserves). The existence of substantial in-kind transfers (such as subsidized housing and First Nations band housing) and sizeable barter economies or consumption from own production (such as product from hunting, farming or fishing) could make the interpretation of low-income statistics more difficult in these situations.

Since their initial publication, Statistics Canada has clearly and consistently emphasized that the low-income lines are not measures of poverty. Rather, low-income lines reflect a consistent and well-defined methodology that identifies those who are substantially worse off than average. These measures have enabled Statistics Canada to report important trends, such as the changing composition of those below the low-income lines over time.

---

[95] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

For additional information on various low-income concepts, see 'Low income lines,' (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2016002-eng.htm) in the *Income Research Paper Series* (Catalogue no. 75F0002M).

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Low-income gap ratio

Definition

The low-income gap ratio expresses the low-income gap as a proportion of the applicable low-income line.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[96] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population in private households where low-income concepts are applicable (see Remarks).

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Between 0% and 100%

Remarks

The low-income gap ratio is calculated for each of the five low-income lines available in the census. These variables are appropriate for distributions and some statistics.

See also low-income status, low-income gap, Low-income measure, after tax (LIM-AT), Low-income measure, before tax (LIM-BT), Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT), Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT) and Market Basket Measure (MBM).

Note that the low-income gap ratio based on the Market Basket Measure (MBM) is only available from the sampled population.

Low-income concepts do not apply to the full population. For example, persons living in collective households are excluded from the concepts because their living arrangements and expenditure patterns can be quite different from those of persons living in private households.

The low-income concepts are also not applied in the territories and in certain areas based on census subdivision type (such as Indian reserves). The existence of substantial in-kind transfers (such as subsidized housing and

---

[96] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

First Nations band housing) and sizeable barter economies or consumption from own production (such as product from hunting, farming or fishing) could make the interpretation of low-income statistics more difficult in these situations.

Since their initial publication, Statistics Canada has clearly and consistently emphasized that the low-income lines are not measures of poverty. Rather, low-income lines reflect a consistent and well-defined methodology that identifies those who are substantially worse off than average. These measures have enabled Statistics Canada to report important trends, such as the changing composition of those below the low-income lines over time.

For additional information on various low-income concepts, see 'Low income lines,' (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2016002-eng.htm) in the *Income Research Paper Series* (Catalogue no. 75F0002M).

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Low-income measure, after tax (LIM-AT)

Definition

The Low-income measure, after tax, refers to a fixed percentage (50%) of median adjusted after-tax income of private households. The household after-tax income is adjusted by an equivalence scale to take economies of scale into account. This adjustment for different household sizes reflects the fact that a household's needs increase, but at a decreasing rate, as the number of members increases.

Using data from the 2016 Census of Population, the line applicable to a household is defined as half the Canadian median of the adjusted household after-tax income, multiplied by the square root of household size. The median is determined based on all persons in private households where low-income concepts are applicable. Thresholds for specific household sizes are presented in Table 4.2 Low-income measures thresholds (LIM-AT and LIM-BT) for private households of Canada, 2015, *Dictionary, Census of Population, 2016*.

When the unadjusted after-tax income of household pertaining to a person falls below the threshold applicable to the person based on household size, the person is considered to be in low income according to LIM-AT. Since the LIM-AT threshold and household income are unique within each household, low-income status based on LIM-AT can also be reported for households.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Private household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[97] (30% sample).

Reported for

Private households where low-income concepts are applicable (see Remarks).

---

[97] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Following the practice of many international organizations, Statistics Canada began to publish Low-income measures, before-tax and after-tax in 1991. The choice of using Low-income measures, before-tax or after-tax depends upon the analysis undertaken. The Low-income measure, after-tax takes into account the reduced spending power of households because of income taxes paid.

In 2010, after a comprehensive review of LIMs, the following three aspects of LIMs were revised.

(1) Accounting unit utilized: the median began to be calculated over the population of individuals, as opposed to over that of families or households. As a result, each person in the population is represented by their adjusted household income.

(2) Unit of analysis: the household replaced the economic family as the accounting unit in which individuals pooled income to enjoy economies of scale for consumption.

(3) Equivalence scale: to follow the international standard, the equivalence scale was changed and adjusted household income was calculated by dividing household income by the square root of the number of members in the household instead of by an equivalence scale that also depended on the age of each household member.

Low-income measure, after tax is one of a series of low-income lines used in the census. The LIM-AT thresholds are derived in multiple steps:

(1) Calculate the 'adjusted household after-tax income' for each household by dividing the household after-tax income by the equivalence scale, which is the square root of the number of persons in the household.

(2) Assign this adjusted household after-tax income to each person in the household.

(3) Determine the median of the adjusted household after-tax income over the population. The median is the level at where half of the population will have adjusted household after-tax income above it and half below it.

(4) Set the LIM-AT for one-person households to 50% of this median and the LIM-AT for households of other sizes to 50% of the median multiplied by the corresponding equivalence scale.

Since LIM-AT is both derived from and applied to the same data source, no inflation adjustment is required. Unlike the low-income cut-offs (LICOs) and the Market Basket Measure (MBM), LIM-AT does not vary by size of area of residence.

See also low-income status; prevalence of low income; low-income gap; low-income gap ratio and adjusted after-tax income.

Low-income concepts do not apply to the full population. For example, persons living in collective households are excluded from the concepts because their living arrangements and expenditure patterns can be quite different from those of persons living in private households.

The low-income concepts are also not applied in the territories and in certain areas based on census subdivision type (such as Indian reserves). The existence of substantial in-kind transfers (such as subsidized housing and First Nations band housing) and sizeable barter economies or consumption from own production (such as product from hunting, farming or fishing) could make the interpretation of low-income statistics more difficult in these situations.

Since their initial publication, Statistics Canada has clearly and consistently emphasized that the low-income lines are not measures of poverty. Rather, low-income lines reflect a consistent and well-defined methodology that identifies those who are substantially worse off than average. These measures have enabled Statistics Canada to report important trends, such as the changing composition of those below the low-income lines over time.

For additional information on various low-income concepts, see 'Low income lines,' (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2016002-eng.htm) in the *Income Research Paper Series* (Catalogue no. 75F0002M).

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Low-income measure, before tax (LIM-BT)

Definition

The Low-income measure, before tax, refers to a fixed percentage (50%) of median adjusted total income of private households. The household total income is adjusted by an equivalence scale to take economies of scale into account. This adjustment for different household sizes reflects the fact that a household's needs increase, but at a decreasing rate, as the number of members increases.

Using data from the 2016 Census of Population, the line applicable to a household is defined as half the Canadian median of the adjusted household total income multiplied by the square root of household size. The median is determined based on all persons in private households where low-income concepts are applicable. Thresholds for specific household sizes are presented in Table 4.2 Low-income measures thresholds (LIM-AT and LIM-BT) for private households of Canada, 2015, ***Dictionary, Census of Population, 2016***.

When the unadjusted total income of household pertaining to a person falls below the threshold applicable to the person based on household size, the person is considered to be in low income according to LIM-BT. Since the LIM-BT threshold and household income are unique within each household, low-income status based on LIM-BT can also be reported for households.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Private household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[98] (30% sample)

Reported for

Private households where low-income concepts are applicable (see Remarks).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

---

[98] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Remarks

Following the practice of many international organizations, Statistics Canada began to publish Low-income measures, before-tax and after-tax in 1991. The choice of using Low-income measures, before-tax or after-tax depends upon the analysis undertaken. The Low-income measure, after-tax takes into account the reduced spending power of households because of income taxes paid.

In 2010, after a comprehensive review of LIMs, the following three aspects of LIMs were revised.

(1) Accounting unit utilized: the median began to be calculated over the population of individuals, as opposed to over that of families or households. As a result, each person in the population is represented by their adjusted household income.

(2) Unit of analysis: the household replaced the economic family as the accounting unit in which individuals pooled income to enjoy economies of scale for consumption.

(3) Equivalence scale: to follow the international standard, the equivalence scale was changed and adjusted household income was calculated by dividing household income by the square root of the number of members in the household instead of by an equivalence scale that also depended on the age of each household member.

Low-income measure, before tax is one of a series of low-income lines used in the census. The LIM-BT thresholds are derived in multiple steps:

(1) Calculate the 'adjusted household total income' for each household by dividing the household total income by the equivalence scale, which is the square root of the number of persons in the household.

(2) Assign this adjusted household total income to each person in the household.

(3) Determine the median of the adjusted household total income over the population of all persons. The median is the level at where half of the population will have adjusted household total income above it and half below it.

(4) Set the LIM-BT for one-person households to 50% of this median and the LIM-BT for households of other sizes to 50% of the median multiplied by the corresponding equivalence scale.

Since LIM-BT is both derived from and applied to the same data source, no inflation adjustment is required. Unlike the low-income cut-offs (LICOs) and the Market Basket Measure (MBM), LIM-BT does not vary by size of area of residence.

See also low-income status; prevalence of low income; low-income gap; low-income gap ratio and adjusted total income.

Low-income concepts do not apply to the full population. For example, persons living in collective households are excluded from the concepts because their living arrangements and expenditure patterns can be quite different from those of persons living in private households.

The low-income concepts are also not applied in the territories and in certain areas based on census subdivision type (such as Indian reserves). The existence of substantial in-kind transfers (such as subsidized housing and First Nations band housing) and sizeable barter economies or consumption from own production (such as product from hunting, farming or fishing) could make the interpretation of low-income statistics more difficult in these situations.

Since their initial publication, Statistics Canada has clearly and consistently emphasized that the low-income lines are not measures of poverty. Rather, low-income lines reflect a consistent and well-defined methodology that identifies those who are substantially worse off than average. These measures have enabled Statistics Canada to report important trends, such as the changing composition of those below the low-income lines over time.

For additional information on various low-income concepts, see 'Low income lines,' (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2016002-eng.htm) in the *Income Research Paper Series* (Catalogue no. 75F0002M).

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Low-income measure of market income (LIM-MI)

The term 'Low-income measure of market income (LIM-MI)' is discontinued for the 2016 Census.

Low-income status

Definition

'Low-income status' refers to the income situation of the statistical unit in relation to a specific low-income line in a reference year. Statistical units with income that is below the low-income line are considered to be in low income.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Economic family
Private household

Classification(s)

Low-income status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299251)

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[99] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households and, depending on the definition used, economic families and persons not in economic families aged 15 years and over in private households, or private households where low-income concepts are applicable (see Remarks)

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

In low income
Not in low income
Not applicable

Remarks

This variable was referred to as income status in previous censuses.

Low-income status can be defined using different low-income concepts.

---

[99] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

In the 2016 Census, five different low-income indicators are available. Four lines were defined by Statistics Canada:

- Low-income measure, after tax (LIM-AT)
- Low-income measure, before tax (LIM-BT)
- Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT)
- Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT)

One line was defined by Employment and Skills Development Canada (ESDC) and is only available for the sampled population:

- Market Basket Measure (MBM)

Four dimensions generally distinguish the low-income lines:

- any geographical variations
- the aggregation or unit of analysis
- the income variable to test
- the equivalence scale for units of different sizes

They are summarily presented in Table 4.1, Summary of low-income lines in the 2016 Census of Population Program.

See also Low income lines (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2016002-eng.htm) and Low income in Canada - A multi-line and multi-index perspective (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2012001-eng.htm) from the *Income Research Paper Series* (http://www5.statcan.gc.ca/olc-cel/olc.action?objId=75F0002M&objType=2&lang=en&limit=0) (Catalogue no. 75F0002M) for detailed definitions and discussions of each line.

Members of a household all share the same low-income status for the LIM-AT and LIM-BT.

Members of an economic family all share the same low-income status for LICO-AT, LICO-BT and MBM.

See also prevalence of low income; low-income gap; low-income gap ratio.

Low-income concepts do not apply to the full population. For example, persons living in collective households are excluded from the concepts because their living arrangements and expenditure patterns can be quite different from those of persons living in private households.

The low-income concepts are also not applied in the territories and in certain areas based on census subdivision type (such as Indian reserves). The existence of substantial in-kind transfers (such as subsidized housing and First Nations band housing) and sizeable barter economies or consumption from own production (such as product from hunting, farming or fishing) could make the interpretation of low-income statistics more difficult in these situations.

Since their initial publication, Statistics Canada has clearly and consistently emphasized that the low-income lines are not measures of poverty. Rather, low-income lines reflect a consistent and well-defined methodology that identifies those who are substantially worse off than average. These measures have enabled Statistics Canada to report important trends, such as the changing composition of those below the low-income lines over time.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Major source of income

Definition

The income source, or group of sources, that makes up the largest proportion of an individual's total income during the reference period.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[100] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample).

For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Various combinations of income sources can be used to derive this classification. For example, income sources can be combined into five components: wages, salaries and commissions, net self-employment income (farm and non-farm), government transfers, investment income and other income. The absolute values for these components are compared and the largest one is designated as the major source of income.

See income sources. For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Market Basket Measure (MBM)

Definition

Market Basket Measure refers to the measure of low income based on the cost of a specific basket of goods and services representing a modest, basic standard of living developed by Employment and Social Development Canada (ESDC). The threshold represents the costs of specified qualities and quantities of food, clothing, footwear, transportation, shelter and other expenses for a reference family of two adults and two children.

---

[100] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

The square root of economic family size is the equivalence scale used to adjust the MBM thresholds for other family sizes.

The MBM basket (2011-base) is priced for 50 different geographic areas - 19 specific communities and 31 population centre size and province combinations. The MBM recognises the potential differences in the cost of the basket between similar-sized communities in different provinces and between different geographical regions within provinces. These thresholds are presented in Table 4.5 Market Basket Measure (MBM) thresholds for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015, ***Dictionary, Census of Population, 2016***.

The income measure used to compare against the MBM thresholds is the disposal income for the MBM. When the disposable income for the MBM of an economic family member or a person not in economic family falls below the threshold applicable to the person, the person is considered to be in low income according to MBM. Since the MBM threshold and disposable income are unique within each economic family, low-income status based on MBM can also be reported for economic families.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Economic family

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample), 2011[101] (30% sample).

Reported for

Economic families and persons not in economic families aged 15 years and over in private households where low-income concepts are applicable (see Remarks).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The first MBM basket and disposable income definitions were established in 2000 by a working group of federal, provincial and territorial officials, led by Human Resources and Skills Development Canada (HRSDC). Since then, there have been several revisions including the 2009/2010 comprehensive review (leading to the 2008-base) and subsequent revision to the shelter component (leading to the 2011-base). The MBM thresholds are based on the cost of a specific basket of goods and services representing a modest, basic standard of living in the base-year.

The MBM thresholds (2011-base) used by the Census Program reflect the cost of purchasing the following items:

- A nutritious diet as specified in Health Canada's 2008 National Nutritious Food Basket.
- A basket of clothing and footwear required by a family of two adults and two children.
- Shelter cost as the median cost of two- or three-bedroom rental units including electricity, heat, water and appliances.

---

[101] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

- Transportation costs, using public transit where available or costs associated with owning and operating a modest vehicle where public transit is not available.
- Other necessary goods and services.

The MBM is updated annually for price changes in the basket, and ESDC rebases the MBM basket periodically by examining the methodology of constructing the basket and disposable income.

While ESDC is responsible for defining the components of the basket and the related concepts, Statistics Canada is responsible for the costing of the components and producing low-income statistics.

The Market Basket Measure is one of a series of low-income lines used in the census. Since the MBM is defined for 50 different geographic areas, it is more sensitive than other low-income lines to geographical variations in the cost of many typical items of expenditure.

Note that the Market Basket Measure (MBM) is only available from the sampled population.

See also low-income status; prevalence of low income; low-income gap; low-income gap ratio and disposable income for the MBM.

Low-income concepts do not apply to the full population. For example, persons living in collective households are excluded from the concepts because their living arrangements and expenditure patterns can be quite different from those of persons living in private households.

The low-income concepts are also not applied in the territories and in certain areas based on census subdivision type (such as Indian reserves). The existence of substantial in-kind transfers (such as subsidized housing and First Nations band housing) and sizeable barter economies or consumption from own production (such as product from hunting, farming or fishing) could make the interpretation of low-income statistics more difficult in these situations.

Since their initial publication, Statistics Canada has clearly and consistently emphasized that the low-income lines are not measures of poverty. Rather, low-income lines reflect a consistent and well-defined methodology that identifies those who are substantially worse off than average. These measures have enabled Statistics Canada to report important trends, such as the changing composition of those below the low-income lines over time.

For additional information on various low-income concepts, see 'Low income lines,' (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2016002-eng.htm) from the *Income Research Paper Series* (Catalogue no. 75F0002M).

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Market income

Definition

The sum of employment income (wages, salaries and commissions, net self-employment income from farm or non-farm unincorporated business and/or professional practice), investment income, private retirement income (retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities, including those from registered retirement savings plans [RRSPs] and registered retirement income funds [RRIFs]) and other money income from market sources during the reference period. It is equivalent to total income minus government transfers. It is also referred to as income before transfers and taxes.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[102] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks

This variable does not include net capital gains or losses which are not part of the standard income definition.

See Remarks under total income.

See also income sources and the detailed definitions for each of the components: employment income, investment income, private retirement income and market income not included elsewhere.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Market income not included elsewhere

Definition

Regular cash income from market sources that are not included in any of the other market income sources during the reference period. For example, severance pay and retirement allowances, alimony or child support received, periodic support from other persons not in the household, any income from abroad that is not investment income, scholarships, bursaries, fellowships and study grants and artists' project grants are included.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

---

[102] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[103] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

This variable was referred to as other money income in previous censuses.

See Remarks under total income.

See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

National child benefit supplement (NCBS)

Definition

National child benefit supplement (NCBS) received by parents or guardians with dependent children during the reference period. These benefits aim at helping low-income families; the amount of benefits received depends on a family's income and the number of children within the family.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

---

[103] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of child benefits. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Net capital gains or losses

Definition

The net gains received or losses incurred during the reference period from the sale of capital property. This represents the proceeds of disposition minus the adjusted cost base of the property and outlays and expenses incurred to sell the property. Included with adjusted cost base are any expenses incurred to acquire the property and capital expenditures made toward property improvements with the exception of those that are current, such as ongoing repair or maintenance costs.

Capital property includes depreciable property and any property which, if sold, would result in a capital gain or loss (for example, cottages, buildings and securities such as mutual funds).

Non-taxable capital gains or losses on the sale of a principal residence are excluded.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[104] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

---

[104] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks

This variable is excluded from the concept of investment income. It is not considered in the regular concept of total income as disseminated in standard products. It is instead included in an alternate variable total income plus net capital gains or losses.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Net farm income

Definition

Net income (gross receipts minus cost of operation and capital cost allowance) received during the reference period from self-employment activities, either on own account or in partnership. In the case of partnerships, only the person's share of income is included. Net partnership income of a limited or non-active partner is excluded.

Farming income is the only included source in the farm income component defined here. It excludes fishing income and income from non-farm business or professional practice. Commission income for a self-employed commission salesperson and royalties from a work or invention with expenses associated are also excluded from this farm component.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[105] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample).

For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

---

[105] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Remarks

See Remarks under total income.

See also net self-employment income.

Included with gross receipts are cash advances received in the reference period, dividends from cooperatives, rebates and farm-support payments to farmers from federal, provincial and regional agricultural programs (for example, milk subsidies and marketing board payments) and gross insurance proceeds such as payments from the AgriInvest and AgriStability programs. The value of income 'in kind,' such as agricultural products produced and consumed on the farm, is excluded.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Net federal income tax

Definition

Net federal income tax on income received during the reference period. It is the federal income tax less the Quebec refundable abatement and the federal refundable Yukon First Nations abatement.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income taxes variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

This variable is a component of income taxes.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Net non-farm income from unincorporated business or professional practice

Definition

Net income (gross receipts minus cost of operation and capital cost allowance) received during the reference period from self-employment activities, either on own account or in partnership. In the case of partnerships, only the person's share of income is included. Net partnership income of a limited or non-active partner is excluded.

It includes, fishing income and income from unincorporated business or professional practice. Commission income for a self-employed commission salesperson and royalties from a work or invention with expenses associated are also included in this source. Farming income is excluded from the non-farm income component defined here.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[106] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample).

For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks

See Remarks under total income.

See also net self-employment income.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Net self-employment income

Definition

Net income (gross receipts minus cost of operation and capital cost allowance) received during the reference period from self-employment activities, either on own account or in partnership. In the case of partnerships, only the person's share of income is included. Net partnership income of a limited or non-active partner is excluded.

---

[106] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

It includes farming income, fishing income and income from unincorporated business or professional practice. Commission income for a self-employed commission salesperson and royalties from a work or invention with expenses associated are also included in this source.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[107] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks

Net partnership income of a limited or non-active partner was included in net self-employment income in previous censuses. In 2016, it is included in investment income.

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of employment income. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Non-discretionary spending for the MBM

Definition

Non-discretionary spending for the Market Basket Measure (MBM) consists of the following:

- personal portion of payroll taxes, such as employment insurance premiums and Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan contributions;
- other mandatory payroll deductions, such as contributions to employer-sponsored pension plans, supplementary health plans, and union dues;

---

[107] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

- child support and alimony payments made to another family;
- out-of-pocket spending on child care, and
- non-insured, but medically prescribed health-related expenses such as dental and vision care, prescription drugs, and aids for persons with disabilities.

The conceptual contents of this variable were defined by Employment and Social Development Canada (ESDC) for the purposes of computing the disposable income for the MBM.

Non-discretionary spending for the MBM at the economic family level is the sum of non-discretionary spending for the MBM of all economic family members.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Economic family

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample), 2011[108] (30% sample)

Reported for

Economic families and persons not in economic families aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

Two components were derived from responses to spending questions on the long-form census questionnaire. See child care expenses paid and child or spousal support payments.

The other items were either based on tax file deductions for respondents who filed a tax return for 2015 or were imputed for remaining respondents.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

---

[108] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Old Age Security pension (OAS)

Definition

Old Age Security pension paid to persons aged 65 years and over by the federal government during the reference period. The Guaranteed Income Supplement, Allowance and Allowance for the Survivor are excluded.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

The amount to be repaid based on net income when filing a tax return is excluded.

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of Old Age Security pension (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS). See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Old Age Security pension (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS)

Definition

Old Age Security pension and Guaranteed Income Supplement paid to persons aged 65 years and over, and to the Allowance or the Allowance for the Survivor paid to 60- to 64-year-old spouses of old age security recipients or widow(er)s by the federal government during the reference period.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[109] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

The amount to be repaid based on net income when filing a tax return is excluded.

Provincial income supplements for seniors are included in government transfers not included elsewhere.

Retirement pensions to civil servants, Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RCMP) and military personnel are included in private retirement income.

See Remarks under total income.

See also income sources and the detailed definitions for each of the components: Old Age Security pension (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) and spousal allowance.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Other government transfers

Definition

All government transfers received during the reference period other than those from the following sources:

- Old Age Security pension, Guaranteed Income Supplement, Allowance or Allowance for the Survivor;
- retirement, disability and survivor benefits from Canada Pension Plan and Québec Pension Plan;
- benefits from Employment Insurance and Québec parental insurance plan;
- child benefits from federal and provincial programs.

The key components of this variable are social assistance benefits, workers' compensation benefits, working income tax benefit, goods and services tax credit and harmonized sales tax credit, refundable provincial tax credits, provincial income supplements for seniors, other provincial credits, benefits and rebates, veterans' pensions, war veterans' allowance, pensions to widow(er)s and dependants of veterans.

---

[109] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[110] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

This variable was referred to as other income from government sources in previous censuses.

See 'Remarks' under total income.

See also income sources and the detailed definitions for each of the components: social assistance benefits, workers' compensation benefits, working income tax benefit (WITB), goods and services tax (GST) credit and harmonized sales tax (HST) credit and government transfers not included elsewhere.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Other income from government sources

The term 'Other income from government sources' is discontinued for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Other government transfers.'

Other money income

The term 'Other money income' is discontinued for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Market income not included elsewhere.'

---

[110] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Prevalence of low income

Definition

The proportion or percentage of units whose income falls below a specified low-income line.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[111] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population in private households where low-income concepts are applicable (see Remarks)

Question number(s)

Derived statistic

Responses

Between 0% and 100%;

Remarks

The prevalence of low income can be calculated for each of the five low-income lines available in the census for various population groups at different levels of geography.

See also low-income status, Low-income measure, after tax (LIM-AT), Low-income measure, before tax (LIM-BT), Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT), Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT) and Market Basket Measure (MBM).

Note that the prevalence of low income based on the Market Basket Measure (MBM) is only available from the sampled population.

Low-income concepts do not apply to the full population. For example, persons living in collective households are excluded from the concepts because their living arrangements and expenditure patterns can be quite different from those of persons living in private households.

The low-income concepts are also not applied in the territories and in certain areas based on census subdivision type (such as Indian reserves). The existence of substantial in-kind transfers (such as subsidized housing and First Nations band housing) and sizeable barter economies or consumption from own production (such as product from hunting, farming or fishing) could make the interpretation of low-income statistics more difficult in these situations.

Since their initial publication, Statistics Canada has clearly and consistently emphasized that the low-income lines are not measures of poverty. Rather, low-income lines reflect a consistent and well-defined methodology that identifies those who are substantially worse off than average. These measures have enabled Statistics Canada to report important trends, such as the changing composition of those below the low-income lines over time.

---

[111] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

For additional information on various low-income concepts, see 'Low income lines,' (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/pub/75f0002m/75f0002m2016002-eng.htm) in the *Income Research Paper Series* (Catalogue no. 75F0002M).

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Private retirement income

Definition

All regular income received during the reference period associated with employer or personal retirement pensions, benefits or savings plans. It includes payments received from all annuities, including payments from employers' registered pension plans (RPPs), pooled registered pension plans (PRPPs) and matured registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs) in the form of a life annuity, a fixed-term annuity, a registered retirement income fund (RRIF) or an income-averaging annuity contract; pensions paid to widow(er)s or other relatives of deceased pensioners; pensions of retired civil servants, Canadian Armed Forces personnel and Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RCMP) officers; annuity payments received from the Canadian Government Annuities Fund, an insurance company, etc. It does not include lump-sum death benefits, lump-sum benefits or withdrawals from a pension plan or RRSP or refunds of over-contributions.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[112] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

This variable was referred to as retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities, including those from RRSPs and RRIFs in previous censuses.

---

[112] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

See Remarks under total income.

See also income sources and Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Provincial and territorial child benefits

Definition

Provincial or territorial child benefits received by parents or guardians with dependent children during the reference period. Some of these programs include a basic benefit amount as well as an earned income supplement.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of child benefits. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Provincial and territorial income taxes

Definition

Provincial and territorial taxes on income received during the reference period. It includes health care premiums and Yukon First Nations Tax in certain jurisdictions.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income taxes variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

This variable is a component of income taxes.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities, including those from RRSPs and RRIFs

The term 'Retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities, including those from RRSPs and RRIFs' is discontinued for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Private retirement income.'

Severity of low income

The term 'Severity of low income' is discontinued for the 2016 Census

Social assistance benefits

Definition

All social assistance payments received by persons in need during the reference period. On the basis of need, eligible social assistance recipients may receive assistance to cover the cost of food, shelter, clothing and other daily necessities. Other allowances may also be granted to persons with special needs or circumstances, such as elderly persons, persons with disabilities, single-parent families and persons with barriers to employment.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of other government transfers. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Total income

'Total income' refers to the sum of certain incomes (in cash and, in some circumstances, in kind) of the statistical unit during a specified reference period. The components used to calculate total income vary between:

- Statistical units of social statistical programs such as persons, private households, census families and economic families;
- Statistical units of business statistical programs such as enterprises, companies, establishments and locations; and
- Statistical units of farm statistical programs such as farm operator and farm family.

In the context of persons, total income refers to receipts from certain sources, before income taxes and deductions, during a specified reference period.

In the context of census families, total income refers to receipts from certain sources of all of its family members, before income taxes and deductions, during a specified reference period.

In the context of economic families, total income refers to receipts from certain sources of all of its family members, before income taxes and deductions, during a specified reference period.

In the context of households, total income refers to receipts from certain sources of all household members, before income taxes and deductions, during a specified reference period.

The monetary receipts included are those that tend to be of a regular and recurring nature. Receipts that are included as income are:

- employment income from wages, salaries, tips, commissions and net income from self-employment (for both unincorporated farm and non-farm activities);
- income from investment sources, such as dividends and interest on bonds, accounts, guaranteed investment certificates (GICs) and mutual funds;
- income from employer and personal pension sources, such as private pensions and payments from annuities and registered retirement income funds (RRIFs);
- other regular cash income, such as child support payments received, spousal support payments (alimony) received and scholarships;
- income from government sources, such as social assistance, child benefits, Employment Insurance benefits, Old Age Security benefits, Canada Pension Plan and Québec Pension Plan benefits and disability income.

Receipts excluded from this income definition are:

- one-time receipts, such as lottery winnings, gambling winnings, cash inheritances, lump-sum insurance settlements and tax-free savings account (TFSA) or registered retirement savings plan (RRSP) withdrawals;
- capital gains because they are not by their nature regular and recurring. It is further assumed that they are more relevant to the concept of wealth than the concept of income;
- employers' contributions to registered pension plans, Canada Pension Plan, Québec Pension Plan and Employment Insurance;
- voluntary inter-household transfers, imputed rent, goods and services produced for barter and goods produced for own consumption.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person
Economic family
Census family
Private household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[113] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample); 1971 (33% sample); 1961 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks

Information on total income was collected in the 1961, 1971, 1981, 1986, 1991, 1996, 2001, 2006 and 2016 Censuses and in the 2011 National Household Survey. The major differences between censuses with respect to income are summarized below.

For detailed information about the data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Methodology

(a) In 2016, income data were derived for all households. In previous cycles, income data were only collected from a sample of households, with the exception of households in remote areas and on Indian reserves where 100% households were enumerated.

(b) In 1961, data were collected by canvassers. In subsequent censuses, the main collection method used was self-enumeration. For 2006 and 2011, two modes of collection were used: self-reporting and administrative data. In these two cycles, respondents were given the option of allowing Statistics Canada access to tax data files provided by the Canada Revenue Agency. In 2006, information from the income tax and benefit returns was used to derive income. In 2011, two administrative files – the income tax and benefit returns and the Canada child tax benefit files – were used as inputs to the estimates. In 2016, administrative data were the sole source for income data. To enhance population coverage and data quality, an expanded number of administrative files were used to compile income data.

(c) Because of the various options of reporting income for tax purposes to the Canada Revenue Agency available to Hutterite colonies, all individuals in them have been assigned zero income between 1981 and 2011.

(d) Income components not available through administrative files, such as non-taxable provincial benefits and refundable tax credits, were calculated for individuals based on the program specifications and eligibility criteria.

Reference period

Except for 1961, income reported was for the calendar year prior to the census. The 1961 Census gave the respondents the option to report their income either for the 12 months preceding the census or for the 1960 calendar year.

---

[113] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Coverage

(a) The 1961 Census excluded from income estimates all farm households, all collective households and all households in the Northwest Territories.

(b) Prior to 2016, only the 1971 Census collected information on income from institutional residents.

(c) Since 1991, income information is collected from non-permanent residents. (See the definition for immigrant status: non-permanent resident.)

(d) In the 2006 Census, the universe also included persons aged 15 years and over living in non-institutional collective dwellings. However, a processing error set income for persons in residences for seniors to zero.

(e) The 2011 National Household Survey only covered persons living in private households.

(f) In the 2016 Census, income data were collected for the entire population, but standard products are only based on the population in private households for enhanced comparability between the short-form and long-form questionnaires, as well as for data quality concerns surrounding selected collective dwellings. Additional details are available in the Data quality Section of the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Concept

(a) The 1961 Census did not collect data on income from farming. Therefore, this source of income was excluded from total income in that census.

(b) The 1971 Census, for the first time, included some child benefits (family allowance) in total income. Since then, there has been several legislative and program changes to the child benefits programs.

Summarized below are the child benefits included in total income in different census cycles:

- Family allowance: 1971, 1981, 1986 and 1991
- Federal child tax credits: 1986 and 1991 (not included in 1981)
- Federal child tax benefit: 1996
- Canada child tax benefits: 2001, 2006, 2011 and 2016
- National child benefit supplement: 2001, 2006, 2011 and 2016
- Provincial and territorial child benefits including earned income supplements: 2001, 2006, 2011 and 2016
- Child disability benefit: 2006, 2011 and 2016
- Universal child care benefits: 2011 and 2016

(c) Benefits from wage-loss replacement plans or income-maintenance plans are included with wages and salaries since the 2001 Census. In prior censuses, these amounts were included as part of other money income.

(d) Since administrative data were used to obtain income information starting in the 2006 Census, the following changes were made to source income components to better harmonize with the concept of income under the taxation system. Taxable benefits associated with employment, research grants and royalties were since included as part of wages, salaries and commissions. Research grants and royalties were formerly included as part of other money income, while taxable benefits and allowances from employment were formerly excluded. Regular payments to motor vehicle accident victims from provincial or territorial governments, formerly included in other income from government sources, were since excluded.

(e) In previous censuses, income received in the reference period by persons who became immigrants in the census year was not included in total income. Due to changes in the income data collection and processing strategies in 2016 and the non-availability of the immigration responses for the full population, this condition was not imposed to individuals who became immigrants in 2016. These people might have had income in 2015 as non-permanent resident.

(f) Various censuses differed with respect to combinations of income sources. For details, see income sources, Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015, as well as the dictionaries for previous census cycles.

See also after-tax income.

(g) In all censuses, the income concept excluded gambling gains and losses, lottery prizes, money inherited during the year in a lump sum, capital gains or losses, receipts from the sale of property, income tax refunds, loan payments received, lump-sum settlements of insurance policies, rebates received on property taxes, refunds of pension contributions as well as all non-taxable 'in kind' benefits, such as free meals, living accommodations,
or agricultural products produced and consumed on the farm.

(h) Total income excludes any returns (positive or negative) incurred in registered tax-free savings accounts (TFSAs). It was not possible to separate capital gains or losses, which is not considered as income in the standard definition of total income, from other forms of income within a TFSA.

Total income decile group

Definition

The total income deciles divide the population aged 15 years and over into 10 equal-sized groups according to the rank of the total income. Those in the bottom decile group are the ones who fall in the lower 10 percent of the total income distribution. Those in the top decile group are the ones who fall in the highest ten percent of the total income distribution.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable

Responses

In the lowest decile
In the second decile
In the third decile
In the fourth decile
In the fifth decile
In the sixth decile
In the seventh decile
In the eighth decile
In the ninth decile
In the highest decile

Remarks

Persons without total income are included in the calculation of the deciles cut-points (i.e., the levels of total income that define the decile groups).

Since the deciles cut-points are derived based on data from the 2016 Census of Population short-form questionnaire, the percentage of the sampled population in each decile group may not correspond exactly to 10%.

See also total income.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Total income plus net capital gains or losses

Definition

This is a non-standard definition of income designed for specific analyses that adds net capital gains or losses to the standard total income.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[114] (30% sample)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks

See net capital gains or losses and total income.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Universal child care benefit (UCCB)

Definition

Universal child care benefit (UCCB) payments received by parents or guardians with dependent children during the reference period. The amount of benefits received depends on the number and age of children within a family.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

---

[114] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of child benefits. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Wages, salaries and commissions

Definition

Gross wages and salaries before deductions for such items as income taxes, pension plan contributions and employment insurance premiums during the reference period. While other employee remuneration such as security options benefits, board and lodging and other taxable allowances and benefits are included in this source, employers' contributions to pension plans and employment insurance plans are excluded. Other receipts included in this source are military pay and allowances, tips, commissions and cash bonuses associated with paid employment, benefits from wage-loss replacement plans or income-maintenance insurance plans, supplementary unemployment benefits from an employer or union, research grants, royalties from a work or invention with no associated expenses and all types of casual earnings during the reference period.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data); 2011[115] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See Remarks under total income.

This variable is a component of employment income. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Workers' compensation benefits

Definition

All benefits received from federal, provincial, territorial or municipal workers' compensation programs during the reference period, due to work-related injuries or disabilities.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

---

[115] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of other government transfers. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Working income tax benefit (WITB)

Definition

Refundable tax credits received under the federal working income tax benefit program during the reference period. These benefits vary by province or territory and are intended to provide tax relief for eligible working low-income individuals and families who are already in the workforce and to encourage other Canadians to enter the workforce.

For the 2016 Census, the reference period is the calendar year 2015 for all income variables.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (100% data).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Variable derived based on administrative tax and benefit records received from the Canada Revenue Agency.

Responses

Positive dollar value or nil

Remarks

See 'Remarks' under total income.

This variable is a component of other government transfers. See also income sources.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 4.1, Components of income in 2015.

For additional information about data collection method, coverage, reference period, concepts, data quality and intercensal comparability of the income data, refer to the *Income Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/004/98-500-x2016004-eng.cfm).

Journey to work

Commuting destination

Definition

'Commuting destination' refers to whether or not a person commutes to another municipality (i.e., census subdivision), another census division or another province or territory. Commuting refers to the travel of a person between his or her place of residence and his or her usual place of work.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Experienced labour force person
Person with recent work experience

Classification(s)

Commuting destination (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=250669)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[116] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked at some time since January 1, 2015, and who reported having a usual place of work. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week, but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held the longest during that period.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question 42

Responses

Commute within census subdivision (CSD) of residence
Commute to a different census subdivision (CSD) within census division (CD) of residence
Commute to a different census subdivision (CSD) and census division (CD) within province or territory of residence
Commute to a different province or territory

Remarks

The comparison of residence and workplace location can also be applied to other geographic units.

---

[116] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Commuting duration

Definition

'Commuting duration' refers to the length of time, in minutes, usually required by a person to travel between his or her place of residence and his or her place of work.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Experienced labour force person
Person with recent work experience

Classification(s)

Duration of commute (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=144972)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[117] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked at some time since January 1, 2015, and who reported having a usual place of work or no fixed workplace address. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week, but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held the longest during that period.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 44b)

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Commuting vehicle occupancy

Definition

'Commuting vehicle' occupancy refers to the usual number of commuters in a car, truck, or van used by the person to travel to work.

---

[117] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Experienced labour force person
Person with recent work experience

Classification(s)

Commuting vehicle occupancy (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=250677)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[118] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked at some time since January 1, 2015, and who reported having a usual place of work or no fixed workplace address and who reported travelling by car, truck or van as a driver or as a passenger. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week, but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held the longest during that period.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 43b)

Responses

Drove alone
Two people shared the ride to work
Three or more people shared the ride to work
Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Distance from home to work

Definition

'Distance from home to work' refers to the straight-line distance, in kilometres, between a person's residence and his or her usual place of work.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Experienced labour force person
Person with recent work experience

---

[118] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[119] (30% sample); 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked at some time since January 1, 2015, and who reported having a usual place of work. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week, but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held the longest during that period.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question 42

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Workplace locations are coded to a geographic point location. This geographic point location is a blockface, dissemination block, dissemination area or census subdivision representative point. Distance from home to work is calculated as the straight-line distance between the residential block representative point and the workplace location representative point. In most cases, this underestimates the distance travelled to work because workers seldom have a route that minimizes the distance they travel (such as a straight line) between their home and workplace.

For persons who work outside the areas covered by census metropolitan areas or census agglomerations, the workplace location is coded to a single representative point for the census subdivision of work. This can affect the calculated distance from home to work, particularly when the census subdivision of work has a large area. These representative points may change from survey to survey, therefore users should be cautious when comparing commuting distances between surveys.

Main mode of commuting

Definition

'Main mode of commuting' refers to the main mode of transportation a person uses to travel between his or her home and his or her place of work.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Experienced labour force person
Person with recent work experience

---

[119] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Classification(s)

Main mode of commuting (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=251144)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[120] (30% sample); 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked at some time since January 1, 2015. Persons who indicated that they either had no fixed workplace address, or specified a usual workplace address, were asked to identify the mode of transportation they usually used to commute from home to work. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held the longest during that period.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 43a)

Responses

Car, truck or van — as a driver
Car, truck or van — as a passenger
Bus
Subway or elevated rail
Light rail, streetcar or commuter train
Passenger ferry
Walked to work
Bicycle
Motorcycle, scooter or moped
Other method

Remarks

Persons who used more than one mode of commuting were asked to identify the single mode they used for most of the travel distance. As a result, the question provides data on the main mode of commuting. The question does not measure multiple modes of transportation, nor does it measure the seasonal variation in mode of commuting or trips made for purposes other than the commute from home to work.

Mode of transportation

The term 'Mode of transportation' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'Main mode of commuting.'

---

[120] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Time arriving at work

Definition

'Time arriving at work' refers to the time of day at which a person usually arrives at their place of work.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Experienced labour force person
Person with recent work experience

Classification(s)

Time arriving at work (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=396083)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[121] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked at some time since January 1, 2015, and who reported having a usual place of work or no fixed workplace address. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held the longest during that period.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 44a) and 44b)

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Two variables have been derived: PWARRIVE and PWARRIVENUM.

PWARRIVE was created using a standard format, i.e., 815 for 8:15 a.m. and 1315 for 1:15 p.m.

The variable PWARRIVENUM is formatted to display the time in number of minutes past midnight. For example, midnight would be 0 and subsequent arrival times would have values displayed in the following format: 60 for 1:00 a.m. and 495 for 8:15 a.m. This variable enables the calculation of averages and medians.

Time leaving for work

Definition

'Time leaving for work' refers to the time of day at which a person usually leaves home to go to their place of work.

---

[121] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Experienced labour force person
Person with recent work experience

Classification(s)

Time leaving for work (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=251151)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[122] (30% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked at some time since January 1, 2015, and who reported having a usual place of work or no fixed workplace address. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held the longest during that period.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 44a)

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Two variables have been derived: PWLEAVE and PWLEAVENUM.

PWLEAVE was created using a standard format, i.e., 815 for 8:15 a.m. and 1315 for 1:15 p.m.

The variable PWLEAVENUM is formatted to display the time in number of minutes past midnight. For example, midnight would be 0 and subsequent departure times would have values displayed in the following format: 60 for 1:00 a.m. and 495 for 8:15 a.m. This variable enables the calculation of averages and medians.

Workplace location

Definition

'Location of workplace' refers to the geographic location of the person's workplace for those who have a usual place of work or who work at home.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Experienced labour force person
Person with recent work experience

---

[122] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Classification(s)

Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 **(http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314300)**
Statistical Area Classification - Variant of SGC 2016 **(http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314312)**

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[123] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households, who worked at some time since January 1, 2015, and who reported having a usual place of work or working at home. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held longest during that period.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 42

Responses

For persons who indicated they 'Worked at home' or 'Worked at the address specified below' (a usual place of work), the street address, city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve, province or territory and postal code of their workplace were used to assign geographic codes identifying the workplace location.

Several workplace location geographic codes are available, including province, census division, census subdivision, census metropolitan area, census agglomeration, census tract, dissemination area and dissemination block. The hierarchy of standard geographic areas is presented in the geography section.

Data on workplace locations are usually disseminated at the census subdivision and census tract levels of geography, but can be produced at other levels upon request. Aggregating workplace location representative points can approximate non-standard or user-defined query areas, such as traffic zones.

For those who work at home, the place of residence geographic location is the place of work geographic location.

Remarks

Data on persons working in census metropolitan areas or census agglomerations are coded to a blockface, dissemination block or dissemination area representative point.

Data on persons working outside census metropolitan areas or census agglomerations are coded to a census subdivision representative point; therefore, the census subdivision is the smallest geographic area available for these areas.

---

[123] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Labour

Class of worker

Definition

'Class of worker' refers to whether a person is an employee or is self-employed. The self-employed include persons with or without a business, as well as unpaid family workers.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Labour force
Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Class of Worker (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=114430)
Variant of class of worker - Detail on the Self Employed (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=140936)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[124] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households, who worked since January 1, 2015. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held longest during that period.

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 40 and 41

Responses

Employee
Self-employed
Self-employed (incorporated business)
Without paid help
With paid help
Self-employed (unincorporated business)
Without paid help
With paid help
Unpaid family worker

---

[124] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Remarks

Employee

This category includes persons who worked for others in the context of an employer-employee relationship. This includes persons who worked for wages, salaries, commissions, tips, piece-rates, or payments 'in kind' (payments in goods or services rather than money).

Exclusion:

'Employee' does not include working owners of incorporated businesses even though they may receive wages, salaries, commissions, tips, piece-rates or payments 'in kind' (payments in goods or services rather than money).

Self-employed

This category includes persons whose job consisted mainly of operating a business, farm or professional practice, alone or in partnership. This includes: operating a farm, whether the land is rented or owned; working on a freelance or contract basis to do a job (e.g., architects, private duty nurses); operating a direct distributorship selling and delivering products such as cosmetics, newspapers, brushes and cleaning products; and fishing with own equipment or with equipment in which the person has a share. The business can be incorporated or unincorporated. Self-employed persons include those with and those without paid help. Also included among the self-employed are unpaid family workers. They are persons who work without pay in a business, farm or professional practice owned and operated by another family member living in the same dwelling.

Data are available for:

(a) the employed;

(b) the labour force - persons who were either employed or unemployed in the reference week. Unemployed persons who worked prior to January 1, 2015, or who never worked, are shown in the data under the category 'Class of worker - Not applicable';

(c) persons with recent work experience; they are those who have worked at some point in time between January 2015 and May 2016, regardless of whether or not they were in the labour force in the reference week.

Employed person

Definition

'Employed person' refers to those who, during the reference period, had a labour force status of "employed". That is, those who, during the reference period: (a) Did any work at all at a job or business, that is, paid work in the context of an employer-employee relationship, or self-employment. This also includes persons who did unpaid family work, which is defined as unpaid work contributing directly to the operation of a farm, business or professional practice owned and operated by a related member of the same household; or (b) Had a job but were not at work due to factors such as their own illness or disability, personal or family responsibilities, vacation or a labour dispute. This category excludes persons not at work because they were on layoff or between casual jobs, and those who did not then have a job (even if they had a job to start at a future date).

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[125] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households.

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 30 and 31

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The reference period is from Sunday May 1 to Saturday May 7, 2016.

Employment rate

Definition

Refers to the number of persons employed in the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016, expressed as a percentage of the total population aged 15 years and over.

The employment rate for a particular group (age, sex, marital status, geographic area, etc.) is the number of employed persons in that group, expressed as a percentage of the total population in that group.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[126] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Statistic derived from the Labour force status variable

---

[125] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[126] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, see the definition for Employed person variable.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

Experienced labour force person

Definition

'Experienced labour force person' refers to persons 15 years and over currently in the labour force who are employed or who were employed at some point during a long reference period such as a year or more.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[127] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households.

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 30 to 35

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For the 2016 Census, the long reference period referred to in the current definition is from January 1, 2015 to May 7, 2016.

See Figure 6.1 for the components of population and labour force status variable.

---

[127] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Full-time or part-time weeks worked during the reference year

Definition

Refers to whether the weeks worked during the reference year were full-time weeks (30 hours or more per week) or not, on the basis of all jobs held. Persons with a part-time job for part of the year and a full-time job for another part of the year were to report the information for the job at which they worked the most weeks.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[128] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households, who worked for pay or in self-employment during the reference year.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 47

Responses

Full time (30 hours or more per week); Part time (less than 30 hours per week)

Remarks

The reference year is 2015.

Hours worked for pay or in self-employment

Definition

Refers to the actual number of hours that persons worked for pay or in self-employment at all jobs held in the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. This includes hours worked for wages, salaries, tips, commissions, piece-rate payments or payments 'in kind' (payments in goods or services rather than money). Hours worked in one's own business, farm or professional practice or hours worked without pay in a family business, farm or professional practice, owned or operated by a relative living in the same household are also included.

Excluded are hours during which the respondent was absent, with or without pay, for part of the week because of illness, vacation or other reasons.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

---

[128] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[129] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 30

Responses

Number of hours (to the nearest hour); None

Remarks

'Worked for pay or in self-employment' includes work without pay in a family farm, business or professional practice. For a more detailed description of 'Worked for pay or in self-employment,' refer to the definition for Employed person variable.

Data on actual and usual number of hours worked are available from the Labour Force Survey.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

Incorporation status

Definition

Refers to the legal status of a business, farm or professional practice. An incorporated business is a business, farm or professional practice that has been formed into a legal corporation, thus constituting a legal entity under either federal or provincial laws. An unincorporated business, farm or professional practice is not a separate legal entity, but may be a partnership, family business or owner-operated business.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Labour force
Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[130] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

---

[129] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[130] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported for

Self-employed persons aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked at some point in time since January 1, 2015. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held the longest during that period.

Question number(s)

Question 41, variable is part of the derivation of COWD

Responses

No; Yes

Remarks

Not applicable

Industry (based on the North American Industry Classification System [NAICS] 2012)

Definition

'Industry' refers to a generally homogeneous group of economic producing units, primarily engaged in a specific set of activities. An activity is a particular method of combining goods and services inputs, labour and capital to produce one or more goods and/or services (products). In most cases, the activities that define an industry are homogeneous with respect to the production processes used.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Labour force
Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

North American Industry Classification System (NAICS) Canada 2012 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=118464)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked since January 1, 2015. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held the longest during that period.

Question number(s)

Coded variable: Questions 36 and 37

Responses

See the North American Industry Classification System [NAICS] 2012 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=118464).

Remarks

Data are available for:

(a) the employed person;

(b) the labour force - persons who were either employed or unemployed in the reference week. Unemployed persons who worked prior to January 1, 2015, or who never worked, are shown in the data under the category 'Class of worker - Not applicable';

(c) persons with recent work experience; they are those who have worked at some point in time between January 2015 and May 2016, regardless of whether or not they were in the labour force in the reference week.

Inexperienced labour force

Definition

Refers to unemployed persons who, during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016, had never worked for pay or in self-employment, or who had last worked for pay or in self-employment prior to January 1, 2015 only.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[131] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 30 to 35

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Occupation, Industry, and Class of worker data are not collected for the inexperienced labour force. This segment of the population is therefore included in the 'Not applicable' category.

See Figure 6.1 for the components of population and Labour force status variable.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

---

[131] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Labour force

Definition

Refers to persons who, during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016, were either employed or unemployed.

Labour force = Employed + Unemployed

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[132] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 30 to 34

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, see the definitions for Labour force status, Experienced labour force person, Inexperienced labour force, Employed person and Unemployed variables.

See Figure 6.1 for the components of population and Labour force status variable.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

---

[132] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Labour force status

Definition

'Labour force status' refers to whether a person was employed, unemployed or not in the labour force during the reference period. The labour force consists of persons who contribute or are available to contribute to the production of goods and services falling within the System of National Accounts production boundary.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Labour Force Status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=114258)
Collapsed – Labour Force Status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=114324)
Employed Status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=114333)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[133] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 30 to 35

Responses

For the values for the Labour force status variable, see:

Table 6.2 Values for the Labour force status variable

Remarks

For more information, see the definitions for Employed person, Unemployed and Not in the labour force variables.

The Labour force status categories were derived from the responses to the following questions on the census questionnaire:

- Hours worked for pay or in self-employment (Question 30)
- On temporary lay-off or absent from job or business (Question 31)
- New job to start in four weeks or less (Question 32)
- Looked for full-time or part-time paid work in the past four weeks (Question 33)
- Reasons unable to start a job (Question 34)
- When last worked for pay or in self-employment (Question 35).

See Figure 6.1 for the components of population and labour force activity.

For information on the comparability of 2016 Census labour force activity data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

---

[133] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Labour force status (based on 1971 concepts)

Definition

'Labour force status' refers to whether a person was employed, unemployed or not in the labour force during the week of Sunday May 1 to Saturday May 7, 2016, according to 1971 labour force status concepts.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[134] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 30 to 35

Responses

The categories for the historical labour force status variable are:

Employed - Absent in reference week - Armed Forces
Employed - Absent in reference week - Civilian
Employed - Unpaid family worker
Employed - Paid - Armed Forces
Employed - Paid - Civilian
Not in labour force
Unemployed - Looked for work - Experienced
Unemployed - Looked for work - Inexperienced
Unemployed - On temporary layoff

Remarks

The population aged 15 years and over are classified according to 1971 labour force status concepts as follows:

Employed

- persons who worked in the reference week for pay or in self-employment
- persons with a job but who were not at work during the reference week[135]
- persons who worked in the reference week without pay in a family farm, business or professional practice.

---

[134] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[135] Exception: persons who indicated that they were both 'absent from a job' and 'looking for work' were considered 'Unemployed.'

Unemployed

- persons who looked for work in the reference week
- persons who were on temporary lay-off during the reference week

Not in the labour force

Persons aged 15 years and over who are not employed or unemployed are considered 'Not in the Labour Force.' According to 1971 labour force status concepts this category also includes:

- female farm labourers who did less than 20 hours of unpaid work in a family farm, business or professionnal practice;
- Institutional residents.[136]

Looked for paid work in past four weeks (full- or part-time work)

Definition

Refers to whether or not a person actively looked for paid work in the four weeks from April 10 to May 7, 2016. The work sought could be either full time (30 hours or more per week) or part time (less than 30 hours per week). 'Actively looked' means using such job search methods as contacting a Canada Employment Centre, checking with employers, or placing or answering newspaper ads.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[137] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who did not work for pay or in self-employment in the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 33

Responses

No; Yes, looked for full-time work; Yes, looked for part-time work (less than 30 hours per week)

---

[136] Institutional residents are not included in the National Household Survey nor in the 2016 Census. Data users should use caution when comparing 2011 NHS and 2016 Census labour force status data (based on 1971 concepts) with data from other sources.

[137] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Remarks

For more information, see the definitions for Unemployed and Not in the labour force variables.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

New job to start in four weeks or less from reference week

Definition

Refers to whether or not a person, in the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016, had definite plans to start a new job within the next four weeks.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[138] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households, who did not work for pay or in self-employment during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 32

Responses

No (did not have definite arrangements to start a new job within the next four weeks); Yes (had definite arrangements to start a new job within the next four weeks)

Remarks

For more information, see the definitions for Unemployed and Not in the labour force variables.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

Not in the labour force

Definition

Refers to persons who, during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016, were neither employed nor unemployed.

---

[138] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[139] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 30 to 34

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

See Figure 6.1 for the components of the population and the Labour force status variable.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

Occupation (based on the National Occupational Classification [NOC] 2016)

Definition

'Occupation' refers to the kind of work performed in a job, a job being all the tasks carried out by a particular worker to complete his or her duties. An occupation is a set of jobs that are sufficiently similar in work performed.

Kind of work is described in terms of tasks, duties and responsibilities, often including factors such as materials processed or used, the industrial processes used, the equipment used, and the products or services provided. Occupations are generally homogeneous with respect to skill type and skill level.

Occupation applies to the contribution of labour to that part of economic activity that is within the production boundary defined for the System of National Accounts.

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Labour force
Person 15 years or over

---

[139] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Classification(s)

National Occupational Classification (NOC) 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314243)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample)

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked since January 1, 2015. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held the longest during that period.

Question number(s)

Coded variable: Questions 38 and 39

Responses

See the National Occupational Classification (NOC) 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314243).

Remarks

Data are available for:

(a) the employed person;

(b) the labour force - persons who were either employed or unemployed in the reference week. Unemployed persons who worked prior to January 1, 2015, or who never worked, are shown in the data under the category 'Occupation - Not applicable';

(c) Persons with recent work experience; they are those who have worked since January 1, 2015, regardless of whether or not they were in the labour force in the reference week.

On temporary lay-off or absent from job or business

Definition

Refers to whether persons were, during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016:

(a) on temporary lay-off from a job to which they expected to return;

(b) absent from their job or business for the entire week.

Reasons for absence included vacations, an illness, a strike or lock-out at the respondent's place of employment, or other reasons.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[140] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households, who did not work for pay or in self-employment in the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 31

Responses

No; Yes, on temporary lay-off from a job to which this person expects to return; Yes, on vacation, ill, on strike or locked out, or absent for other reasons

Remarks

Data were collected for persons who did not work for pay or in self-employment in the week prior to enumeration.

This variable is used to derive the respondent's labour force status.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

For more information, see the definitions for Employed person, Unemployed and Not in the labour force variables.

Participation rate

Definition

Refers to the labour force in the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016, expressed as a percentage of the population aged 15 years and over.

The participation rate for a particular group (age, sex, marital status, geographic area, etc.) is the total labour force in that group, expressed as a percentage of the total population in that group.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[141] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

---

[140] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

[141] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Statistic derived from the Labour force status variable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, see the definition for Labour force variable.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

Person with recent work experience

Definition

'Person with recent work experience' refers to persons 15 years and over who were employed at some point during a reference period such as a year or more, regardless of labour force status during the survey's reference week or reference day.

For the census, 'Person with recent work experience' refers to persons aged 15 years and over in private households who were employed at some point between January 1st of the year before census and the reference week of the census year regardless of labour force status during the survey's reference week.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[142] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households.

Question number(s)

Question 35

Responses

In 2016;
In 2015

---

[142] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Remarks

For the 2016 Census, the long reference period referred to in the current definition is from January 1, 2015 to May 7, 2016.

Place of work status

Definition

'Place of work status' refers to whether a person worked at home, worked outside Canada, had no fixed workplace address, or worked at a specific address (usual place of work).

Statistical unit(s)

Employed person
Experienced labour force person
Person with recent work experience

Classification(s)

Place of work status (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=244087)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[143] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households, who worked at some time since January 1, 2015. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2015, the information relates to the job held longest during that period.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 42

Responses

Worked at home (including farms); Worked outside Canada; No fixed workplace address; Usual workplace address

Remarks

Respondent-completed responses

Worked at home – Persons whose job is located in the same building as their place of residence, persons who live and work on the same farm, building superintendents and teleworkers who spend most of their work week working at home.

---

[143] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Worked outside Canada – Persons who work at a location outside Canada. This can include diplomats, Armed Forces personnel and other persons enumerated abroad. This category also includes recent immigrants who may not currently be employed, but whose job of longest duration since January 1, 2015 was held outside Canada.

No fixed workplace address – Persons who do not go from home to the same workplace location at the beginning of each shift. Such persons include building and landscape contractors, travelling salespersons, independent truck drivers, etc.

Usual workplace address – Persons who are not included in the categories described above and who report to the same (usual) workplace location at the beginning of each shift are included here. Respondents are asked to provide the street address, city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve, province/territory and postal code of their workplace. If the full street address was not known, the name of the building or nearest street intersection could be substituted.

Teleworkers who spend less than one-half of their workweek working at their home office are asked to report the full address of their employer. Persons whose workplace location varied, but who reported regularly to an employer's address at the beginning of each shift, are asked to report the full address of the employer.

The table below indicates which 'journey to work' data are available for each place of work status.

Table 6.1 'Journey to work' data available for each place of work status

Reasons unable to start a job

Definition

Refers to the reasons why persons could not have started a job in the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[144] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households who did not work for pay or in self-employment during the reference week and who actively looked for paid work in the four weeks prior to enumeration

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 34

---

[144] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

Yes, could have started a job; No, already had a job; No, because of temporary illness or disability; No, because of personal or family responsibilities; No, going to school; No, other reasons

Remarks

This variable is used to derive the respondent's labour force status.

'Availability for work,' in the reference week, is based on the individual's responses to Question 33 (Did this person look for paid work during the four weeks from April 10 to May 7, 2016?) and Question 34 (Could this person have started a job during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016 had one been available?), as well as Question 29 (School attendance).

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

For more information, see the definitions for Unemployed, Employed person and Not in the labour force variables.

Unemployed

Definition

Refers to persons who, during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016, were without paid work or without self-employment work and were available for work and either:

(a) had actively looked for paid work in the past four weeks; or

(b) were on temporary lay-off and expected to return to their job; or

(c) had definite arrangements to start a new job in four weeks or less.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[145] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 30 to 34

---

145. In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The 'Unemployed' category consists of persons who, during the week of May 1 to May 7, 2016, were without paid work, were available for work and had actively looked for paid work in the past four weeks.

There are two components of the 'Unemployed': those persons who did not work during the reference week because they had been laid off from a job to which they expected to return; and persons who did not work during the reference week, but had definite arrangements to start a new job in four weeks or less.

In both cases, the persons had to be available for work in the reference week. 'Availability for work', is based on the individual's responses to Question 33 (Did this person look for paid work during the four weeks from April 10 to May 7, 2016?) and Question 34 (Could this person have started a job during the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016 had one been available?), as well as Question 29 (School attendance).

For more information, see the definitions for Labour force status and Employed person variables.

See Figure 6.1 for the components of population and Labour force status variable.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

Unemployment rate

Definition

Refers to the unemployed expressed as a percentage of the labour force in the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016.

The unemployment rate for a particular group (age, sex, marital status, geographic area, etc.) is the unemployed in that group, expressed as a percentage of the labour force in that group.

Early enumeration was conducted in remote, isolated parts of the provinces and territories in February, March and April 2016. When enumeration has taken place before May 2016, the reference date used is the date on which the household was enumerated.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[146] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

---

[146] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Question number(s)

Statistic derived from the Labour force status variable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, see the definitions for Unemployed and Labour force variables.

For information on the comparability of the 2016 Census labour force status data with those of the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix 6.1.

Weeks worked during the reference year

Definition

Refers to the number of weeks worked during the reference year during which persons worked for pay or in self-employment at all jobs held, even if only for a few hours.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[147] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 46

Responses

None; Number of weeks (write-in entry)

Remarks

For the 2016 Census, the reference year is 2015 for this variable.

It includes weeks of paid vacation, weeks on sick leave with pay and weeks in which training was paid for by the employer.

'Worked for pay or in self-employment' includes work without pay in a family farm, business or professional practice.

Respondents were instructed to enter 52 weeks if they were paid for a full year even though they worked less than a year (for example, a school teacher paid on a 12 month basis).

---

[147] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

When last worked for pay or in self-employment

Definition

Refers to the year in which the person last worked for pay or in self-employment, even if only for a few days.

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[148] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 35

Responses

In 2016; In 2015; Before 2015; Never

Remarks

See Figure 6.1.

Work activity during the reference year

Definition

'Work activity during the reference year' refers to whether or not a person 15 years or over worked during the reference year. For those who did work, this refers to the number of weeks in which the person worked for pay or in self-employment during the reference year at all jobs held, even if only for a few hours, and whether these weeks were mostly full time (30 hours or more per week) or mostly part time (less than 30 hours per week).

Statistical unit(s)

Person 15 years or over

Classification(s)

Weeks worked during the reference year (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=141132)
Work activity during the reference year (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=244104)
Full-time or part-time weeks worked during the reference year (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=141129)

---

[148] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[149] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over in private households

Question number(s)

Derivated variable: Questions 35, 46 and 47

Responses

Did not work for pay or in self-employment in 2015 (worked before 2015; or never worked)

Did not work for pay or in self-employment in 2015 (worked in 2016)

Worked for pay or in self-employment in 2015:

- 1 to 13 weeks mostly full-time paid work
- 1 to 13 weeks mostly part-time paid work
- 14 to 26 weeks mostly full-time paid work
- 14 to 26 weeks mostly part-time paid work
- 27 to 39 weeks mostly full-time paid work
- 27 to 39 weeks mostly part-time paid work
- 40 to 48 weeks mostly full-time paid work
- 40 to 48 weeks mostly part-time paid work
- 49 to 52 weeks mostly full-time paid work
- 49 to 52 weeks mostly part-time paid work

Remarks

The term 'full-year full-time workers' refers to persons aged 15 years and over who worked 49 to 52 weeks mostly full time in 2015 for pay or in self-employment.

For more information, see the definitions for Weeks worked during the reference year and Full-time or part-time weeks during the reference year variables.

---

[149] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Language

First official language spoken

Definition

'First official language spoken' is specified within the framework of the *Official Languages Act*. It refers to the first official language (i.e., English or French) spoken by the person.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

First Official Language Spoken (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=285153)

Reported in

2016 and 2011 (100% data); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991 and 1986 (20% sample).

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Questions 7, 8 a) and 9

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The derivation method for this variable is specified within the *Official Languages (Communications with and Services to the Public) Regulations*, registered on December 16, 1991, in accordance with section 85 of the *Official Languages Act*, R.S.C., c. 32 (4th Suppl.).

The method used to derive the first official language spoken variable takes into account, first, the knowledge of official languages, second, the mother tongue, and third, the home language. A complete description of this method is available on the Definitions, data sources and methods page for the language variables on Statistics Canada's website.

For more information on language variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Languages Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/003/98-500-x2016003-eng.cfm).

Home language

Refer to the definition of language spoken most often at home and the definition of other language(s) spoken regularly at home.

Home language – Part A

Refer to the definition of language spoken most often at home.

Home language – Part B

Refer to the definition of other language(s) spoken regularly at home.

Knowledge of official languages

Definition

'Knowledge of official languages' refers to whether the person can conduct a conversation in English only, French only, in both or in neither language. For a child who has not yet learned to speak, this includes languages that the child is learning to speak at home.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Knowledge of Official Languages (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=281265)

Reported in

2016 and 2011 (100% data); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample).

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 7

Responses

English only; French only; Both English and French; Neither English nor French

Remarks

For more information on language variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Languages Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/003/98-500-x2016003-eng.cfm).

Language of work

Refer to the definition of language used most often at work and the definition of other language(s) used regularly at work.

Language spoken most often at home

Definition

'Language spoken most often at home' refers to the language the person speaks most often at home at the time of data collection. A person can report more than one language as "spoken most often at home" if the languages are spoken equally often.

For a person who lives alone, the language spoken most often at home is the language in which he or she feels most comfortable. For a child who has not yet learned to speak, this is the language spoken most often to the child at home. Where two languages are spoken to the child, the language spoken most often at home is the language spoken most often. If both languages are used equally often, then both languages are included here.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Language(s) of Person 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381035)
Collapsed - Language(s) of Person 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381031)
Language(s) of Person 2016 – Aboriginal Languages Variant (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381100)
Language(s) of Person 2016 – Inuit Languages Variant (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381095)
Language(s) of Person 2016, Total responses (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381067)

Reported in

2016, 2011 (100% data); 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (20% sample). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 8 a)

Responses

See Figures 3.3, 3.3A, 3.3B, 3.3C and 3.3D.

Remarks

Until the 2001 Census, the question asked individuals for the language spoken most often at home, which now represents part a) of the question that has been asked since 2001. Part b) on other languages spoken on a regular basis at home has been added since the 2001 Census. This was done in order to reflect a more complete picture of the linguistic situation of Canadian households.

When comparing 2016 Census data on home language with data from 1996 or before, only the language spoken most often at home is to be used since, before the 2001 Census, there was no question asked regarding other languages spoken on a regular basis.

For more information on language variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Languages Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/003/98-500-x2016003-eng.cfm).

Language used most often at work

Definition

'Language used most often at work' refers to the language the person uses most often at work. A person can report more than one language as "used most often at work" if the languages are used equally often.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Language(s) of Person 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381035)
Collapsed - Language(s) of Person 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381031)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[150] (30% sample); 2006 and 2001 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked since January 1, 2015.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 45 a)

Responses

See Figures 3.3, 3.3A, 3.3B, 3.3C and 3.3D.

Remarks

For more information on language variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Languages Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/003/98-500-x2016003-eng.cfm).

Mother tongue

Definition

'Mother tongue' refers to the first language learned at home in childhood and still understood by the person at the time the data was collected. If the person no longer understands the first language learned, the mother tongue is the second language learned. For a person who learned two languages at the same time in early childhood, the mother tongue is the language this person spoke most often at home before starting school. The person has two mother tongues only if the two languages were used equally often and are still understood by the person. For a child who has not yet learned to speak, the mother tongue is the language spoken most often to this child at home. The child has two mother tongues only if both languages are spoken equally often so that the child learns both languages at the same time.

---

[150] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Language(s) of Person 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381035)
Collapsed - Language(s) of Person 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381031)
Language(s) of Person 2016 – Aboriginal Languages Variant (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381100)
Language(s) of Person 2016 – Inuit Languages Variant (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381095)
Language(s) of Person 2016, Total responses (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381067)

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 (100% data). For availability prior to 1981, please refer to Appendix 2.0.

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 9

Responses

See Figures 3.3, 3.3A, 3.3B, 3.3C and 3.3D.

Remarks

For more information on language variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Languages Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/003/98-500-x2016003-eng.cfm).

Other language(s) spoken regularly at home

Definition

'Other language(s) spoken regularly at home' refers to the languages, if any, that the person speaks at home on a regular basis at the time of data collection, other than the language or languages he or she speaks most often at home.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Language(s) of Person 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381035)
Collapsed - Language(s) of Person 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381031)

Reported in

2016 and 2011 (100% data); 2006 and 2001 (20% sample).

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 8 b)

Responses

See Figures 3.3, 3.3A, 3.3B, 3.3C and 3.3D.

Remarks

Until the 2001 Census, the question asked individuals for the language spoken most often at home, which now represents part a) of the question that has been asked since 2001. Part b) on other languages spoken on a regular basis at home has been added since the 2001 Census. This was done in order to reflect a more complete picture of the linguistic situation of Canadian households.

When comparing 2016 Census data on home language with data from 1996 or before, only the language spoken most often at home is to be used since, before the 2001 Census, there was no question asked regarding other languages spoken on a regular basis.

For more information on language variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Languages Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/003/98-500-x2016003-eng.cfm).

Other language(s) used regularly at work

Definition

'Other language(s) used regularly at work' refers to the languages, if any, that the person uses in their job on a regular basis, other than the language or languages he or she uses most often at work.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Language(s) of Person 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381035)
Collapsed - Language(s) of Person 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=381031)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[151] (30% sample); 2006 and 2001 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 15 years and over, in private households, who worked since January 1, 2015.

---

[151] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Question number(s)

Direct variable: Question 45 b)

Responses

See Figures 3.3, 3.3A, 3.3B, 3.3C and 3.3D.

Remarks

For more information on language variables, including information on their classifications, the questions from which they are derived, data quality and their comparability with other sources of data, please refer to the *Languages Reference Guide, Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/guides/003/98-500-x2016003-eng.cfm).

Mobility and migration

Census division of current residence

The term 'Census division of current residence' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the standards for geography in the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/eng/subjects/standard/sgc/2016/index).

Census subdivision of current residence

The term 'Census subdivision of current residence' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the standards for geography in the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/eng/subjects/standard/sgc/2016/index).

Components of migration (in and out), five years, of geographic area

Definition

'Components of migration (in and out), five years' refers to the in-migrants and out-migrants for a specific level of geography considering a period of five years.

For components of migration (in and out), five years, in-migrants include persons who did not live in the specified geographic area five years before the reference date, but did live there on the reference date.

For components of migration (in and out), five years, out-migrants include persons who lived in the specified geographic area five years before the reference date, but did not live there on the reference date.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

In-Migration, Five years (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=243809)
Out-Migration, Five years (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=243814)
Statistical Area Classification - Variant of SGC 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314312)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[152] (30% sample); 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 5 years and over residing in Canada, in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question 23

---

[152] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Components of migration (in and out), one year, of geographic area

Definition

'Components of migration (in and out), one year' refers to the in-migrants and out-migrants for a specific level of geography considering a period of one year.

For components of migration (in and out), one year, in-migrants include persons who did not live in the specified geographic area one year before the reference date, but did live there on the reference date.

For components of migration (in and out), one year, out-migrants include persons who lived in the specified geographic area one year before the reference date, but did not live there on the reference date.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

In-Migration, One year (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=243799)
Out-Migration, One year (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=243802)
Statistical Area Classification - Variant of SGC 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314312)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[153] (30% sample); 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 1 year and over residing in Canada, in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question 22

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

---

[153] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Location of residence five years ago

Definition

'Location of residence five years ago of person' refers to the person's usual place of residence five years prior to the reference day.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314300)
Statistical Area Classification - Variant of SGC 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314312)
Countries and Areas of Interest for Social Statistics - SCCAI 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=367512)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[154] (30% sample); 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 5 years and over residing in Canada, in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question 23

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Location of residence one year ago

Definition

'Location of residence one year ago' refers to the person's usual place of residence one year prior to the reference day.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

---

[154] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Classification(s)

Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314300)
Statistical Area Classification - Variant of SGC 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=314312)
Countries and Areas of Interest for Social Statistics - SCCAI 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=367512)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[155] (30% sample); 2006, 2001 and 1996 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 1 year and over residing in Canada, in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question 22

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Mobility 1 – Census division of residence 1 year ago

The term 'mobility 1 – census division of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence one year ago.'

Mobility 1 – Census metropolitan area or census agglomeration of residence 1 year ago

The term 'mobility 1 – census metropolitan area or census agglomeration of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence one year ago.'

Mobility 1 – Census subdivision of residence 1 year ago

The term 'mobility 1 – census subdivision of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence one year ago.'

Mobility 1 – Census subdivision type of residence 1 year ago

The term 'mobility 1 – census subdivision type of residence 1 year ago is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence one year ago.'

---

[155] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Mobility 1 – Country of residence 1 year ago

The term 'mobility 1 – country of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence one year ago.'

Mobility 1 – Province or territory of residence 1 year ago

The term 'mobility 1 – province or territory of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence one year ago.'

Mobility 1 – Statistical Area Classification of residence 1 year ago

The term 'mobility 1 – Statistical Area Classification of residence 1 year ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence one year ago.'

Mobility 5 – Census division of residence 5 years ago

The term 'mobility 5 – census division of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence five years ago.'

Mobility 5 – Census metropolitan area or census agglomeration of residence 5 years ago

The term 'mobility 5 – census metropolitan area or census agglomeration of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence five years ago.'

Mobility 5 – Census subdivision of residence 5 years ago

The term 'mobility 5 – census subdivision of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence five years ago.'

Mobility 5 – Census subdivision type of residence 5 years ago

The term 'Mobility 5 – Census subdivision type of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence five years ago.'

Mobility 5 – Country of residence 5 years ago

The term 'mobility 5 – country of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence five years ago.'

Mobility 5 – Province or territory of residence 5 years ago

The term 'mobility 5 – province or territory of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence five years ago.'

Mobility 5 – Statistical Area Classification of residence 5 years ago

The term 'mobility 5 – Statistical Area Classification of residence 5 years ago' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the definition of 'location of residence five years ago.'

Mobility status, five years

Definition

'Mobility status, five years' refers to the status of a person with regard to the place of residence on the reference day in relation to the place of residence on the same date five years earlier.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Mobility status, five years (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=243793)

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[156] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 5 years and over residing in Canada, in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question 23

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Mobility status, one year

Definition

'Mobility status, one year' refers to the status of a person with regard to the place of residence on the reference day in relation to the place of residence on the same date one year earlier.

Statistical unit(s)

Person

Classification(s)

Mobility status, one year (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=243750)

---

[156] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Reported in

2016 (25% sample); 2011[157] (30% sample); 2006, 2001, 1996 and 1991 (20% sample).

Reported for

Population aged 1 year and over residing in Canada, in private households

Question number(s)

Derived variable: Question 22

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Province or territory of current residence

The term 'Province or territory of current residence' is not used for the 2016 Census. Refer to the standards for geography in the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) 2016 (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/eng/subjects/standard/sgc/2016/index).

---

[157] In 2011, the voluntary National Household Survey was used to collect information related to this variable.

Type of dwelling

Collective dwelling

Definition

Refers to a dwelling of a commercial, institutional or communal nature. It may be identified by a sign on the premises or by an enumerator speaking with the person in charge, a resident, a neighbour, etc. Included are lodging or rooming houses, hotels, motels, tourist establishments, nursing homes, hospitals, staff residences, military bases, work camps, jails, group homes, and so on.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016,[158] 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966 and 1961.

Reported for

For more information on the dwelling universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Information on the type of collective dwelling is collected by the enumerator by speaking with a person in charge, a resident, a neighbour, etc. Enumerators first classify collective dwellings into 10 categories. Based on the category selected, additional information about the services offered is obtained to more precisely classify the type of collective dwelling.

The 10 categories and their definitions are:

Hospital

Institution, licensed to be a hospital, providing medical or surgical diagnosis and treatment to the ill or injured.

Also included in this category are institutions that are not licensed as hospitals but provide continuous medical, nursing and professional health care supervision for persons who are not independent in all activities of daily living, such as chronically ill persons. Facilities, not licensed as hospitals, which are specifically for elderly persons are excluded from this category.

Included are general hospitals, specialty hospitals, chronic care or long-term care hospitals, rehabilitation hospitals, and other types of licensed hospitals.

---

[158] Prior to the 2016 Census, bed and breakfast establishments were considered commercial collective dwellings that offered temporary accommodations. In the 2016 Census, these establishments are enumerated as private dwellings.

Excluded are hospitals located within another collective dwelling, such as a hospital in a correctional facility or a hospital on a military base. The residents of these hospitals are counted as residents of the larger collective dwelling.

Nursing home and/or residence for senior citizens

Facilities for elderly residents that provide accommodations with health care services or personal support or assisted living care.

Health care services include professional health monitoring and skilled nursing care and supervision 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, for people who are not independent in most activities of daily living.

Support or assisted living care services include meals, housekeeping, laundry, medication supervision, assistance in bathing or dressing, etc., for people who are independent in most activities of daily living.

Included are nursing homes, residences for senior citizens, and facilities that are a mix of both a nursing home and a residence for senior citizens.

Excluded are facilities licensed as hospitals, and facilities that do not provide any services (which are considered private dwellings).

Residential care facility such as a group home for persons with disabilities or addictions

Residential facilities that provide accommodations with health care and/or social assistance services, such as counselling, supervision or custody, personal support or assisted living care, diagnosis or treatment.

Generally, residential care facilities provide a level of care that is below that found in hospitals.

Included are group homes or institutions for the physically disabled, treatment centres, group homes for children and youth, and group homes or institutions for people with psychiatric disorders or developmental disabilities.

Excluded are facilities that accommodate elderly residents who require services, and facilities for persons who need shelter or assistance. These facilities have a separate collective type category. Private dwellings with foster children are also excluded and are still considered private dwellings.

Shelter

Establishments for persons lacking a fixed address or for persons needing transitional shelter or assistance.

Included are shelters for persons lacking a fixed address (such as homeless shelters or shelters for street youth), shelters for abused women and children, and transition homes or halfway houses for ex-inmates or persons on conditional release.

Correctional or custodial facility

Facilities where persons (inmates, young offenders, or other persons) serve a sentence to custody or where they are detained to await court proceedings, judgement, sentence, or release.

Included are federal correctional institutions, provincial and territorial custodial facilities, young offenders' facilities, jails/police lock-ups.

Excluded are transition homes.

Lodging or rooming house

Commercial establishments (which may originally have been a private dwelling) that have furnished rooms for rent. Residents receive no type of care. They generally have access to common facilities such as the kitchen and/or bathroom. Generally, the clientele are transitioning between housing tenures or locations, and have no other place of residence.

Some types of non-institutional collective dwellings provide furnished accommodations without any type of care, but they are not 'lodging or rooming houses.' Usually, they serve a specific clientele. To illustrate, religious establishments are for members of a religious group; hotels or motels are for business travellers or persons on pleasure trips; school residences are for students; or, work camps are for employees of an industry. Such collective dwellings are excluded from this category.

Religious establishment such as a convent, monastery or seminary

Establishments such as a convent, seminary, monastery or religious commune which provide accommodations to members of a religious group.

Hutterite colony

A group of people of the Hutterite religion who live in dwellings that belong to the community and use their land for agricultural purposes.

Establishment with temporary accommodation services such as a hotel, campground, YMCA, Ronald McDonald House or hostel

Establishments (mostly commercial and may charge for accommodations) that serve as temporary accommodations for business travellers, persons on pleasure trips, or persons travelling for other purposes (such as medical treatment).

Included are hotels, motels, campgrounds, parks, and other establishments with temporary accommodation services. Generally, the clientele stay at the collective dwelling for a short period of time; however, there may be some people who reside there long term or use the collective dwelling as their usual place of residence.

Other establishment such as a school residence, military base, work camp or vessel[159]

Establishment that meets the criteria of the collective dwelling definition, but does not fall into any other specified type.

Included are school residences, training centre residences, work camps, military bases (including other buildings on the base), vessels (government or commercial), and other types of collective dwellings.

Generally, the clientele of these collectives are less transient than the clientele of hotels, motels and campgrounds.

Remarks

Only data for collective dwellings occupied by usual residents are published and limited information is available. The categories published for collective dwelling depend on the data quality. The categories published are derived using both the 10 collective dwelling type categories used for classification by the enumerator as well as the additional information collected that more precisely identifies the types of services offered.

Prior to 2016, census enumerators classified the type of collective dwellings using up to 27 categories. Generally, and depending on data quality, similar categories can be derived from the 2016 classification using the 10 collective dwelling types and the additional information that was collected on the types of services offered by the collective dwelling.

---

[159] The population of Canadian commercial and government vessels is assigned to special collective enumeration areas in port areas. The overall number of such enumeration areas is one per port.

Dwelling

Definition

A dwelling is defined as a set of living quarters. Two types of dwellings are identified in the census, collective dwellings and private dwellings. The former pertains to dwellings which are institutional, communal or commercial in nature. The latter, private dwellings, refers to a separate set of living quarters with a private entrance either from outside the building or from a common hall, lobby, vestibule or stairway inside the building. The entrance to the dwelling must be one that can be used without passing through the living quarters of some other person or group of persons.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for

For more information on the dwelling universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Household size

Definition

'Household size' refers to the number of persons in a private household.

Statistical unit(s)

Private household

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for

Private households

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information on the household universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Institutional resident

Definition

Person who lives in an institutional collective dwelling, such as a hospital, a nursing home or a prison. This includes residents under care or custody (e.g., patients or inmates) or employee residents and family members living with them, if any.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016,[160] 2011,[160] 2006,[160] 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Reported for

Total population

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The population excluding institutional residents may also be referred to as the non-institutional population. This was the applicable population for most topics based on sample data in the census from 1981 to 2006. Most sample data in the 1971 and 1976 censuses were based on the total population, that is, including institutional residents.

---

[160] Starting in 2006, residences for senior citizens are classified as non-institutional collective dwellings. Therefore, institutional residents exclude persons living in seniors' residences.

In 2011 and 2016, only short-form data were collected for the population living in collective dwellings. Therefore, any tabulations containing sample data will not include these persons. Population in private households is the applicable population for all topics based on sample data from the 2011 National Household Survey and the 2016 Census long-form questionnaire.

Institutional collective dwellings are hospitals, nursing homes and facilities that are a mix of both a nursing home and a residence for senior citizens, residential care facilities, such as group homes for persons with disabilities or addictions, shelters, correctional and custodial facilities.

Marginal dwelling occupied by usual residents

Definition

An occupied private dwelling which, because it was not built, maintained or converted for year-round use, does not meet the two conditions for year-round occupancy (a source of heat or power and shelter from the elements). To be included, the marginal dwelling must be occupied by a person or a group of persons who have no other usual place of residence. Examples of occupied marginal dwellings are non-winterized cottages or cabins and unconverted barns or garages.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016,[161] 2011,[161] 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981[162]

Reported for

For more information on the dwelling universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

For more information, refer to the Census Dictionary: Usual place of residence.

---

[161] In 2016 and 2011, whether a dwelling lacked heat and/or shelter was evaluated by the enumerator for only a portion of the dwellings. In areas where questionnaires were mailed to respondents and no enumerator visited the dwelling, the marginal dwelling status was not collected.

[162] The 2001 to 2016 occupied marginal dwellings and the 1986 to 1996 marginal dwellings and dwellings under construction correspond to the 1981 Census variable 'Dwelling, seasonal/marginal.'

Private dwelling

Definition

'Private dwelling' refers to a separate set of living quarters with a private entrance either from outside the building or from a common hall, lobby, vestibule or stairway inside the building. The entrance to the dwelling must be one that can be used without passing through the living quarters of some other person or group of persons.

The dwelling must meet the two conditions necessary for year-round occupancy:

1. a source of heat or power (as evidenced by chimneys, power lines, oil or gas pipes or meters, generators, woodpiles, electric lights, heating pumps or solar panels)
2. an enclosed space that provides shelter from the elements, as evidenced by complete and enclosed walls and roof, and by doors and windows that provide protection from wind, rain and snow.

Dwellings that do not meet the conditions necessary for year-round occupancy are marginal dwellings. Private dwellings are classified into regular private dwellings and occupied marginal dwellings. Regular private dwellings are further classified into three major groups: occupied dwellings (occupied by usual residents), dwellings occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons and unoccupied dwellings. Marginal dwellings are classified as occupied by usual residents or occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons. Marginal dwellings that were unoccupied on May 10, 2016, are not counted in the housing stock.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981,[163] 1976, 1971,[164] 1966,[164] 1961[164]

Reported for

For more information on the dwelling universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

---

[163] The classification of private dwellings into regular private dwellings and seasonal/marginal dwellings appears in the 1981 Census only. For more information on marginal dwellings, refer to the Census Dictionary: Marginal dwelling occupied by usual residents.

[164] The counts of dwellings occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons do not appear in the 1971, 1966 and 1961 censuses

Private dwelling occupied by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons

Definition

Refers to a private dwelling occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons on May 10, 2016. A temporarily present person of a dwelling is a person who resides there on May 10, 2016, but has a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada. A foreign resident is a person whose usual place of residence is outside Canada. These dwellings are classified into regular dwellings and occupied marginal dwellings.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976[165]

Reported for

For more information on the dwelling universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

Private dwelling occupied by usual residents

Definition

Refers to a private dwelling in which a person or a group of persons is permanently residing. Also included are private dwellings whose usual residents are temporarily absent on May 10, 2016. Unless otherwise specified, all data in housing products are for private dwellings occupied by usual residents, rather than for unoccupied private dwellings or dwellings occupied solely by foreign and/or by temporarily present persons.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

---

[165] In 1976, private dwellings occupied by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons were not classified into regular dwellings and seasonal/marginal dwellings.

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966 and 1961.

Reported for

For more information on the dwelling universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

The number of private dwellings occupied by usual residents is equal to the number of private households in the 2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981 and 1976 censuses (see the definition of 'private household' in the Census Dictionary). Prior to 2006, private dwellings occupied by usual residents were referred to as 'dwelling, occupied private' in the Census Dictionary.

Private dwelling, unoccupied

Definition

Refers to a private dwelling which meets the two conditions necessary for year-round occupancy (a source of heat or power and shelter from the elements), but in which no individual is residing on May 10, 2016.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971,[166] 1966, 1961

Reported for

For more information on the dwelling universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

---

166. In 1971, the term 'vacant dwelling' was used. This referred to a dwelling, not a seasonal or vacation home, which was suitable and available for immediate occupancy, but which was not inhabited on Census Day. Newly constructed dwellings, completed and ready for occupancy, but as yet unoccupied on Census Day, were counted as vacant. This did not refer, however, to dwellings whose occupants were temporarily away.

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Marginal dwellings that were unoccupied on May 10, 2016 are not included in the housing stock.

Regular dwelling

Definition

Regular dwelling refers to a private dwelling which meets the two conditions for year-round occupancy. It must have a source of heat or power (as evidenced by chimneys, power lines, oil or gas pipes or meters, generators, woodpiles, electric lights, heat pumps or solar panels). It must provide shelter from the elements, as evidenced by complete and enclosed walls and roof, and by doors and windows that provide protection from wind, rain and snow. These dwellings are classified into dwellings occupied by usual residents, dwellings occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons, and unoccupied dwellings.

Statistical unit(s)

Not applicable

Classification(s)

Not applicable

Reported in

2016,[167] 2011,[167] 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981

Reported for

For more information on the dwelling universe, refer to the *Guide to the Census of Population, 2016* (http://www12.statcan.gc.ca/census-recensement/2016/ref/98-304/index-eng.cfm).

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Not applicable

Remarks

Not applicable

---

[167] In 2016 and 2011, whether a dwelling lacked heat and/or shelter was evaluated by the enumerator for only a portion of the dwellings. In areas where questionnaires were mailed to respondents and no enumerator visited the dwelling, the marginal dwelling status was not collected.

Structural type of dwelling

Definition

'Structural type' refers to the structural characteristics and/or dwelling configuration, that is, whether the dwelling is a single-detached house, an apartment in a high-rise building, a row house, a mobile home, etc.

Statistical unit(s)

Private dwelling

Classification(s)

Residential structures (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=144257)

Reported in

2016, 2011, 2006, 2001, 1996 (20% sample), 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966 and 1961 (20% sample).

Reported for

Private dwellings

Question number(s)

Not applicable

Responses

Single-detached house

> A single dwelling not attached to any other dwelling or structure (except its own garage or shed). A single-detached house has open space on all sides, and has no dwellings either above it or below it. A mobile home fixed permanently to a foundation is also classified as a single-detached house.

Semi-detached house

> One of two dwellings attached side by side (or back to back) to each other, but not attached to any other dwelling or structure (except its own garage or shed). A semi-detached dwelling has no dwellings either above it or below it, and the two units together have open space on all sides.

Row house

> One of three or more dwellings joined side by side (or occasionally side to back), such as a townhouse or garden home, but not having any other dwellings either above or below. Townhouses attached to a high-rise building are also classified as row houses.

Apartment or flat in a duplex

> One of two dwellings, located one above the other, may or may not be attached to other dwellings or buildings.

Apartment in a building that has five or more storeys

> A dwelling unit in a high-rise apartment building which has five or more storeys.

Apartment in a building that has fewer than five storeys

> A dwelling unit attached to other dwelling units, commercial units, or other non-residential space in a building that has fewer than five storeys.

Other single-attached house

A single dwelling that is attached to another building and that does not fall into any of the other categories, such as a single dwelling attached to a non-residential structure (e.g., a store or a church) or occasionally to another residential structure (e.g., an apartment building).

Mobile home

A single dwelling, designed and constructed to be transported on its own chassis and capable of being moved to a new location on short notice. It may be placed temporarily on a foundation pad and may be covered by a skirt.

Other movable dwelling

A single dwelling, other than a mobile home, used as a place of residence, but capable of being moved on short notice, such as a tent, recreational vehicle, travel trailer, houseboat or floating home.

Remarks

A linked home (a single house which is not attached to any other dwelling above ground) is classified as a single-detached house.

Starting in 2006, 'apartment or flat in a duplex' replaces 'apartment or flat in a detached duplex' and includes duplexes attached to other dwellings or buildings. This is a change from the 2001 Census where duplexes attached to other dwellings or buildings were classified as an 'apartment in a building that has fewer than five storeys.'

In 2006, 2001, 1996, 1991 and 1986, the type of dwelling was coded by census representatives in the field. The coverage was: occupied private dwellings, unoccupied private dwellings, and dwellings occupied solely by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons. In 2016 and 2011, the type of dwelling was coded for only a portion of the dwellings. In areas where questionnaires were mailed to respondents and no enumerator or canvasser visited the dwelling, the structural type of dwelling reflects the classification from 2006.

In 1976 and 1971, the type of dwelling was reported for occupied private dwellings and vacant (unoccupied) dwellings.

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the term 'single-detached house' replaced 'single-detached' and 'single house,' as used in previous censuses.

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the term 'semi-detached house' replaced 'semi-detached or double house.'

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the category 'other single-attached house' was introduced to cover types similar to the previous category 'house attached to a non-residential building' and to account as well for single houses attached to multi-unit or multi-purpose buildings.

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the type earlier known as a 'duplex' was renamed 'apartment or flat in a detached duplex' in order to be consistent with the definition.

In 1981, the category 'apartment or multiple dwelling' was expanded to two categories, 'apartment in a building that has five or more storeys' and 'apartment in a building that has fewer than five storeys.' In 1971, 1966 and 1961, the term 'apartment and flats' was used with the subcategories 'duplex' and 'other.'

In 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981 and 1976, the term 'movable dwelling' referred to mobile homes and other movable dwellings.

Tables

Table 1.1
Geographic areas by province and territory, 2016 Census

Geographic area	Canada		N.L.	P.E.I.	N.S.	N.B.	Que.
	2011[1]	2016					
Federal electoral district (2003 & 2013 Representation Order)	308	338	7	4	11	10	78
Economic region	76	76	4	1	5	5	17
Census agricultural region	82	72	3	3	5	4	14
Census division	293	293	11	3	18	15	98
Census consolidated subdivision	2,338	1,768	20	45	39	87	688
Census subdivision	5,253	5,162	372	112	96	273	1,285
Dissolutions (January 2, 2011 to January 1, 2016)	158	...	5	2	4	4	2
Incorporations (January 2, 2011 to January 1, 2016)	...	67	1	1	1	4	2
Census metropolitan area	33	35	1	0	1	2	6
Census agglomeration	114	117	4	2	4	5	24
with census tracts	15	14	0	0	0	1	2
without census tracts	99	103	4	2	4	4	22
Census tract	5,452	5,721	47	0	98	111	1,402
Small population centre (1,000 to 29,999)	857	918	27	4	36	28	251
Medium population centre (30,000 to 99,999)	54	57	0	1	0	2	13
Large urban population centre (100,000 or more)	31	30	1	0	1	1	6
Designated place	1,507	1,629	199	0	68	157	117
Aggregate Dissemination Area	...	5,386	84	21	152	125	1,151
Dissemination area	56,204	56,590	1,073	295	1,658	1,454	13,658
Dissemination block	493,345	489,905	8,781	3,642	15,333	14,361	106,315
Block-face	3,947,786	4,326,050	87,520	31,930	157,440	135,406	901,024
Forward sortation area	1,638	1,646	35	7	77	111	419
Postal code$^{\text{OM}}$	834,056	855,842	11,345	4,017	28,541	59,457	216,753
Place name	35,033	51,072	2,376	1,066	4,103	3,967	11,937

Table 1.1
Geographic areas by province and territory, 2016 Census

Geographic area	Ont.	Man.	Sask.	Alta.	B.C.	Y.T.	N.W.T.	Nvt.
Federal electoral district (2003 & 2013 Representation Order)	121	14	14	34	42	1	1	1
Economic region	11	8	6	8	8	1	1	1
Census agricultural region	5	12	7	8	8	1	1	1
Census division	49	23	18	19	29	1	6	3
Census consolidated subdivision	273	105	297	72	132	1	6	3
Census subdivision	575	229	950	425	737	36	41	31
Dissolutions (January 2, 2011 to January 1, 2016)	0	107	12	11	9	2	0	0
Incorporations (January 2, 2011 to January 1, 2016)	1	49	3	1	3	1	0	0
Census metropolitan area	16	1	2	3	4	0	0	0
Census agglomeration	29	5	8	15	22	1	1	0
with census tracts	3	0	0	4	4	0	0	0
without census tracts	26	5	8	11	18	1	1	0
Census tract	2,376	174	113	634	766	0	0	0
Small population centre (1,000 to 29,999)	253	49	56	112	93	1	4	7
Medium population centre (30,000 to 99,999)	20	1	3	8	10	0	0	0
Large urban population centre (100,000 or more)	13	1	2	2	4	0	0	0
Designated place	129	135	193	304	326	1	0	0
Aggregate Dissemination Area	1,685	226	312	527	997	33	42	31
Dissemination area	20,160	2,183	2,474	5,803	7,617	67	98	50
Dissemination block	133,245	30,669	54,118	66,749	52,881	1,519	1,495	797
Block-face	1,112,718	210,191	369,386	738,613	553,370	10,810	11,566	6,076
Forward sortation area	528	66	49	154	191	3	3	3
Postal code$^{\text{OM}}$	283,982	25,204	22,667	85,295	117,029	996	528	28
Place name	11,212	2,331	4,077	4,281	5,083	267	226	146

... not applicable

1. 2003 representation Order

Note: Census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations crossing provincial boundaries are counted in both provinces, and, therefore, do not add up to the national total.

Table 1.2
Population distribution by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC), 2011 adjusted population by 2016 geography, 2011 Census

Statistical Area Classification	Total population	% of total population
Census metropolitan area	23,488,393	70.2
Census agglomeration	4,150,389	12.4
Strong metropolitan influenced zone	1,927,385	5.8
Moderate metropolitan influenced zone	2,305,590	6.9
Weak metropolitan influenced zone	1,316,099	3.9
No metropolitan influenced zone	226,829	0.7
Territories	62,003	0.2
Canada total	**33,476,688**	**100.0**

Source: Statistics Canada, 2011 and 2016 Censuses of Population.

Table 1.3
Number of census subdivisions by the Statistical Area Classification (SAC), 2016 Census

Province/territory	Total CSDs	CMAs	CAs	Strong MIZ	Moderate MIZ	Weak MIZ	No MIZ	Territories
		Number of census subdivisions						
Newfoundland and Labrador	372	13	22	37	124	45	131	...
Prince Edward Island	112	0	26	37	42	1	6	...
Nova Scotia	96	6	18	9	24	27	12	...
New Brunswick	273	33	52	46	83	44	15	...
Quebec	1,285	164	74	327	425	112	183	...
Ontario	575	99	57	109	120	70	120	...
Manitoba	229	12	11	19	56	70	61	...
Saskatchewan	950	43	27	88	244	168	380	...
Alberta	425	51	32	53	104	72	113	...
British Columbia	737	74	144	40	105	81	293	...
Yukon	36	0	7	...	...	...	...	29
Northwest Territories	41	0	1	...	...	...	...	40
Nunavut	31	0	0	...	...	...	...	31
Canada	**5,162**	**495**	**471**	**765**	**1,327**	**690**	**1,314**	**100**

... not applicable

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 1.4
Census division types by province and territory, 2016 Census

Census division type	Canada	Newfoundland and Labrador	Prince Edward Island	Nova Scotia	New Brunswick	Quebec	Ontario
CDR – Census division / Division de recensement	85	11	...	...	...	5	9
CT – County / Comté	15	...	...	...	15	...	...
CTY – County	41	...	3	18	...	...	20
DIS – District	10	...	...	...	...	...	10
DM – District municipality	1	...	...	...	...	...	1
MRC – Municipalité régionale de comté	81	...	...	...	...	81	...
RD – Regional district	28	...	...	...	...	...	...
REG – Region	10	...	...	...	...	...	...
RM – Regional municipality	6	...	...	...	...	...	6
TÉ – Territoire équivalent	12	...	...	...	...	12	...
TER – Territory / Territoire	1	...	...	...	...	...	...
UC – United counties	3	...	...	...	...	...	3
Total	**293**	**11**	**3**	**18**	**15**	**98**	**49**

Census division type	Manitoba	Saskatchewan	Alberta	British Columbia	Yukon	Northwest Territories	Nunavut
CDR – Census division / Division de recensement	23	18	19	...	...	...	...
CT – County / Comté	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
CTY – County	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
DIS – District	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
DM – District municipality	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
MRC – Municipalité régionale de comté	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
RD – Regional district	...	...	...	28	...	...	...
REG – Region	...	...	...	1	...	6	3
RM – Regional municipality	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
TÉ – Territoire équivalent	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
TER – Territory / Territoire	...	...	...	...	1	...	...
UC – United counties	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Total	**23**	**18**	**19**	**29**	**1**	**6**	**3**

... not applicable
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 1.5
Census subdivision types by province and territory, 2016 Census

Census subdivision type	Canada	Newfoundland and Labrador	Prince Edward Island	Nova Scotia	New Brunswick
Total	**5,162**	**372**	**112**	**96**	**273**
C – City / Cité	11	...	...	...	8
CC – Chartered community	3	...	...	...	...
CG – Community government	4	...	...	...	...
CN – Crown colony / Colonie de la couronne	1	...	...	...	...
COM – Community	31	...	31	...	...
CT – Canton (municipalité de)	43	...	...	...	...
CU – Cantons unis (municipalité de)	2	...	...	...	...
CV – City / Ville	2	...	...	...	...
CY – City	149	3	2	...	...
DM – District municipality	51	...	...	...	...
HAM – Hamlet	37	...	...	...	...
ID – Improvement district	8	...	...	...	...
IGD – Indian government district	2	...	...	...	...
IM – Island municipality	1	...	...	...	...
IRI – Indian reserve / Réserve indienne	949	3	4	26	18
LGD – Local government district	2	...	...	...	...
LOT – Township and royalty	67	...	67	...	...
M – Municipality / Municipalité	3	...	...	...	...
MD – Municipal district	76	...	...	12	...
MÉ – Municipalité	647	...	...	...	...
MU – Municipality	102	...	...	...	...
NH – Northern hamlet	11	...	...	...	...
NL – Nisga'a land	1	...	...	...	...
NO – Unorganized / Non organisé	137	...	...	...	...
NV – Northern village	11	...	...	...	...
P – Parish / Paroisse (municipalité de)	148	...	...	...	148
PE – Paroisse (municipalité de)	151	...	...	...	...
RCR – Rural community / Communauté rurale	7	...	...	...	7
RDA – Regional district electoral area	159	...	...	...	...
RGM – Regional municipality	5	...	...	3	1
RM – Rural municipality	358	...	...	...	...
RV – Resort village	40	...	...	...	...
S-É – Indian settlement / Établissement indien	27	...	...	...	...
SA – Special area	3	...	...	...	...
SC – Subdivision of county municipality / Subdivision municipalité de comté	28	...	...	28	...
SÉ – Settlement / Établissement	13	...	...	...	...
SET – Settlement	12	...	...	...	...
SG – Self-government / Autonomie gouvernementale	4	...	...	...	...
SM – Specialized municipality	5	...	...	...	...

Table 1.5
Census subdivision types by province and territory, 2016 Census

Census subdivision type	Canada	Newfoundland and Labrador	Prince Edward Island	Nova Scotia	New Brunswick
SNO – Subdivision of unorganized / Subdivision non organisée	92	92	...	...	...
SV – Summer village	51	...	...	...	...
T – Town	698	274	8	27	...
TC – Terres réservées aux Cris	8	...	...	...	...
TI – Terre inuite	13	...	...	...	...
TK – Terres réservées aux Naskapis	1	...	...	...	...
TL – Teslin land	1	...	...	...	...
TP – Township	195	...	...	...	...
TV – Town / Ville	27	...	...	...	26
V – Ville	224	...	...	...	...
VC – Village cri	8	...	...	...	...
VK – Village naskapi	1	...	...	...	...
VL – Village	518	...	...	...	65
VN – Village nordique	14	...	...	...	...

Census subdivision type	Quebec	Ontario	Manitoba	Saskatchewan	Alberta
Total	**1,285**	**575**	**229**	**950**	**425**
C – City / Cité	...	3	...	...	...
CC – Chartered community	...	...	...	...	...
CG – Community government	...	...	...	...	...
CN – Crown colony / Colonie de la couronne	...	...	...	1	...
COM – Community	...	...	...	...	...
CT – Canton (municipalité de)	43	...	...	...	...
CU – Cantons unis (municipalité de)	2	...	...	...	...
CV – City / Ville	...	2	...	...	...
CY – City	...	46	10	17	18
DM – District municipality	...	...	...	...	...
HAM – Hamlet	...	...	...	...	...
ID – Improvement district	...	...	...	...	8
IGD – Indian government district	...	...	...	...	...
IM – Island municipality	...	...	...	...	...
IRI – Indian reserve / Réserve indienne	27	140	77	165	75
LGD – Local government district	...	...	2	...	...
LOT – Township and royalty	...	...	...	...	...
M – Municipality / Municipalité	...	3	...	...	...
MD – Municipal district	...	...	...	...	64
MÉ – Municipalité	647	...	...	...	...
MU – Municipality	...	65	37	...	...
NH – Northern hamlet	...	...	...	11	...
NL – Nisga'a land	...	...	...	...	...
NO – Unorganized / Non organisé	96	16	10	2	...

Table 1.5
Census subdivision types by province and territory, 2016 Census

Census subdivision type	Quebec	Ontario	Manitoba	Saskatchewan	Alberta
NV – Northern village	...	...	...	11	...
P – Parish / Paroisse (municipalité de)	...	...	...	...	...
PE – Paroisse (municipalité de)	151	...	...	...	...
RCR – Rural community / Communauté rurale	...	...	...	...	...
RDA – Regional district electoral area	...	...	...	...	...
RGM – Regional municipality	...	...	...	...	...
RM – Rural municipality	...	...	62	296	...
RV – Resort village	...	...	...	40	...
S-É – Indian settlement / Établissement indien	6	5	4	1	4
SA – Special area	...	...	...	...	3
SC – Subdivision of county municipality / Subdivision municipalité de comté	...	...	...	...	...
SÉ – Settlement / Établissement	...	...	...	...	...
SET – Settlement	...	...	...	...	...
SG – Self-government / Autonomie gouvernementale	...	...	...	...	...
SM – Specialized municipality	...	...	...	...	5
SNO – Subdivision of unorganized / Subdivision non organisée	...	...	...	...	...
SV – Summer village	...	...	...	...	51
T – Town	...	88	25	148	107
TC – Terres réservées aux Cris	8	...	...	...	...
TI – Terre inuite	13	...	...	...	...
TK – Terres réservées aux Naskapis	1	...	...	...	...
TL – Teslin land	...	...	...	...	...
TP – Township	...	195	...	...	...
TV – Town / Ville	...	1	...	...	...
V – Ville	224	...	...	...	...
VC – Village cri	8	...	...	...	...
VK – Village naskapi	1	...	...	...	...
VL – Village	44	11	2	258	90
VN – Village nordique	14	...	...	...	...

Census subdivision type	British Columbia	Yukon	Northwest Territories	Nunavut
Total	**737**	**36**	**41**	**31**
C – City / Cité	...	...	...	...
CC – Chartered community	...	...	3	...
CG – Community government	...	...	4	...
CN – Crown colony / Colonie de la couronne	...	...	...	...
COM – Community	...	...	...	...
CT – Canton (municipalité de)	...	...	...	...
CU – Cantons unis (municipalité de)	...	...	...	...
CV – City / Ville	...	...	...	...
CY – City	50	1	1	1

Table 1.5
Census subdivision types by province and territory, 2016 Census

Census subdivision type	British Columbia	Yukon	Northwest Territories	Nunavut
DM – District municipality	51	...	...	...
HAM – Hamlet	...	2	11	24
ID – Improvement district	...	...	...	...
IGD – Indian government district	2	...	...	...
IM – Island municipality	1	...	...	...
IRI – Indian reserve / Réserve indienne	412	...	2	...
LGD – Local government district	...	...	...	...
LOT – Township and royalty	...	...	...	...
M – Municipality / Municipalité	...	...	...	...
MD – Municipal district	...	...	...	...
MÉ – Municipalité	...	...	...	...
MU – Municipality	...	...	...	...
NH – Northern hamlet	...	...	...	...
NL – Nisga'a land	1	...	...	...
NO – Unorganized / Non organisé	...	4	6	3
NV – Northern village	...	...	...	...
P – Parish / Paroisse (municipalité de)	...	...	...	...
PE – Paroisse (municipalité de)	...	...	...	...
RCR – Rural community / Communauté rurale	...	...	...	...
RDA – Regional district electoral area	159	...	...	...
RGM – Regional municipality	1	...	...	...
RM – Rural municipality	...	...	...	...
RV – Resort village	...	...	...	...
S-É – Indian settlement / Établissement indien	3	4	...	...
SA – Special area	...	...	...	...
SC – Subdivision of county municipality / Subdivision municipalité de comté	...	...	...	...
SÉ – Settlement / Établissement	...	13	...	...
SET – Settlement	...	...	9	3
SG – Self-government / Autonomie gouvernementale	...	4	...	...
SM – Specialized municipality	...	...	...	...
SNO – Subdivision of unorganized / Subdivision non organisée	...	...	...	...
SV – Summer village	...	...	...	...
T – Town	14	3	4	...
TC – Terres réservées aux Cris	...	...	...	...
TI – Terre inuite	...	...	...	...
TK – Terres réservées aux Naskapis	...	...	...	...
TL – Teslin land	...	1	...	...
TP – Township	...	...	...	...
TV – Town / Ville	...	...	...	...
V – Ville	...	...	...	...

Table 1.5
Census subdivision types by province and territory, 2016 Census

Census subdivision type	British Columbia	Yukon	Northwest Territories	Nunavut
VC – Village cri	...	...	...	...
VK – Village naskapi	...	...	...	...
VL – Village	43	4	1	...
VN – Village nordique	...	...	...	...

... not applicable
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 1.6
Designated place types by province and territory, 2016 Census

Designated place type	Province/territory[1]
CFA Class IV area	Nova Scotia
DMU Dissolved municipality	Ontario, Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta
DPL Designated place	Newfoundland and Labrador
IRI Indian reserve / Réserve indienne	British Columbia
IST Island trust	British Columbia
LNC Localité non constituée	Quebec
LSB Local service board	Ontario
LSD Local service district/ District de services locaux	New Brunswick
LUD Local urban district	Manitoba
MDI Municipalité dissoute	Quebec
MDP Municipal defined places	Ontario
MET Métis settlement	Alberta
NCM Northern community	Manitoba
NVL Nisga'a village	British Columbia
NS Northern settlement	Saskatchewan
OHM Organized hamlet	Saskatchewan
RPC Retired population centre/ Centre de population retiré	Newfoundland and Labrador, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Quebec, Ontario, Saskatchewan, British Columbia
SE Aboriginal settlement	Yukon
UNP Unincorporated place	Alberta, British Columbia
UUC Unincorporated urban centre	Manitoba

1. There are no designated places in Prince Edward Island, the Northwest Territories and Nunavut for the 2016 Census.
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 1.7
Distribution of population by size of population centre, 2011 and 2016 censuses

	Population centres		Population				
Population centre classification and rural area	**2011**	**2016**	**2011**		**2016**		**change in population 2011 to 2016**
	number		**count**	**%**	**count**	**%**	
Rural area	...	...	6,329,414	18.9	6,575,373	18.7	245,959
Small population centre (1,000 to 29,999)	857	918	4,144,723	12.4	4,458,766	12.7	314,043
Medium population centre (30,000 to 99,999)	54	57	2,926,734	8.7	3,179,294	9.0	252,560
Large urban population centre (100,000 or greater)	31	30	20,075,817	60.0	20,938,295	59.6	862,478
Total	**942**	**1,005**	**33,476,688**	**100.0**	**35,151,728**	**100.0**	**1,675,040**

... not applicable
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 1.8
Abbreviations and codes for provinces and territories, 2016 Census

Province/Territory	Standard abbreviations English/French	Internationally approved alpha code (Source: Canada Post)	Standard geographical classification (SGC) code	Region name
Newfoundland and Labrador	N.L./T.-N.-L.	NL	10	Atlantic
Prince Edward Island	P.E.I./Î.-P.-É.	PE	11	Atlantic
Nova Scotia	N.S./N.-É.	NS	12	Atlantic
New Brunswick	N.B./N.-B.	NB	13	Atlantic
Quebec	Que./Qc	QC	24	Quebec
Ontario	Ont./Ont.	ON	35	Ontario
Manitoba	Man./Man.	MB	46	Prairies
Saskatchewan	Sask./Sask.	SK	47	Prairies
Alberta	Alta./Alb.	AB	48	Prairies
British Columbia	B.C./C.-B.	BC	59	British Columbia
Yukon	Y.T./Yn	YT	60	Territories
Northwest Territories	N.W.T./T.N.-O.	NT	61	Territories
Nunavut	Nvt./Nt	NU	62	Territories

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 1.9
First character of the postal code^{OM} and corresponding province, territory or region

First character of the postal code	Province, territory or region
A	Newfoundland and Labrador
B	Nova Scotia
C	Prince Edward Island
E	New Brunswick
G	Eastern Quebec
H	Metropolitan Montréal
J	Western Quebec
K	Eastern Ontario
L	Central Ontario
M	Metropolitan Toronto
N	Southwestern Ontario
P	Northern Ontario
R	Manitoba
S	Saskatchewan
T	Alberta
V	British Columbia
X	Northwest Territories and Nunavut
Y	Yukon

Note: The regions used in this table are defined by Canada Post Corporation.
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 1.10
Census metropolitan area and census agglomeration types by province and territory, 2016 Census

Census metropolitan area and census agglomeration type	Canada	Newfoundland and Labrador	Prince Edward Island	Nova Scotia	New Brunswick	Quebec	Ontario
B Census metropolitan area	36	1	0	1	2	6	16
D Census agglomeration with no census tracts	106	4	2	4	4	22	26
K Census agglomeration with census tracts	14	0	0	0	1	2	3
Total	**156**	**5**	**2**	**5**	**7**	**30**	**45**

Census metropolitan area and census agglomeration type	Manitoba	Saskatchewan	Alberta	British Columbia	Yukon	Northwest Territories	Nunavut
B Census metropolitan area	1	2	3	4	0	0	0
D Census agglomeration with no census tracts	5	8	11	18	1	1	0
K Census agglomeration with census tracts	0	0	4	4	0	0	0
Total	**6**	**10**	**18**	**26**	**1**	**1**	**0**

Note: Includes provincial parts.
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 1.11
Statistical Area Classification values by province and territory, 2016 Census

Statistical Area Classification value	Canada	Newfoundland and Labrador	Prince Edward Island	Nova Scotia	New Brunswick	Quebec	Ontario
1 Census subdivision within census metropolitan area	495	13	0	6	33	164	99
2 Census subdivision within census agglomeration with at least one census tract	112	0	0	0	17	16	19
3 Census subdivision within census agglomeration having no census tracts	359	22	26	18	35	58	38
4 Census subdivision outside of census metropolitan area/ census agglomeration area having strong metropolitan influence	765	37	37	9	46	327	109
5 Census subdivision outside of census metropolitan area/ census agglomeration area having moderate metropolitan influence	1,327	124	42	24	83	425	120
6 Census subdivision outside of census metropolitan area/ census agglomeration area having weak metropolitan influence	690	45	1	27	44	112	70
7 Census subdivision outside of census metropolitan area/ census agglomeration area having no metropolitan influence	1,314	131	6	12	15	183	120
8 Census subdivision within the territories, outside of census agglomeration	100	0	0	0	0	0	0
Total	**5,162**	**372**	**112**	**96**	**273**	**1,285**	**575**

Table 1.11
Statistical Area Classification values by province and territory, 2016 Census

Statistical Area Classification value	Manitoba	Saskatchewan	Alberta	British Columbia	Yukon	Northwest Territories	Nunavut
1 Census subdivision within census metropolitan area	12	43	51	74	0	0	0
2 Census subdivision within census agglomeration with at least one census tract	0	0	15	45	0	0	0
3 Census subdivision within census agglomeration having no census tracts	11	27	17	99	7	1	0
4 Census subdivision outside of census metropolitan area/ census agglomeration area having strong metropolitan influence	19	88	53	40	0	0	0
5 Census subdivision outside of census metropolitan area/ census agglomeration area having moderate metropolitan influence	56	244	104	105	0	0	0
6 Census subdivision outside of census metropolitan area/ census agglomeration area having weak metropolitan influence	70	168	72	81	0	0	0
7 Census subdivision outside of census metropolitan area/ census agglomeration area having no metropolitan influence	61	380	113	293	0	0	0
8 Census subdivision within the territories, outside of census agglomeration	0	0	0	0	29	40	31
Total	**229**	**950**	**425**	**737**	**36**	**41**	**31**

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 1.12
Population centre type values by province and territory, 2016 Census

Population centre type values		Canada	Newfoundland and Labrador	Prince Edward Island	Nova Scotia	New Brunswick	Quebec	Ontario
1	Core inside a census metropolitan area or a census agglomeration	156	5	2	5	7	30	45
2	Fringe inside a census metropolitan area or a census agglomeration	222	4	1	11	7	50	84
4	Population centre outside a census metropolitan area or a census agglomeration	595	19	2	21	17	179	139
6	Secondary core inside a census metropolitan area or a census agglomeration	37	...	...	...	...	11	18
Total		**1,010**	**28**	**5**	**37**	**31**	**270**	**286**

Population centre type values		Manitoba	Saskatchewan	Alberta	British Columbia	Yukon	Northwest Territories	Nunavut
1	Core inside a census metropolitan area or a census agglomeration	6	10	18	26	1	1	...
2	Fringe inside a census metropolitan area or a census agglomeration	9	12	20	24	...	...	...
4	Population centre outside a census metropolitan area or a census agglomeration	36	39	77	56	...	3	7
6	Secondary core inside a census metropolitan area or a census agglomeration	...	...	7	1	...	...	...
Total		**51**	**61**	**122**	**107**	**1**	**4**	**7**

... not applicable

Notes: Includes provincial parts.

Rural areas are residual values. Therefore, the values 3 and 5 are not included in the population centre counts.

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 1.13
Population centre size class values by province and territory, 2016 Census

Population centre size class value	Canada	Newfoundland and Labrador	Prince Edward Island	Nova Scotia	New Brunswick	Quebec	Ontario
2 Small population centre (1,000 to 29,999)	921	27	4	36	28	251	253
3 Medium population centre (30,000 to 99,999)	58	...	1	...	2	13	20
4 Large urban population centre (100,000 or more)	31	1	...	1	1	6	13
Total	**1,010**	**28**	**5**	**37**	**31**	**270**	**286**

Population centre size class value	Manitoba	Saskatchewan	Alberta	British Columbia	Yukon	Northwest Territories	Nunavut
2 Small population centre (1,000 to 29,999)	49	56	112	93	1	4	7
3 Medium population centre (30,000 to 99,999)	1	3	8	10	...	...	...
4 Large urban population centre (100,000 or more)	1	2	2	4	...	...	...
Total	**51**	**61**	**122**	**107**	**1**	**4**	**7**

... not applicable

Notes: Includes provincial parts.

Rural area is a residual value. It is comprised of all areas located outside population centres. Each province and territory has one rural area value.

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 4.1
Summary of low-income lines in the 2016 Census of Population Program

	Low-income concept		
Dimensions	Low-income measures (LIM)	Low-income cut-offs (LICO)	Market Basket Measure (MBM)
Geography	One level across Canada	Size of area of residence	50 regions
Unit for income	Households	Economic families and persons not in economic families	Economic families and persons not in economic families
Adjustment factor	Square root of household size	Different lines based on size of economic family up to 7+ members category	Square root of economic family size
Income	After-tax income of households[1]	After-tax income of economic families and persons not in economic families[3]	Disposable income for MBM for economic families and persons not in economic families[5]
	Total income of households[2]	Total income of economic families and persons not in economic families[4]	
Line	Half the median of adjusted income	Income level at which families usually spend 20 percentage points more than the average family on shelter, food and clothing[6]	Price of the basket of goods and services for the reference family[7]

1. For the Low-income measure, after tax (LIM-AT).
2. For the Low-income measure, before tax (LIM-BT).
3. For the Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT).
4. For the Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT).
5. For ESDC's Market Basket Measure (MBM).
6. Based on estimates from the 1992 Family Expenditure Survey adjusted to 2015 dollars with the Consumer Price Index (CPI).
7. The contents of the basket were defined by Employment and Social Development Canada, prices were measured by Statistics Canada.

Source: Statistics Canada, Income Statistics Division.

Table 4.2
Low-income measures thresholds (LIM-AT and LIM-BT) for private households of Canada, 2015

Household size[1]	After-tax income	Before-tax income
1 person	22,133	25,516
2 persons	31,301	36,084
3 persons	38,335	44,194
4 persons	44,266	51,031
5 persons	49,491	57,054
6 persons	54,215	62,500
7 persons	58,558	67,508

1. To convert to other household sizes, multiply the value in the one-person household by the square root of the desired household size.

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 4.3
Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT – 1992 base) for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015

	Size of area of residence				
				Large urban population centres	
Economic family size	Rural area	Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	Population between 100,000 and 499,999 persons	Population 500,000 persons or more
Person not in an economic family	13,335	15,261	17,025	17,240	20,386
2 persons	16,230	18,576	20,722	20,982	24,811
3 persons	20,211	23,129	25,802	26,128	30,895
4 persons	25,213	28,856	32,191	32,596	38,544
5 persons	28,711	32,859	36,657	37,118	43,890
6 persons	31,841	36,441	40,654	41,165	48,675
7 or more persons	34,972	40,024	44,649	45,211	53,460

Source: Income Research Paper Series – Low Income Lines 2015-2016. Statistics Canada, Catalogue no. 75F0002MIE, 2017, no. 002 (https://www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/en/catalogue/75F0002M2016002).

Table 4.4
Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT – 1992 base) for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015

	Size of area of residence				
				Large urban population centres	
Economic family size	Rural area	Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	Population between 100,000 and 499,999 persons	Population 500,000 persons or more
Person not in an economic family	16,934	19,266	21,055	21,186	24,600
2 persons	21,082	23,983	26,211	26,373	30,625
3 persons	25,917	29,484	32,223	32,423	37,650
4 persons	31,468	35,799	39,124	39,367	45,712
5 persons	35,689	40,602	44,373	44,648	51,846
6 persons	40,253	45,793	50,046	50,357	58,473
7 or more persons	44,815	50,984	55,719	56,064	65,101

Source: Income Research Paper Series – Low Income Lines 2015-2016. Statistics Canada, Catalogue no. 75F0002MIE, 2017, no. 002 (https://www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/en/catalogue/75F0002M2016002).

Table 4.5
Market Basket Measure (MBM) thresholds for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015

MBM region	Persons not in economic families	Economic family size[1]			
		2 persons	3 persons	4 persons	5 persons
Newfoundland and Labrador					
Rural areas	19,876	28,108	34,425	39,751	44,443
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	20,159	28,509	34,916	40,318	45,077
St. John's (CMA)	19,014	26,890	32,933	38,028	42,517
Prince Edward Island					
Rural areas	19,292	27,283	33,415	38,584	43,138
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	19,708	27,871	34,134	39,415	44,067
Charlottetown (CA)	19,062	26,958	33,016	38,124	42,624
Nova Scotia					
Rural areas	19,625	27,753	33,991	39,249	43,882
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	19,715	27,881	34,147	39,430	44,084
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	18,723	26,478	32,428	37,445	41,865
Halifax (CMA)	18,889	26,713	32,717	37,778	42,237
Cape Breton (CA)	17,628	24,930	30,533	35,256	39,417
New Brunswick					
Rural areas	19,235	27,202	33,315	38,469	43,010
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	19,519	27,603	33,807	39,037	43,645
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	19,232	27,197	33,310	38,463	43,003
Fredericton (CA)	19,619	27,745	33,981	39,238	43,869
Saint John (CMA)	18,275	25,844	31,652	36,549	40,863
Moncton (CMA)	17,747	25,097	30,738	35,493	39,682
Quebec					
Rural areas	17,275	24,430	29,920	34,549	38,627
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	17,319	24,492	29,997	34,637	38,725
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	16,436	23,243	28,467	32,871	36,751
Large urban population centres with a population between 100,000 and 499,999 persons	16,854	23,834	29,191	33,707	37,686
Québec (CMA)	17,167	24,278	29,734	34,334	38,387
Montréal (CMA)	17,714	25,051	30,681	35,427	39,609

Table 4.5
Market Basket Measure (MBM) thresholds for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015

MBM region	Persons not in economic families	Economic family size[1]			
		2 persons	3 persons	4 persons	5 persons
Ontario					
Rural areas	18,356	25,959	31,793	36,711	41,044
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	18,254	25,815	31,617	36,508	40,817
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	17,166	24,276	29,732	34,332	38,384
Large urban population centres with a population between 100,000 and 499,999 persons	18,436	26,072	31,932	36,872	41,224
Ottawa - Gatineau (Ontario part) (CMA)	20,053	28,359	34,733	40,106	44,840
Hamilton (CMA)	18,536	26,214	32,105	37,072	41,448
Toronto (CMA)	20,298	28,705	35,156	40,595	45,387
Manitoba					
Rural areas	17,755	25,109	30,752	35,509	39,700
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	18,450	26,092	31,956	36,900	41,255
Brandon (CA)	17,382	24,582	30,107	34,764	38,867
Winnipeg (CMA)	18,272	25,841	31,648	36,544	40,857
Saskatchewan					
Rural areas	18,779	26,558	32,526	37,558	41,991
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	19,329	27,335	33,479	38,658	43,221
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	18,216	25,761	31,550	36,431	40,731
Saskatoon (CMA)	19,055	26,948	33,004	38,110	42,608
Regina (CMA)	18,807	26,596	32,574	37,613	42,053
Alberta					
Rural areas	19,668	27,814	34,065	39,335	43,978
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	20,389	28,834	35,314	40,777	45,590
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	20,135	28,475	34,875	40,270	45,023
Large urban population centres with a population between 100,000 and 499,999 persons	19,384	27,412	33,573	38,767	43,343
Edmonton (CMA)	19,341	27,352	33,499	38,681	43,247
Calgary (CMA)	20,300	28,708	35,160	40,599	45,391

Table 4.5
Market Basket Measure (MBM) thresholds for economic families and persons not in economic families, 2015

MBM region	Persons not in economic families	Economic family size[1]			
		2 persons	3 persons	4 persons	5 persons
British Columbia					
Rural areas	18,577	26,271	32,175	37,153	41,538
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	18,585	26,282	32,189	37,169	41,556
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	17,522	24,780	30,349	35,044	39,180
Large urban population centres with a population between 100,000 and 499,999 persons	19,455	27,514	33,697	38,910	43,503
Vancouver (CMA)	19,976	28,250	34,599	39,951	44,667

1. To convert to other family sizes, multiply the amount for persons not in economic families by the square root of the desired family size.

Note: The geographic area concepts and the Market Basket Measure (MBM) thresholds were defined by Employment and Social Development Canada (ESDC). This amount corresponds to the cost of a specific basket of goods and services representing a modest, basic standard of living in each of the 50 MBM geographic regions.

Source: Statistics Canada, Income Statistics Division.

Table 4.6
Mortgage-free owners' difference in expenditures for the Market Basket Measure (MBM), 2015

MBM region	Persons not in economic families	Economic family size[1]			
		2 persons	3 persons	4 persons	5 persons
Newfoundland and Labrador					
Rural areas	1,649	2,332	2,856	3,298	3,687
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	1,491	2,108	2,582	2,981	3,333
St. John's (CMA)	1,611	2,278	2,789	3,221	3,601
Prince Edward Island					
Rural areas	1,759	2,487	3,046	3,517	3,932
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	1,660	2,347	2,874	3,319	3,711
Charlottetown (CA)	1,915	2,708	3,316	3,829	4,281
Nova Scotia					
Rural areas	1,945	2,750	3,368	3,889	4,348
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	1,421	2,009	2,460	2,841	3,176
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	1,929	2,728	3,341	3,858	4,313
Halifax (CMA)	2,210	3,125	3,827	4,419	4,941
Cape Breton (CA)	1,456	2,059	2,522	2,912	3,256
New Brunswick					
Rural areas	1,646	2,327	2,850	3,291	3,679
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	1,477	2,088	2,557	2,953	3,302
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	1,382	1,954	2,393	2,763	3,089
Fredericton (CA)	2,616	3,700	4,531	5,232	5,850
Saint John (CMA)	1,462	2,067	2,531	2,923	3,268
Moncton (CMA)	1,990	2,814	3,446	3,979	4,449
Quebec					
Rural areas	1,299	1,836	2,249	2,597	2,904
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	1,004	1,419	1,738	2,007	2,244
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	1,272	1,798	2,202	2,543	2,843
Large urban population centres with a population between 100,000 and 499,999 persons	1,316	1,860	2,279	2,631	2,942
Québec (CMA)	1,533	2,167	2,654	3,065	3,427
Montréal (CMA)	1,461	2,066	2,531	2,922	3,267

Table 4.6
Mortgage-free owners' difference in expenditures for the Market Basket Measure (MBM), 2015

MBM region	Persons not in economic families	Economic family size[1]			
		2 persons	3 persons	4 persons	5 persons
Ontario					
Rural areas	1,982	2,803	3,433	3,964	4,432
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	1,660	2,347	2,874	3,319	3,711
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	1,801	2,546	3,119	3,601	4,026
Large urban population centres with a population between 100,000 and 499,999 persons	2,112	2,986	3,657	4,223	4,721
Ottawa - Gatineau (Ontario part) (CMA)	2,815	3,981	4,876	5,630	6,295
Hamilton (CMA)	1,979	2,799	3,428	3,958	4,425
Toronto (CMA)	2,975	4,207	5,152	5,949	6,651
Manitoba					
Rural areas	1,440	2,036	2,494	2,880	3,220
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	1,747	2,470	3,025	3,493	3,905
Brandon (CA)	1,913	2,705	3,313	3,825	4,276
Winnipeg (CMA)	2,009	2,841	3,480	4,018	4,492
Saskatchewan					
Rural areas	1,353	1,913	2,343	2,705	3,024
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	1,409	1,993	2,440	2,818	3,151
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	1,480	2,093	2,563	2,960	3,309
Saskatoon (CMA)	1,677	2,371	2,904	3,353	3,749
Regina (CMA)	1,681	2,377	2,911	3,361	3,758
Alberta					
Rural areas	2,297	3,248	3,978	4,593	5,135
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	2,534	3,583	4,388	5,067	5,665
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	3,578	5,060	6,197	7,156	8,001
Large urban population centres with a population between 100,000 and 499,999 persons	2,209	3,124	3,826	4,418	4,939
Edmonton (CMA)	2,635	3,726	4,563	5,269	5,891
Calgary (CMA)	3,152	4,458	5,459	6,304	7,048

Table 4.6
Mortgage-free owners' difference in expenditures for the Market Basket Measure (MBM), 2015

MBM region	Persons not in economic families	Economic family size[1]			
		2 persons	3 persons	4 persons	5 persons
British Columbia					
Rural areas	3,129	4,424	5,419	6,257	6,996
Small population centres with less than 30,000 persons	2,810	3,974	4,867	5,620	6,283
Medium population centres with a population between 30,000 and 99,999 persons	3,132	4,429	5,424	6,263	7,002
Large urban population centres with a population between 100,000 and 499,999 persons	3,864	5,464	6,692	7,727	8,639
Vancouver (CMA)	3,979	5,626	6,891	7,957	8,896

1. To convert to other family sizes, multiply the amount for persons not in economic families by the square root of the desired family size.

Note: The geographic areas and mortgage-free owner's difference in expenditures concepts were defined by Employment and Social Development Canada (ESDC). This amount varies for each of the 50 geographic regions and represents the typical annual shelter cost savings a household that owns their dwelling without a mortgage would have compared to a renter household.

Source: Statistics Canada, Income Statistics Division.

Table 6.1
'Journey to work' data available for each place of work status

Place of work	Workplace location	Commuting destination	Main mode of commuting	Commuting vehicle occupancy
Worked at home	Available	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Worked outside Canada	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
No fixed workplace address	Not applicable	Not applicable	Available	Available if the mode of transportation reported is 'car, truck or van'
Usual place of work	Available	Available	Available	Available if the mode of transportation reported is 'car, truck or van'

Place of work	Time leaving for work	Time arriving at work	Commuting duration	Distance from home to work
Worked at home	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Worked outside Canada	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
No fixed workplace address	Available	Available	Available	Not applicable
Usual place of work	Available	Available	Available	Available

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Table 6.2
Values for the labour force status variable

Employed	Experienced[1]	Worked for pay or in self-employment	
			Civilian
			Armed Forces
		Absent from job or business	
			Civilian
			Armed Forces
Unemployed	Experienced[1]	On temporary lay-off	
			Did not look for paid work
			Looked for full-time paid work
			Looked for part-time paid work
		New job to start in four weeks or less	
			Did not look for paid work
			Looked for full-time paid work
			Looked for part-time paid work
		Looked for paid work	
			Full-time paid work
			Part-time paid work
	Inexperienced[2]	New job to start in four weeks or less	
			Did not look for paid work
			Looked for full-time paid work
			Looked for part-time paid work
		Looked for paid work	
			Full-time paid work
			Part-time paid work
Not in the labour force	Experienced[1]	Last worked in 2016	
		Last worked in 2015	
	Inexperienced[2]	Last worked before 2015	
		Never worked	

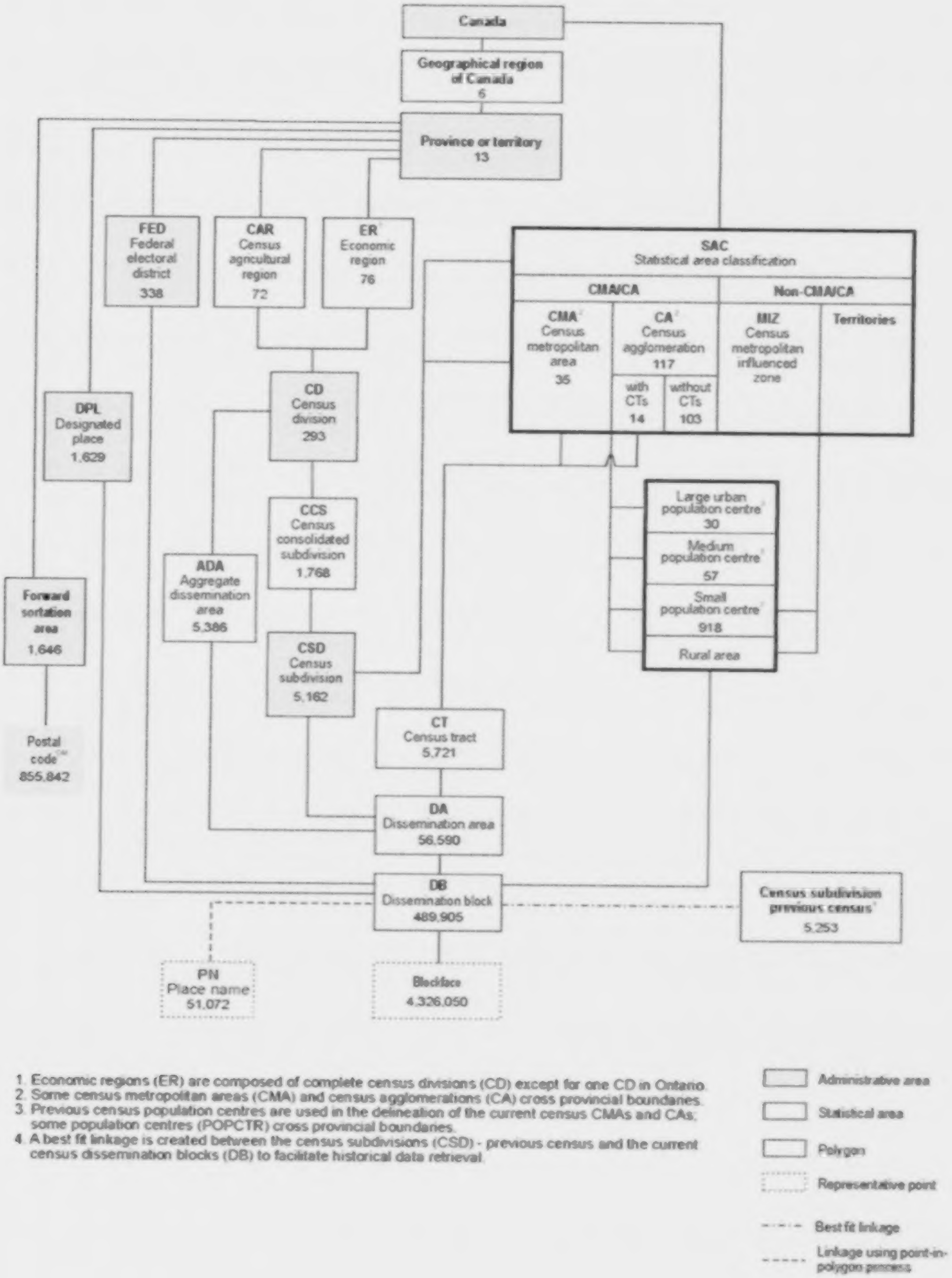
Notes:

1. Refers to persons aged 15 years and over who have worked at some point in time for pay or in self-employment between January 2015 and May 2016.
2. Refers to persons aged 15 years and over who last worked for pay or in self-employment before January 1, 2015, or who never worked.

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census – 25% Sample Data.

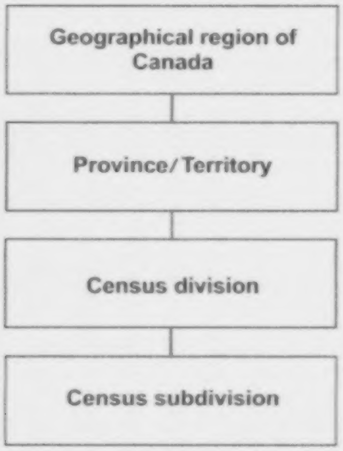
Figures

Figure 1.1
Hierarchy of standard geographic areas for dissemination, 2016 Census


Canada
Geographical region of Canada 6
Province or territory 13
FED Federal electoral district 338
CAR Census agricultural region 72
ER[1] Economic region 76
SAC Statistical area classification
CMA/CA
Non-CMA/CA
CMA[2] Census metropolitan area 35
CA[2] Census agglomeration 117
with CTs 14
without CTs 103
MIZ Census metropolitan influenced zone
Territories
CD Census division 293
DPL Designated place 1,629
CCS Census consolidated subdivision 1,768
Large urban population centre[3] 30
Medium population centre[3] 57
Small population centre[3] 918
Rural area
ADA Aggregate dissemination area 5,386
Forward sortation area 1,646
CSD Census subdivision 5,162
Postal code™ 855,842
CT Census tract 5,721
DA Dissemination area 56,590
DB Dissemination block 489,905
Census subdivision previous census[4] 5,253
PN Place name 51,072
Blockface 4,326,050
Administrative area
Statistical area
Polygon
Representative point
Best fit linkage
Linkage using point-in-polygon process

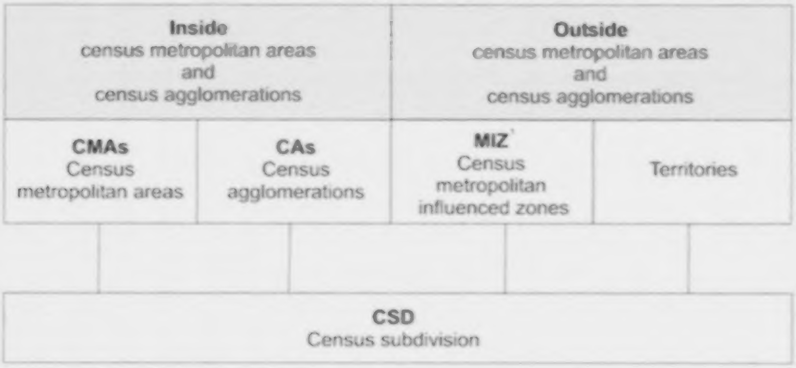
1. Economic regions (ER) are composed of complete census divisions (CD) except for one CD in Ontario.
2. Some census metropolitan areas (CMA) and census agglomerations (CA) cross provincial boundaries.
3. Previous census population centres are used in the delineation of the current census CMAs and CAs; some population centres (POPCTR) cross provincial boundaries.
4. A best fit linkage is created between the census subdivisions (CSD) - previous census and the current census dissemination blocks (DB) to facilitate historical data retrieval.

Figure 1.2
Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) hierarchy


Geographical region of Canada
Province/Territory
Census division
Census subdivision

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.3
Statistical Area Classification (SAC) hierarchy

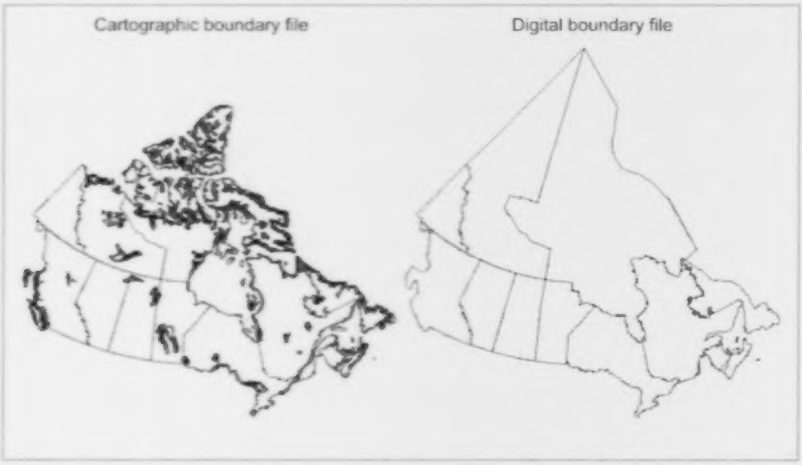

Inside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations
Outside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations
CMAs Census metropolitan areas
CAs Census agglomerations
MIZ[1] Census metropolitan influenced zones
Territories
CSD Census subdivision

Note:

1. Census metropolitan influenced zones (MIZ) categories are strong, moderate, weak and no influence.

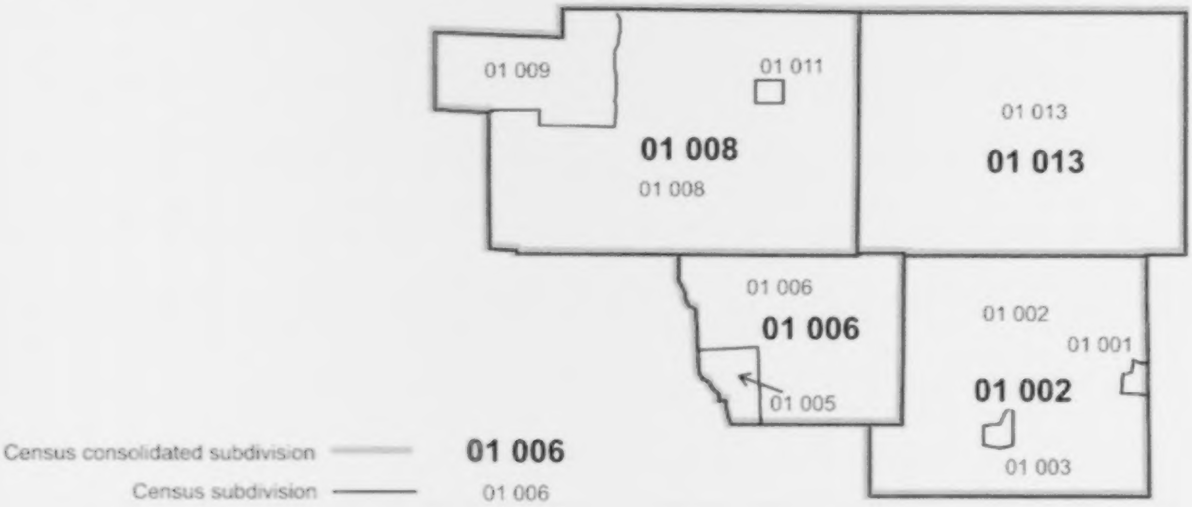
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.4
Example of a cartographic boundary file and a digital boundary file (provinces and territories)


Cartographic boundary file
Digital boundary file

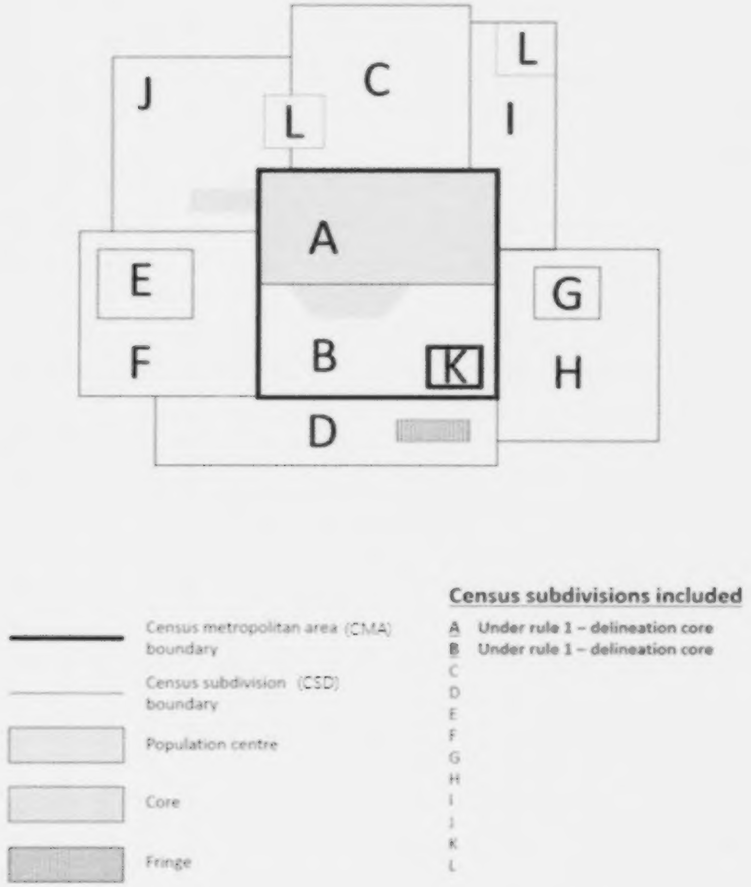
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.5
Example of census consolidated subdivisions (CCSs) and census subdivisions (CSDs)


01 009
01 011
01 008
01 008
01 013
01 013
01 006
01 006
01 005
01 002
01 001
01 002
01 003
Census consolidated subdivision
01 006
Census subdivision
01 006

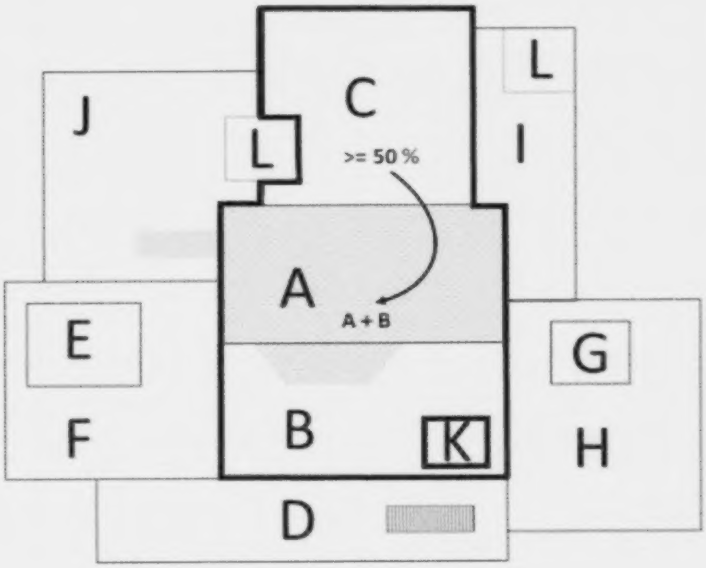
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.6
Delineation Core rule


J
L
C
L
I
A
E
F
B
K
G
H
D
Census metropolitan area (CMA) boundary
Census subdivision (CSD) boundary
Population centre
Core
Fringe
Census subdivisions included
A Under rule 1 – delineation core
B Under rule 1 – delineation core
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.7
Forward commuting flow rule



━	Census metropolitan area (CMA) boundary
─	Census subdivision (CSD) boundary
▭	Population centre
▭	Core
▨	Fringe
→	Forward commuting flow[1]

Census subdivisions included

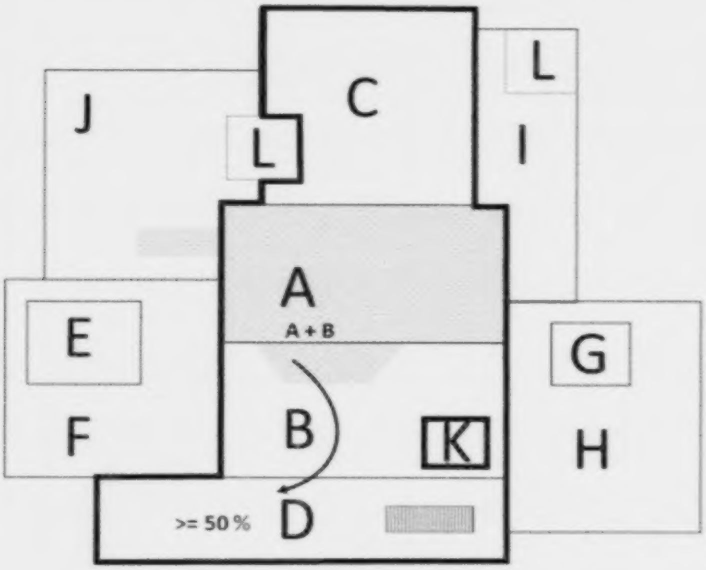
A	Under rule 1 – delineation core
B	Under rule 1 – delineation core
C	**Under rule 2 – forward commuting flow**
D	
E	
F	
G	
H	
I	
J	
K	
L	

Note :

1. Commuting, i.e., the journey to work, comprises four categories: at home; outside Canada; no fixed workplace address and usual place of work. The calculation of the employed labour force excludes the category of no fixed workplace address. Moreover, all calculations of commuting exclude data on no fixed workplace address.

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.8
Reverse commuting flow rule



━ Census metropolitan area boundary (CMA)

─ Census subdivision boundary (CSD)

▭ Population centre

▭ Core

▨ Fringe

→ Reverse commuting flow[1]

Census subdivisions included

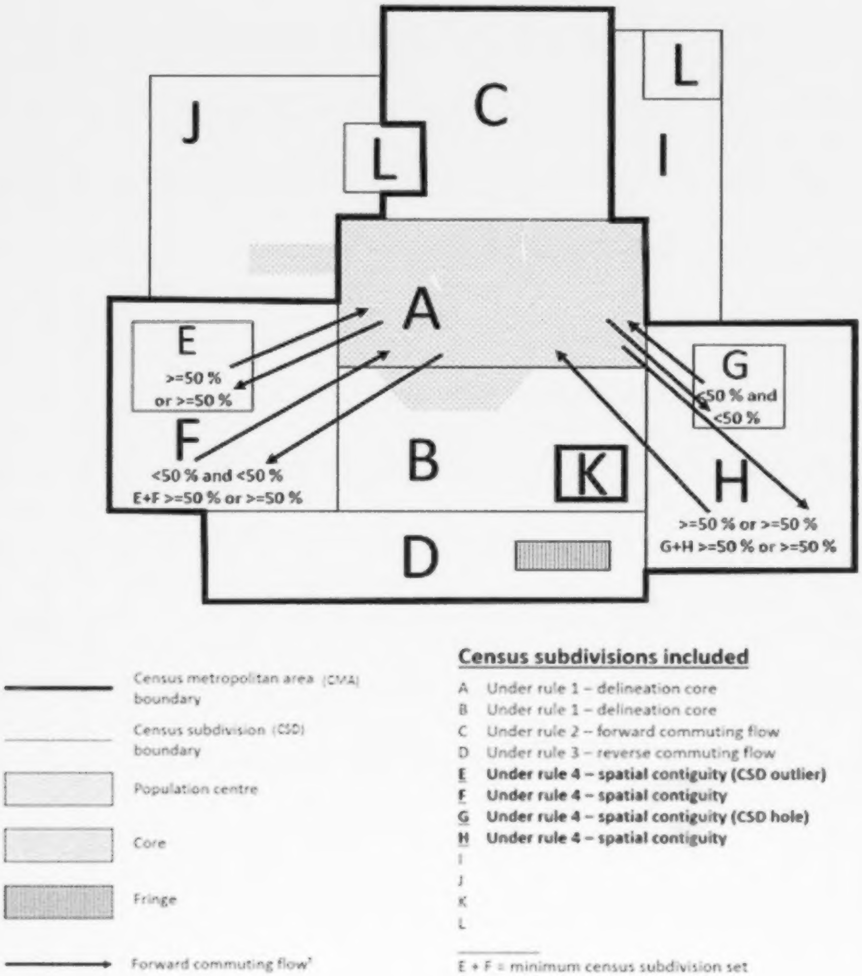
A Under rule 1 - delineation core
B Under rule 1 – delineation core
C Under rule 2 – forward commuting flow
D Under rule 3 – reverse commuting flow
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L

Note :

1. Commuting, i.e., the journey to work, comprises four categories: at home; outside Canada; no fixed workplace address and usual place of work. The calculation of the employed labour force excludes the category of no fixed workplace address. Moreover, all calculations of commuting exclude data on no fixed workplace address.

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.9
Spatial contiguity rule


J
C
L
L
I
A
E
>=50 %
or >=50 %
G
<50 % and
<50 %
F
<50 % and <50 %
E+F >=50 % or >=50 %
B
K
H
>=50 % or >=50 %
G+H >=50 % or >=50 %
D
Census metropolitan area (CMA) boundary
Census subdivision (CSD) boundary
Population centre
Core
Fringe
Forward commuting flow[1]

Census subdivisions included

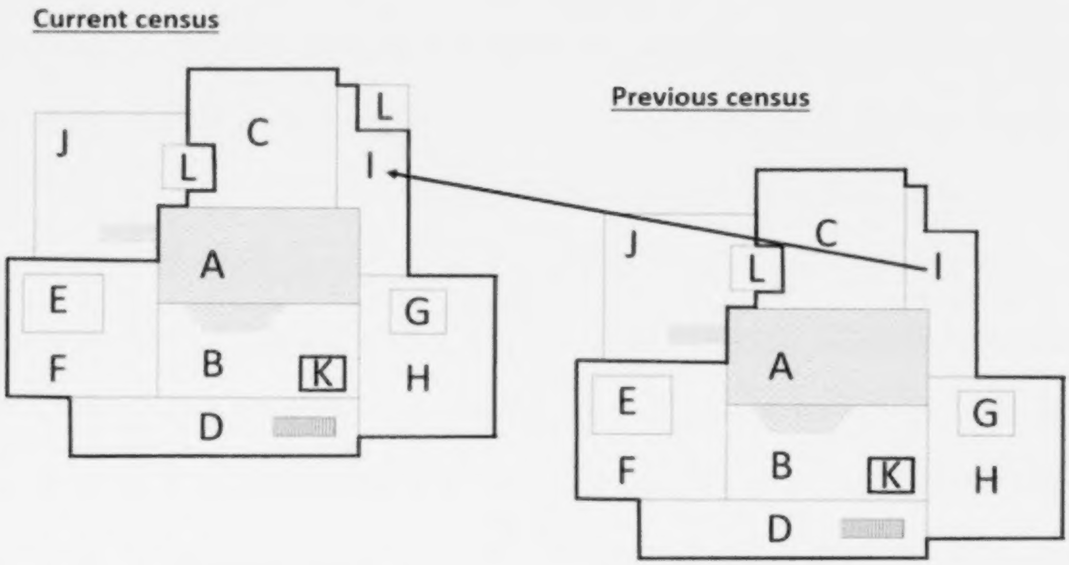
A Under rule 1 – delineation core
B Under rule 1 – delineation core
C Under rule 2 – forward commuting flow
D Under rule 3 – reverse commuting flow
E Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity (CSD outlier)
F Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity
G Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity (CSD hole)
H Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity
I
J
K
L

E + F = minimum census subdivision set
G + H = minimum census subdivision set

Notes :
CSD E (outlier) has sufficient flows – either >=50 % forward or >=50 % reverse commuting flows
CSD F has insufficient flows – has < 50 % forward and < 50 % reverse commuting flows
CSD G (hole) has insufficient flows – has < 50 % forward and < 50 % reverse commuting flows
CSD H has sufficient flows - either >=50 % forward or >=50 % reverse commuting flows
1. Commuting, i.e., the journey to work, comprises four categories: at home; outside Canada; no fixed workplace address and usual place of work. The calculation of the employed labour force excludes the category of no fixed workplace address. Moreover, all calculations of commuting exclude data on no fixed workplace address.

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.10
Historical comparability rule



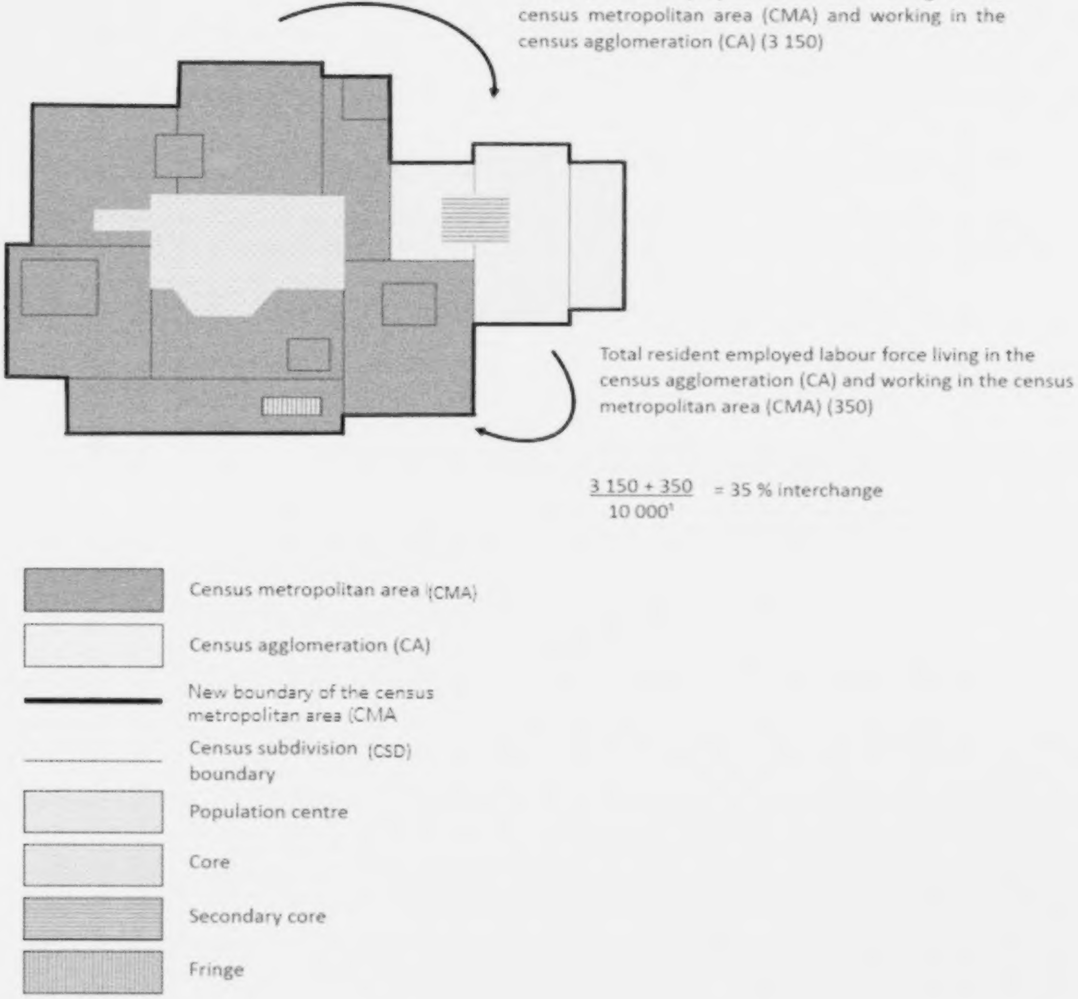
━━	Census metropolitan area (CMA) boundary
──	Census subdivision (CSD) boundary
▭	Population centre
▭	Core
▨	Fringe

Census subdivisions included

A	Under rule 1 – delineation core
B	Under rule 1 – delineation core
C	Under rule 2 – forward commuting flow
D	Under rule 3 – reverse commuting flow
E	Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity (CSD outlier)
F	Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity
G	Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity (CSD hole)
H	Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity
I	**Under rule 5 – historical comparability**
J	
K	
L	

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.11
Example of a merged census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA)



Total resident employed labour force living in the census metropolitan area (CMA) and working in the census agglomeration (CA) (3 150)

Total resident employed labour force living in the census agglomeration (CA) and working in the census metropolitan area (CMA) (350)

$$\frac{3\,150 + 350}{10\,000^{1}} = 35\ \%\ \text{interchange}$$

Census metropolitan area (CMA)
Census agglomeration (CA)
New boundary of the census metropolitan area (CMA
Census subdivision (CSD) boundary
Population centre
Core
Secondary core
Fringe

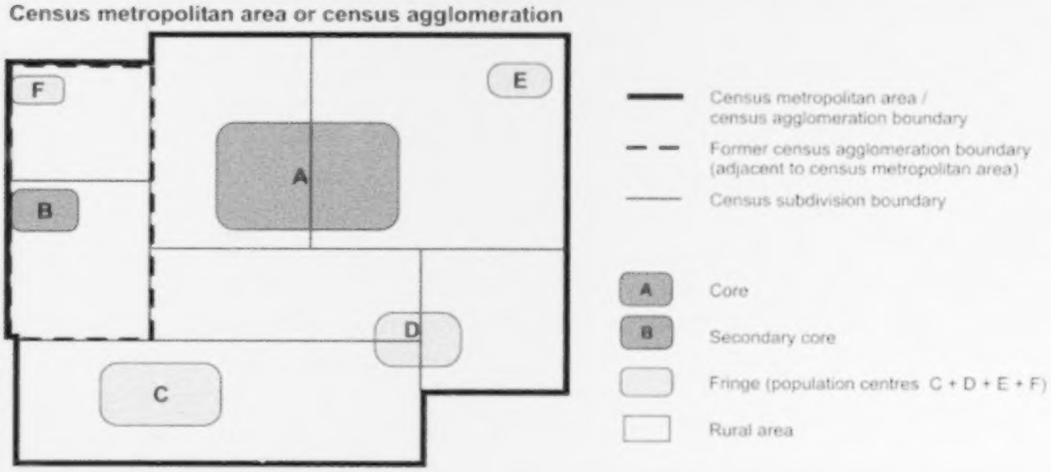
Notes :

Commuting, i.e., the journey to work, comprises four categories: at home; outside Canada; no fixed workplace address and usual place of work. The calculation of the employed labour force excludes the category of no fixed workplace address. Moreover, all calculations of commuting exclude data on no fixed workplace address.

1. Residing members of the employed labour force for census agglomeration (CA)

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.12
Example of a census metropolitan area or a census agglomeration, showing core, secondary core, fringe and rural area

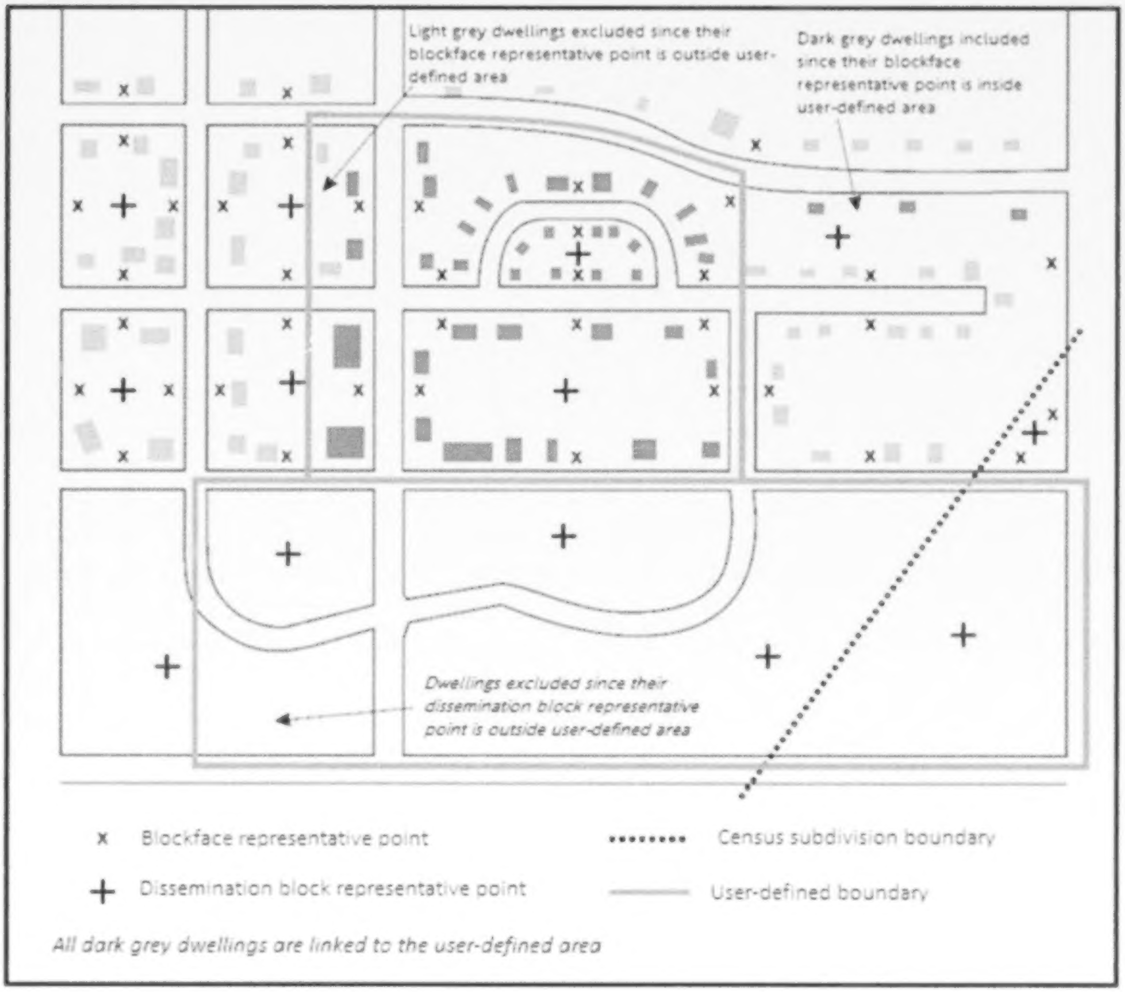


Census metropolitan area or census agglomeration

F
E
A
B
D
C
Census metropolitan area / census agglomeration boundary
Former census agglomeration boundary (adjacent to census metropolitan area)
Census subdivision boundary
A
Core
B
Secondary core
Fringe (population centres C + D + E + F)
Rural area

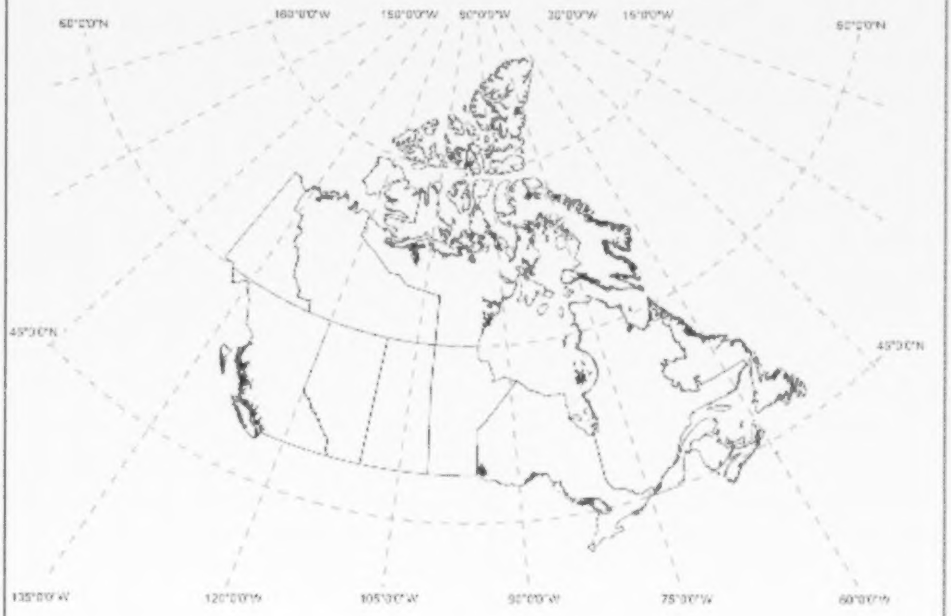
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.13
Example of data retrieval with user-defined boundaries

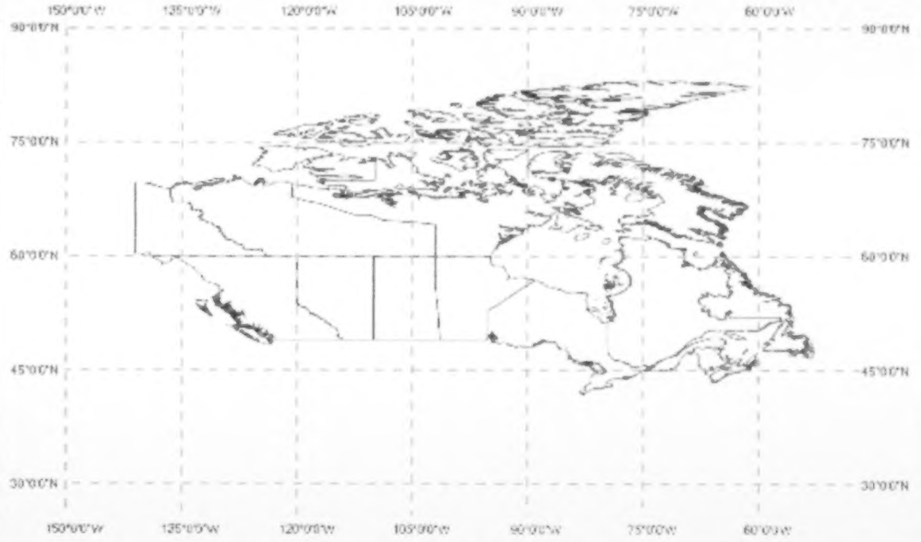

Light grey dwellings excluded since their blockface representative point is outside user-defined area
Dark grey dwellings included since their blockface representative point is inside user-defined area
Dwellings excluded since their dissemination block representative point is outside user-defined area
x Blockface representative point
+ Dissemination block representative point
Census subdivision boundary
User-defined boundary
All dark grey dwellings are linked to the user-defined area

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.14
Example of a map projection and unprojected coordinates


A. Lambert conformal conic projection

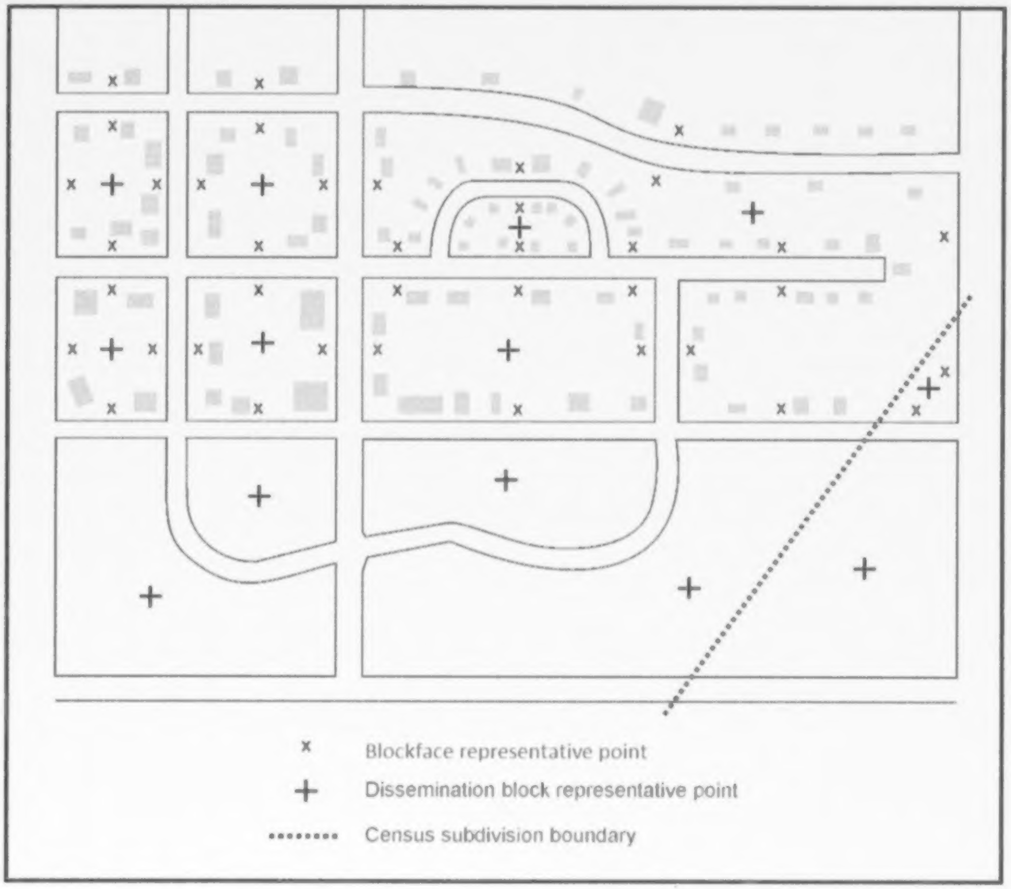
60°0'0"N
165°0'0"W
150°0'0"W
90°0'0"W
30°0'0"W
15°0'0"W
60°0'0"N
45°0'0"N
45°0'0"N
135°0'0"W
120°0'0"W
105°0'0"W
90°0'0"W
75°0'0"W
60°0'0"W


B. Unprojected coordinates (latitude and longitude)

150°0'0"W
135°0'0"W
120°0'0"W
105°0'0"W
90°0'0"W
75°0'0"W
60°0'0"W
90°0'0"N
75°0'0"N
60°0'0"N
45°0'0"N
30°0'0"N

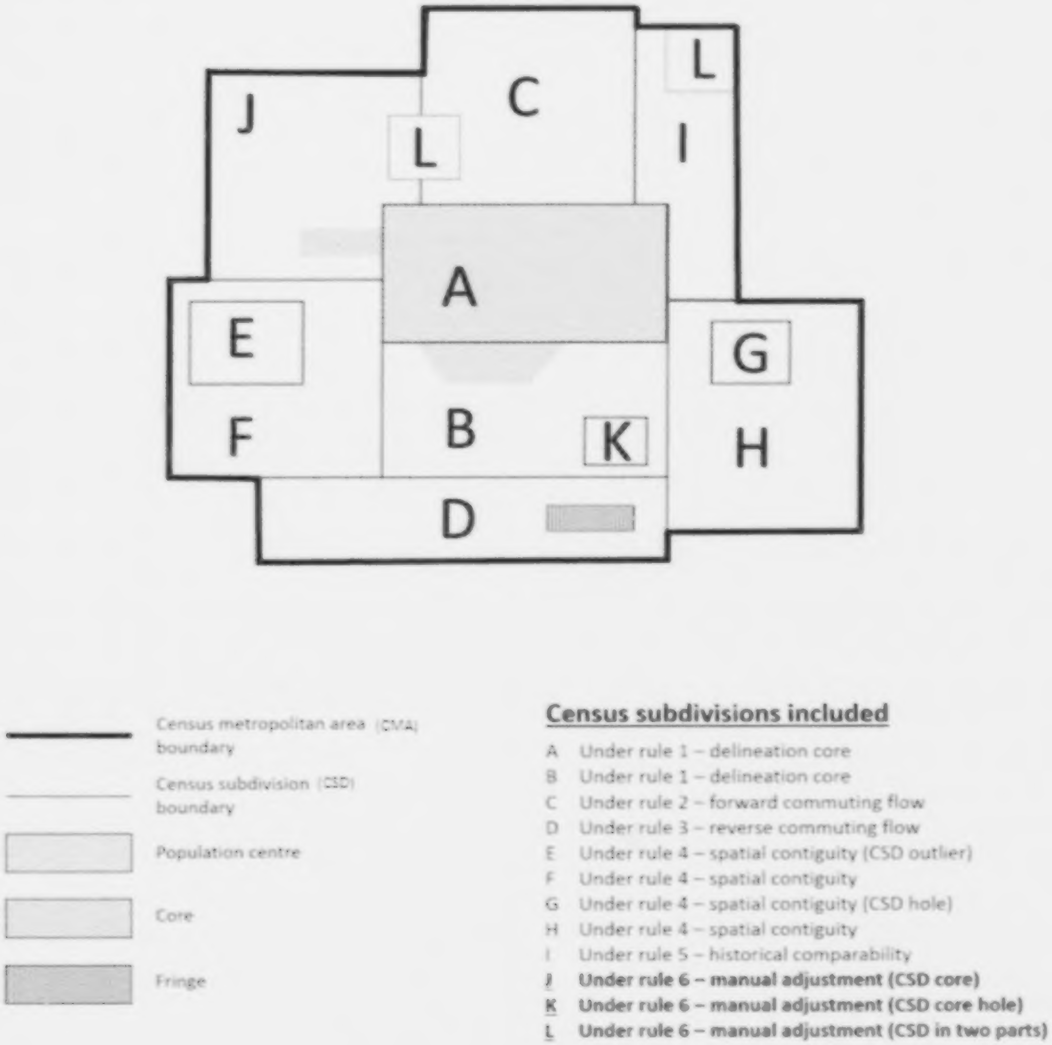
Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.15
Example of blockface and dissemination block representative points


x Blockface representative point
+ Dissemination block representative point
•••••••• Census subdivision boundary

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 1.16
Manual adjustment rule

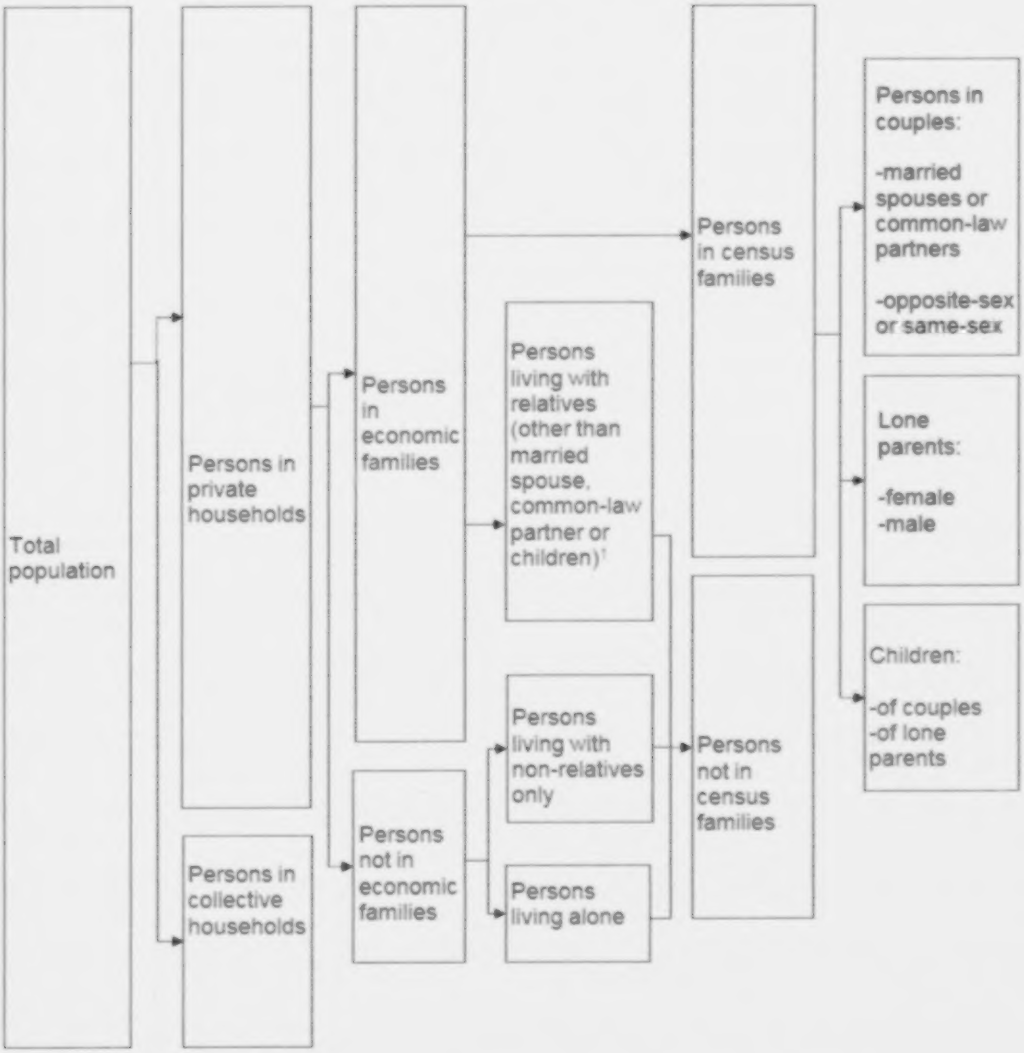

J
L
C
L
I
A
E
G
F
B
K
H
D
Census metropolitan area (CMA) boundary
Census subdivision (CSD) boundary
Population centre
Core
Fringe

Census subdivisions included

A	Under rule 1 – delineation core
B	Under rule 1 – delineation core
C	Under rule 2 – forward commuting flow
D	Under rule 3 – reverse commuting flow
E	Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity (CSD outlier)
F	Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity
G	Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity (CSD hole)
H	Under rule 4 – spatial contiguity
I	Under rule 5 – historical comparability
J	**Under rule 6 – manual adjustment (CSD core)**
K	**Under rule 6 – manual adjustment (CSD core hole)**
L	**Under rule 6 – manual adjustment (CSD in two parts)**

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Figure 3.1
Family membership and family status

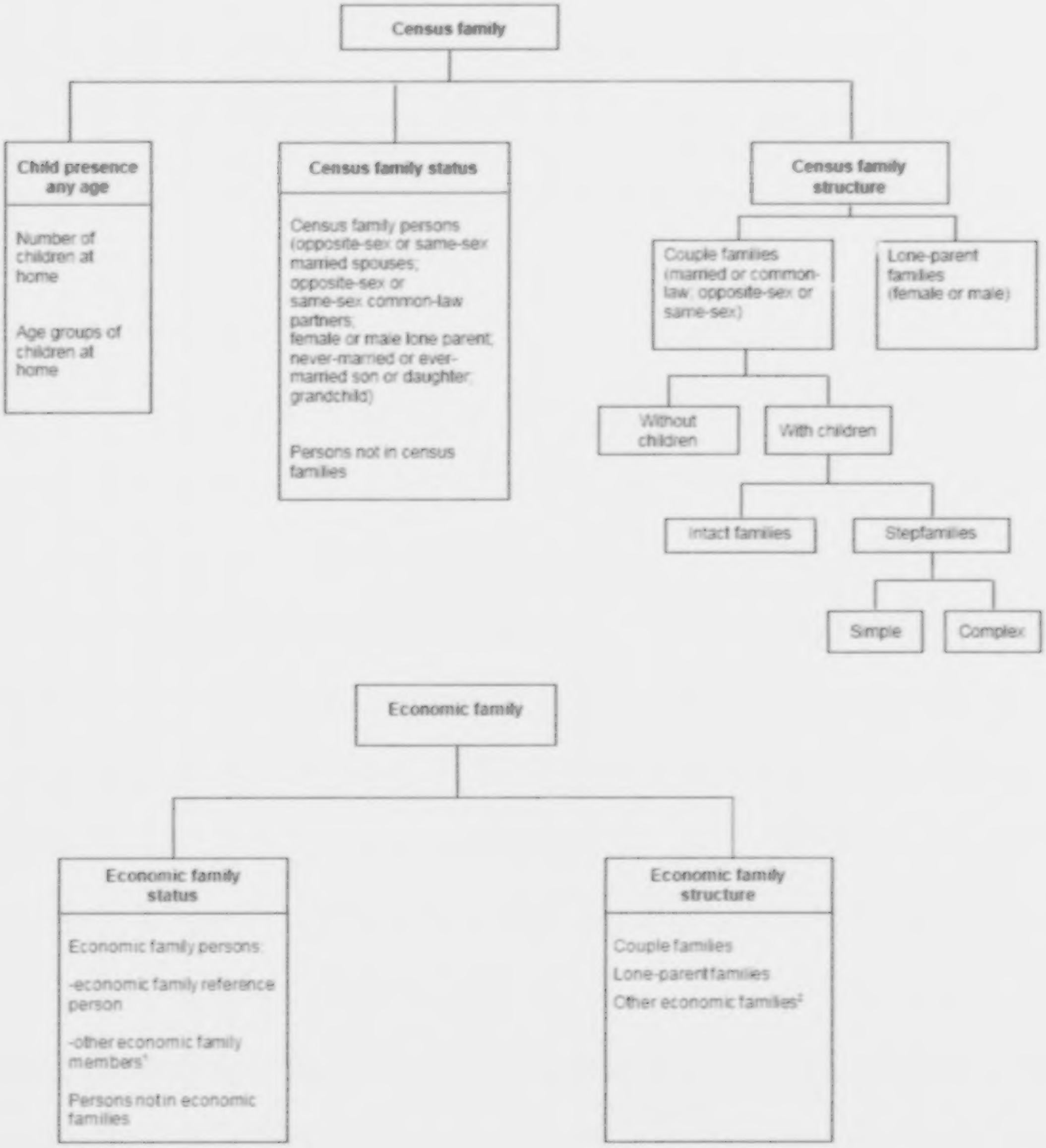

Total population
Persons in private households
Persons in collective households
Persons in economic families
Persons not in economic families
Persons living with relatives (other than married spouse, common-law partner or children)[1]
Persons living with non-relatives only
Persons living alone
Persons in census families
Persons not in census families
Persons in couples:
-married spouses or common-law partners
-opposite-sex or same-sex
Lone parents:
-female
-male
Children:
-of couples
-of lone parents

---

1. Foster children are included.

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

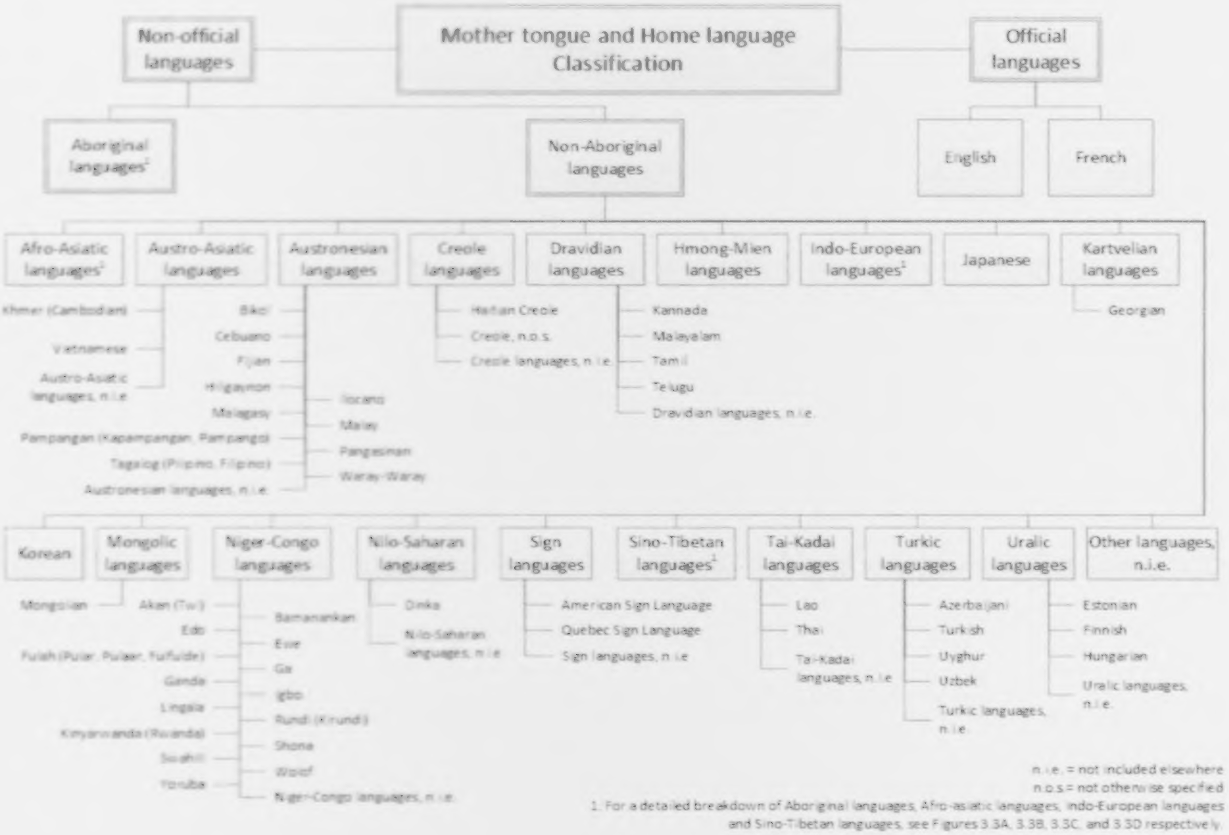
Figure 3.2
Overview of the census family and economic family variables


Census family
Child presence any age
Number of children at home
Age groups of children at home
Census family status
Census family persons (opposite-sex or same-sex married spouses; opposite-sex or same-sex common-law partners; female or male lone parent; never-married or ever-married son or daughter; grandchild)
Persons not in census families
Census family structure
Couple families (married or common-law; opposite-sex or same-sex)
Lone-parent families (female or male)
Without children
With children
Intact families
Stepfamilies
Simple
Complex
Economic family
Economic family status
Economic family persons:
-economic family reference person
-other economic family members¹
Persons not in economic families
Economic family structure
Couple families
Lone-parent families
Other economic families²

1. Foster children are included.
2. Economic families in which the economic family reference person lives with other relatives but does not have a married spouse, common-law partner or child.

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

Figure 3.3
Mother tongue and home language classification

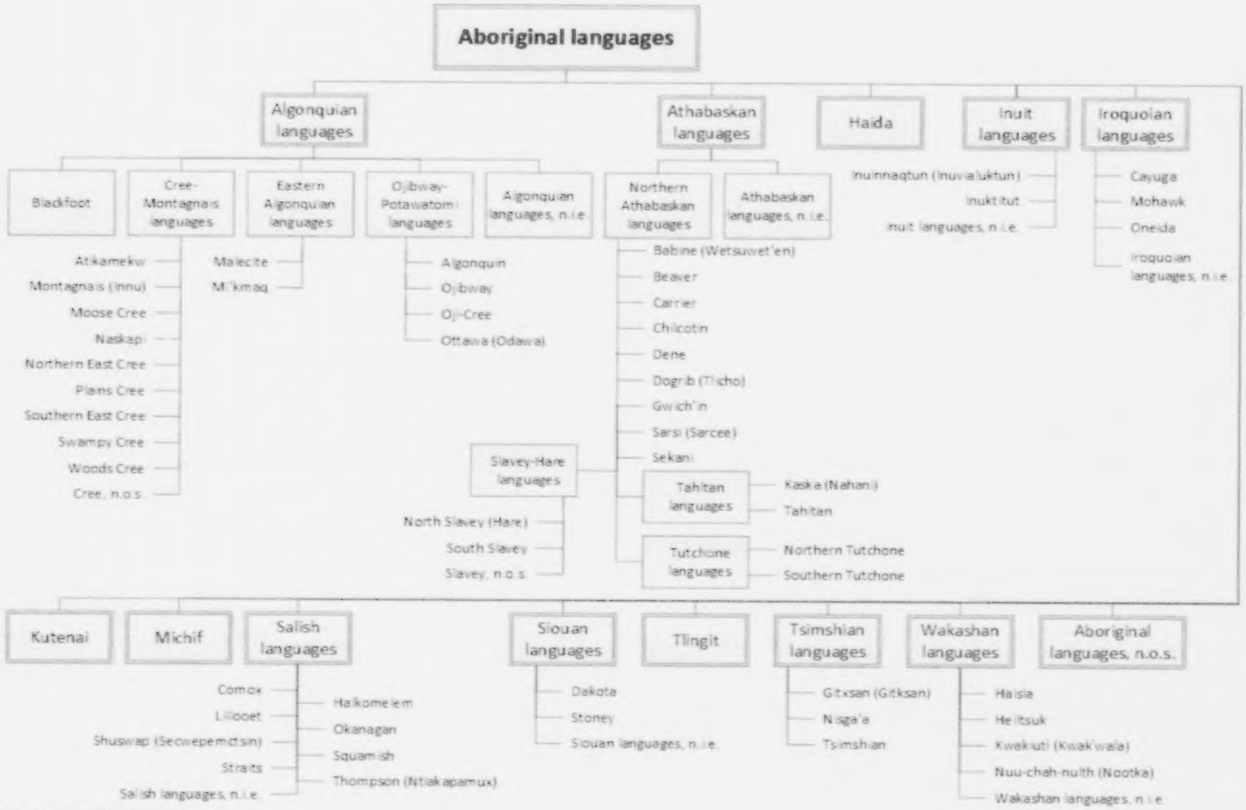

Mother tongue and Home language Classification
Non-official languages
Official languages
Aboriginal languages[1]
Non-Aboriginal languages
English
French
Afro-Asiatic languages[1]
Austro-Asiatic languages
Khmer (Cambodian)
Vietnamese
Austro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.
Austronesian languages
Bikol
Cebuano
Fijian
Hiligaynon
Malagasy
Pampangan (Kapampangan, Pampango)
Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)
Austronesian languages, n.i.e.
Ilocano
Malay
Pangasinan
Waray-Waray
Creole languages
Haitian Creole
Creole, n.o.s.
Creole languages, n.i.e.
Dravidian languages
Kannada
Malayalam
Tamil
Telugu
Dravidian languages, n.i.e.
Hmong-Mien languages
Indo-European languages[1]
Japanese
Kartvelian languages
Georgian
Korean
Mongolic languages
Mongolian
Niger-Congo languages
Akan (Twi)
Edo
Fulah (Pular, Pulaar, Fulfulde)
Ganda
Lingala
Kinyarwanda (Rwanda)
Swahili
Yoruba
Bamanankan
Ewe
Ga
Igbo
Rundi (Kirundi)
Shona
Wolof
Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.
Nilo-Saharan languages
Dinka
Nilo-Saharan languages, n.i.e.
Sign languages
American Sign Language
Quebec Sign Language
Sign languages, n.i.e.
Sino-Tibetan languages[1]
Tai-Kadai languages
Lao
Thai
Tai-Kadai languages, n.i.e.
Turkic languages
Azerbaijani
Turkish
Uyghur
Uzbek
Turkic languages, n.i.e.
Uralic languages
Estonian
Finnish
Hungarian
Uralic languages, n.i.e.
Other languages, n.i.e.

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere
n.o.s = not otherwise specified

1. For a detailed breakdown of Aboriginal languages, Afro-asiatic languages, Indo-European languages and Sino-Tibetan languages, see Figures 3.3A, 3.3B, 3.3C, and 3.3D respectively.

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

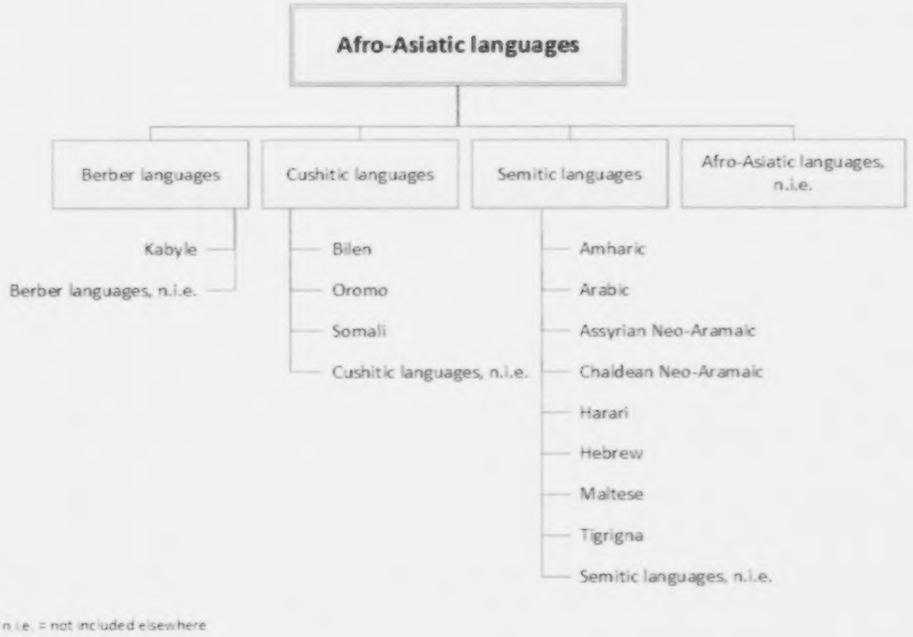
Figure 3.3A
Aboriginal languages


Aboriginal languages
Algonquian languages
Blackfoot
Cree-Montagnais languages
Atikamekw
Montagnais (Innu)
Moose Cree
Naskapi
Northern East Cree
Plains Cree
Southern East Cree
Swampy Cree
Woods Cree
Cree, n.o.s.
Eastern Algonquian languages
Malecite
Mi'kmaq
Ojibway-Potawatomi languages
Algonquin
Ojibway
Oji-Cree
Ottawa (Odawa)
Algonquian languages, n.i.e.
Athabaskan languages
Northern Athabaskan languages
Babine (Wetsuwet'en)
Beaver
Carrier
Chilcotin
Dene
Dogrib (Tlicho)
Gwich'in
Sarsi (Sarcee)
Sekani
Slavey-Hare languages
North Slavey (Hare)
South Slavey
Slavey, n.o.s.
Tahltan languages
Kaska (Nahani)
Tahltan
Tutchone languages
Northern Tutchone
Southern Tutchone
Athabaskan languages, n.i.e.
Haida
Inuit languages
Inuinnaqtun (Inuvialuktun)
Inuktitut
Inuit languages, n.i.e.
Iroquoian languages
Cayuga
Mohawk
Oneida
Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.
Kutenai
Michif
Salish languages
Comox
Lillooet
Shuswap (Secwepemctsin)
Straits
Salish languages, n.i.e.
Halkomelem
Okanagan
Squamish
Thompson (Ntlakapamux)
Siouan languages
Dakota
Stoney
Siouan languages, n.i.e.
Tlingit
Tsimshian languages
Gitxsan (Gitksan)
Nisga'a
Tsimshian
Wakashan languages
Haisla
Heiltsuk
Kwakiutl (Kwak'wala)
Nuu-chah-nulth (Nootka)
Wakashan languages, n.i.e.
Aboriginal languages, n.o.s.

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere
n.o.s.= not otherwise specified

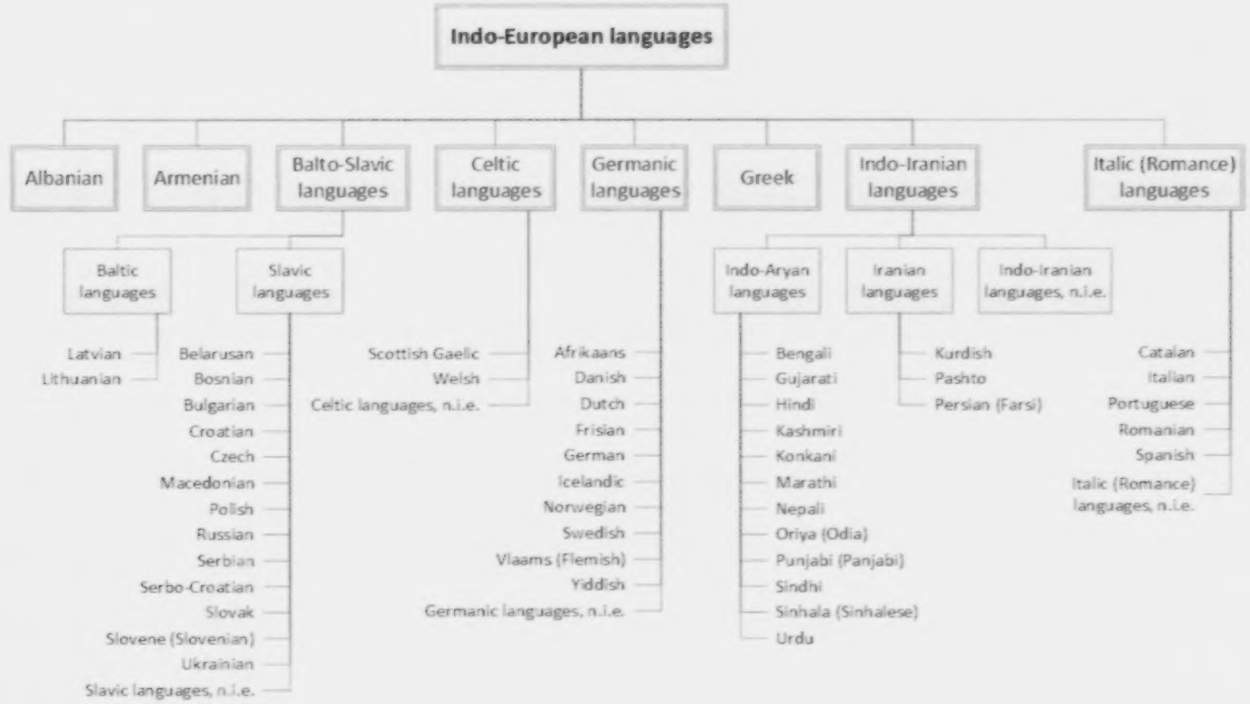
Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

Figure 3.3B
Afro-Asiatic languages


Afro-Asiatic languages
Berber languages
Cushitic languages
Semitic languages
Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.
Kabyle
Berber languages, n.i.e.
Bilen
Oromo
Somali
Cushitic languages, n.i.e.
Amharic
Arabic
Assyrian Neo-Aramaic
Chaldean Neo-Aramaic
Harari
Hebrew
Maltese
Tigrigna
Semitic languages, n.i.e.
n.i.e. = not included elsewhere

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

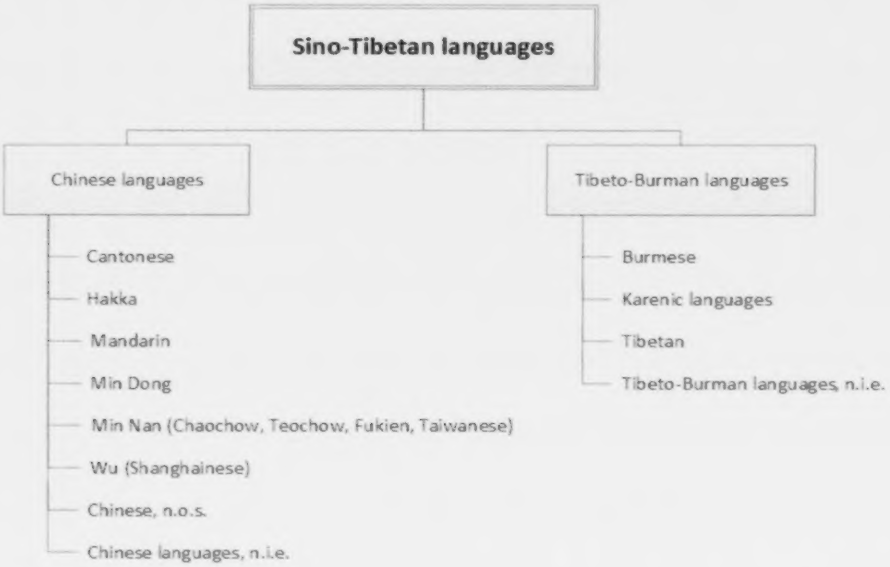
Figure 3.3C
Indo-European languages


Indo-European languages
Albanian
Armenian
Balto-Slavic languages
Celtic languages
Germanic languages
Greek
Indo-Iranian languages
Italic (Romance) languages
Baltic languages
Slavic languages
Indo-Aryan languages
Iranian languages
Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.
Latvian
Lithuanian
Belarusan
Bosnian
Bulgarian
Croatian
Czech
Macedonian
Polish
Russian
Serbian
Serbo-Croatian
Slovak
Slovene (Slovenian)
Ukrainian
Slavic languages, n.i.e.
Scottish Gaelic
Welsh
Celtic languages, n.i.e.
Afrikaans
Danish
Dutch
Frisian
German
Icelandic
Norwegian
Swedish
Vlaams (Flemish)
Yiddish
Germanic languages, n.i.e.
Bengali
Gujarati
Hindi
Kashmiri
Konkani
Marathi
Nepali
Oriya (Odia)
Punjabi (Panjabi)
Sindhi
Sinhala (Sinhalese)
Urdu
Kurdish
Pashto
Persian (Farsi)
Catalan
Italian
Portuguese
Romanian
Spanish
Italic (Romance) languages, n.i.e.

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

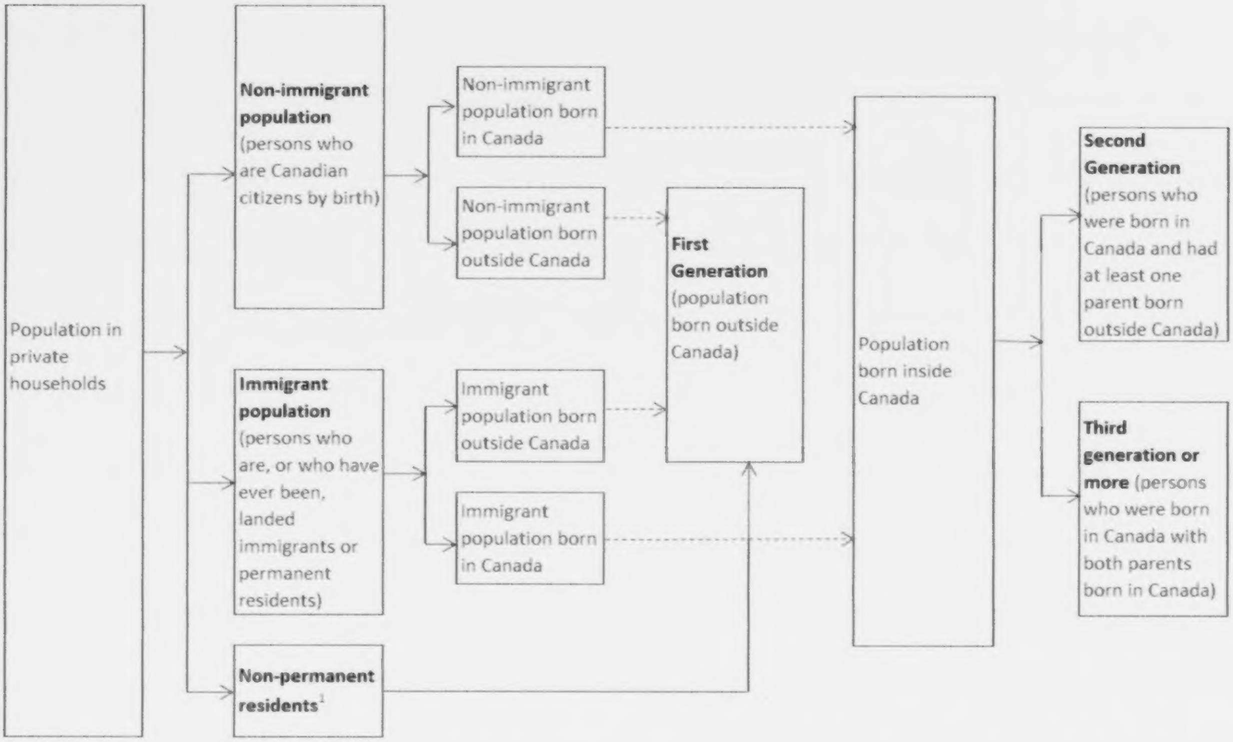
Figure 3.3D
Sino-Tibetan languages


Sino-Tibetan languages
Chinese languages
Cantonese
Hakka
Mandarin
Min Dong
Min Nan (Chaochow, Teochow, Fukien, Taiwanese)
Wu (Shanghainese)
Chinese, n.o.s.
Chinese languages, n.i.e.
Tibeto-Burman languages
Burmese
Karenic languages
Tibetan
Tibeto-Burman languages, n.i.e.

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere
n.o.s = not otherwise specified

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

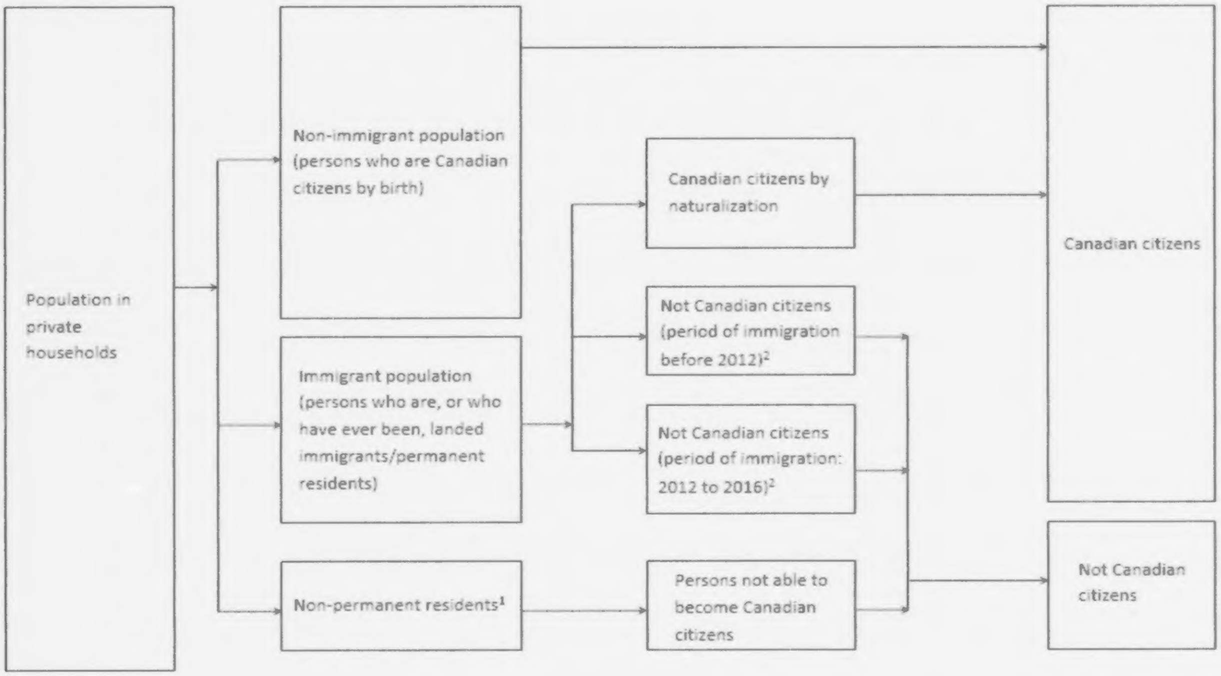
Figure 5.1
Immigrants, non-immigrants and non-permanent residents, by place of birth and generation status


Population in private households
Non-immigrant population (persons who are Canadian citizens by birth)
Immigrant population (persons who are, or who have ever been, landed immigrants or permanent residents)
Non-permanent residents[1]
Non-immigrant population born in Canada
Non-immigrant population born outside Canada
Immigrant population born outside Canada
Immigrant population born in Canada
First Generation (population born outside Canada)
Population born inside Canada
Second Generation (persons who were born in Canada and had at least one parent born outside Canada)
Third generation or more (persons who were born in Canada with both parents born in Canada)

1. 'Non-permanent residents' includes persons from another country who have a work or study permit or who are refugee claimants, and their family members sharing the same permit and living in Canada with them.

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

Figure 5.2
Immigrants, non-immigrants and non-permanent residents, by citizenship

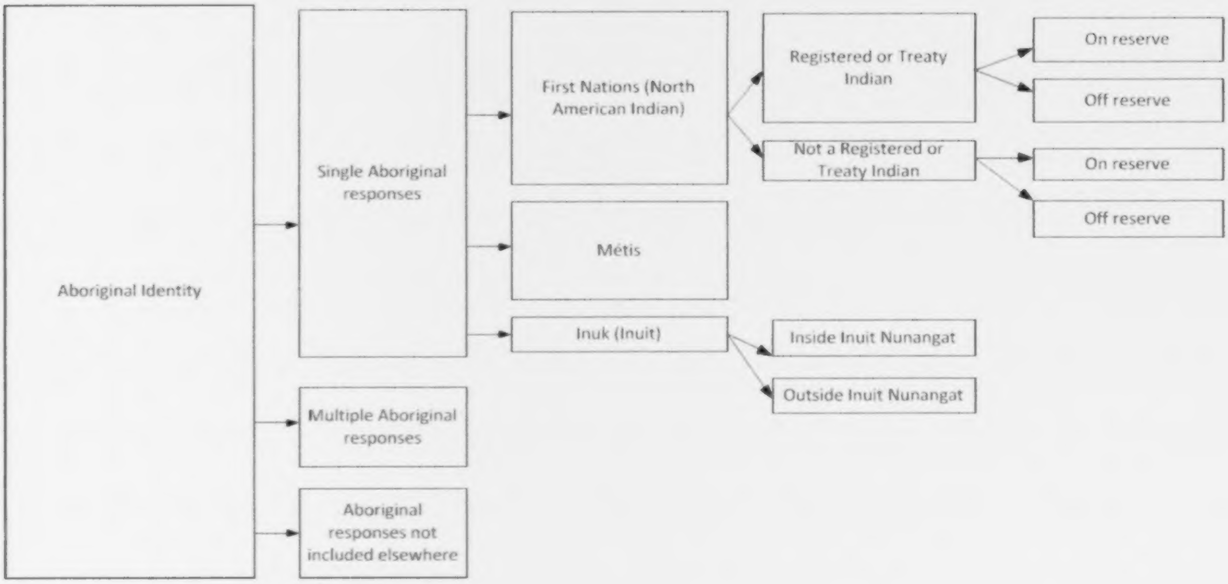

Population in private households
Non-immigrant population (persons who are Canadian citizens by birth)
Immigrant population (persons who are, or who have ever been, landed immigrants/permanent residents)
Non-permanent residents1
Canadian citizens by naturalization
Not Canadian citizens (period of immigration before 2012)2
Not Canadian citizens (period of immigration: 2012 to 2016)2
Persons not able to become Canadian citizens
Canadian citizens
Not Canadian citizens

---

1. 'Non-permanent residents' includes persons from another country who have a work or study permit or who are refugee claimants, and their family members sharing the same permit and living in Canada with them.
2. Landed immigrants (permanent residents) must have resided in Canada for a minimum of four years before becoming eligible for Canadian citizenship.

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

Figure 5.3
Aboriginal identity population in the Census of Population


Aboriginal Identity
Single Aboriginal responses
Multiple Aboriginal responses
Aboriginal responses not included elsewhere
First Nations (North American Indian)
Métis
Inuk (Inuit)
Registered or Treaty Indian
Not a Registered or Treaty Indian
On reserve
Off reserve
On reserve
Off reserve
Inside Inuit Nunangat
Outside Inuit Nunangat

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

Figure 5.3 shows some ways in which the Aboriginal identity population can be broken down using other census variables. The breakdown includes Registered or Treaty Indian status and two geographical variables – Residence on or off reserve and Residence inside or outside Inuit Nunangat to examine the makeup of the Aboriginal identity population. It is important to note, however, that there are various ways to define the Aboriginal population using data from the 2016 Census depending on the focus and the requirements of the data user.

The Aboriginal identity population includes all people who indicated that they:

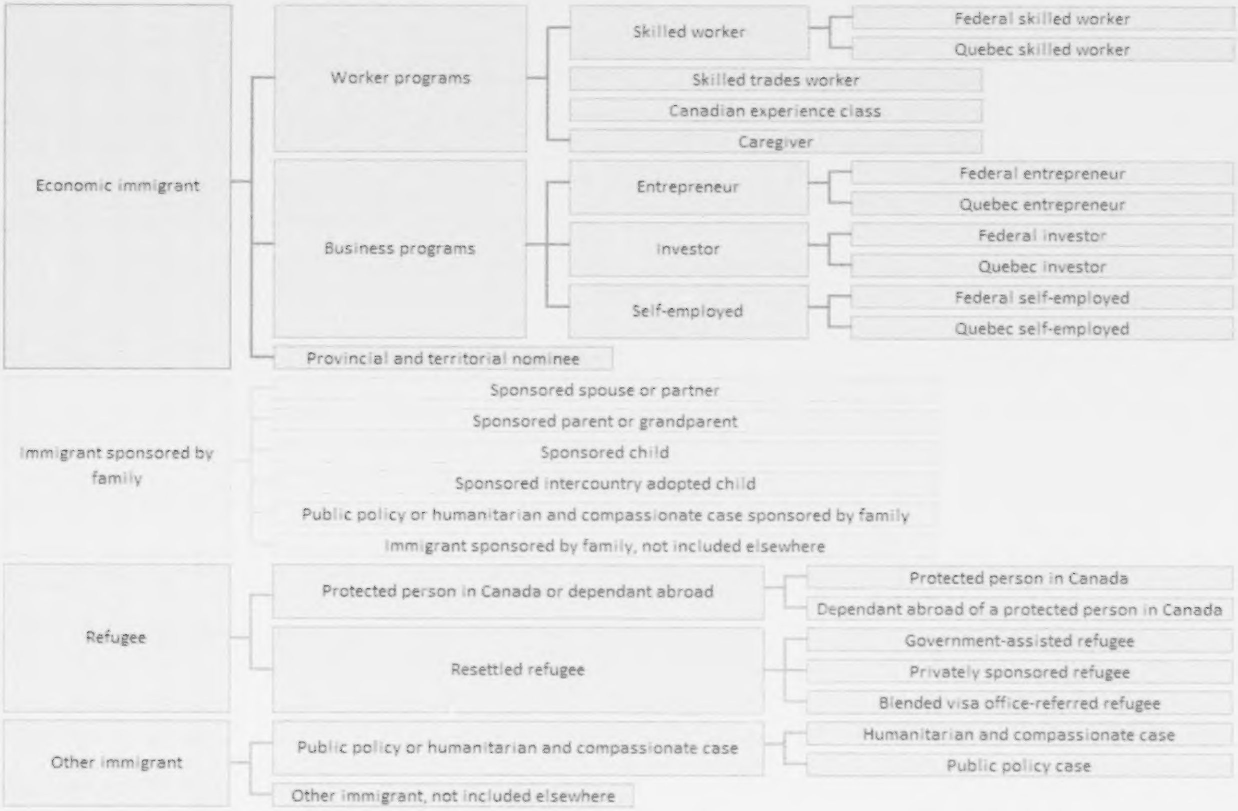
1. are First Nations (North American Indian), Métis or Inuk (Inuit); and/or
2. have Registered or Treaty Indian (that is, registered under the *Indian Act*) status; and/or
3. have Membership in a First Nation or Indian band.

The Aboriginal identity population can be further divided based on whether a respondent is in one Aboriginal group only, in two or more Aboriginal groups, or not in an Aboriginal group but has Registered or Treaty Indian status and/or a membership in a First Nation/Indian band:

1. Single Aboriginal response includes people who are First Nations (North American Indian), or Métis or Inuk (Inuit);
2. Multiple Aboriginal responses include people who are any two or all three of: First Nations (North American Indian), Métis or Inuk (Inuit);
3. Aboriginal responses not included elsewhere include people who are not First Nations (North American Indian), Métis or Inuk (Inuit), but have Registered or Treaty Indian status and/or that they were a member of a First Nation/Indian band.

Single Aboriginal responses can be further divided by geographic variables. In particular, the Inuit population can be further divided by Residence inside or outside Inuit Nunangat. The First Nations population can be further divided by Residence on or off reserve. The First Nations population can also be categorized by whether a respondent has or does not have Registered or Treaty Indian status.

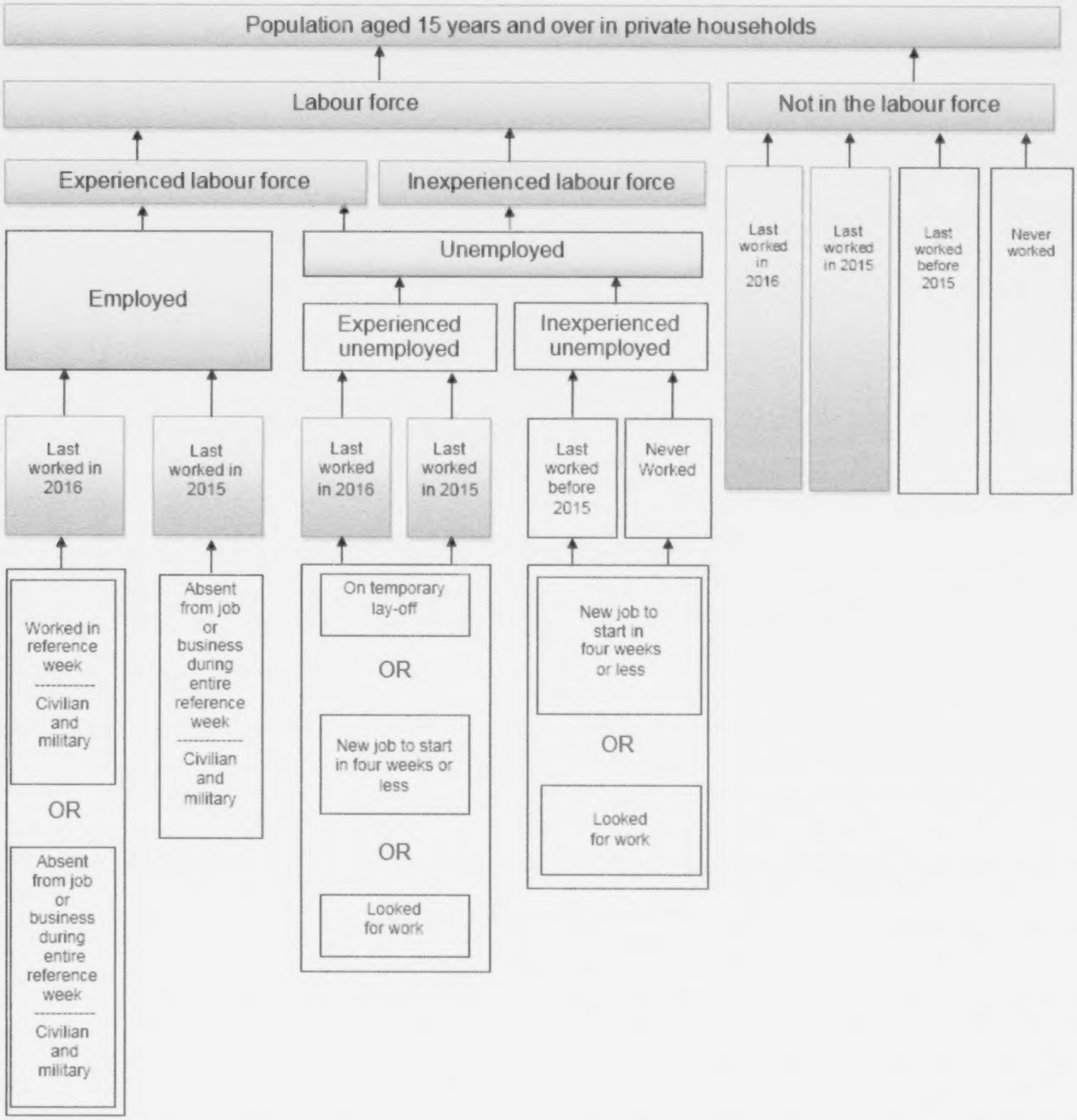
Figure 5.4
Admission category classification


Economic immigrant
Worker programs
Skilled worker
Federal skilled worker
Quebec skilled worker
Skilled trades worker
Canadian experience class
Caregiver
Business programs
Entrepreneur
Federal entrepreneur
Quebec entrepreneur
Investor
Federal investor
Quebec investor
Self-employed
Federal self-employed
Quebec self-employed
Provincial and territorial nominee
Immigrant sponsored by family
Sponsored spouse or partner
Sponsored parent or grandparent
Sponsored child
Sponsored intercountry adopted child
Public policy or humanitarian and compassionate case sponsored by family
Immigrant sponsored by family, not included elsewhere
Refugee
Protected person in Canada or dependant abroad
Protected person in Canada
Dependant abroad of a protected person in Canada
Resettled refugee
Government-assisted refugee
Privately sponsored refugee
Blended visa office-referred refugee
Other immigrant
Public policy or humanitarian and compassionate case
Humanitarian and compassionate case
Public policy case
Other immigrant, not included elsewhere

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

For more information, please refer to Appendix 5.5.

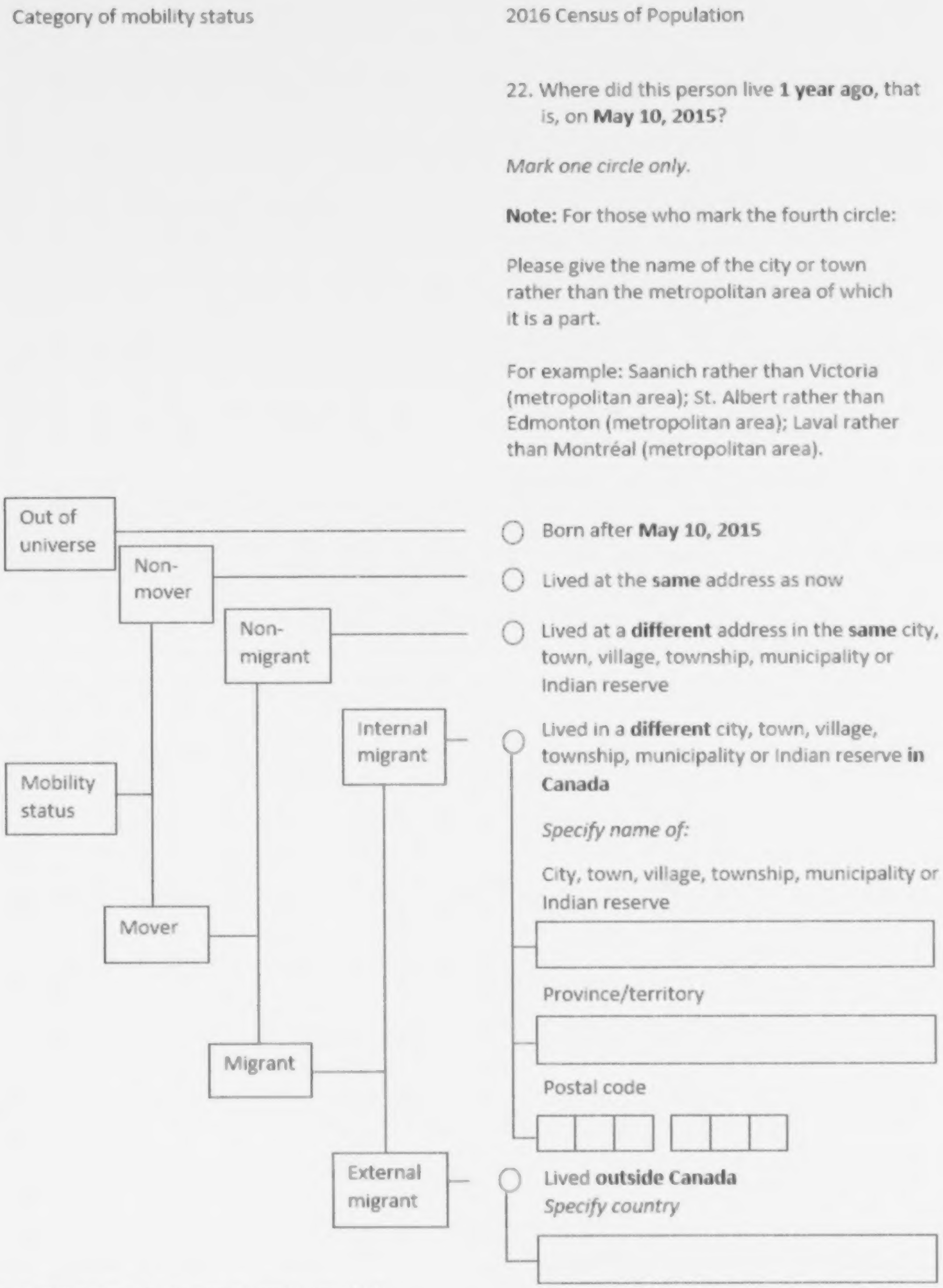
Figure 6.1
Population and labour force status components, 2016 Census of Population


Population aged 15 years and over in private households
Labour force
Not in the labour force
Experienced labour force
Inexperienced labour force
Last worked in 2016
Last worked in 2015
Last worked before 2015
Never worked
Unemployed
Employed
Experienced unemployed
Inexperienced unemployed
Last worked in 2016
Last worked in 2015
Last worked in 2016
Last worked in 2015
Last worked before 2015
Never Worked
Worked in reference week
Civilian and military
OR
Absent from job or business during entire reference week
Civilian and military
Absent from job or business during entire reference week
Civilian and military
On temporary lay-off
OR
New job to start in four weeks or less
OR
Looked for work
New job to start in four weeks or less
OR
Looked for work

▨ Has worked at some point in time between January 1, 2015 and May 2016. (Industry, occupation and class of worker data are available for these individuals.)

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

Figure 6.2
Relationship between the category of mobility status and the 2016 Census of Population question on place of residence one year ago


Category of mobility status
2016 Census of Population
Out of universe
Non-mover
Non-migrant
Internal migrant
Mobility status
Mover
Migrant
External migrant

22. Where did this person live **1 year ago**, that is, on **May 10, 2015**?

Mark one circle only.

Note: For those who mark the fourth circle:

Please give the name of the city or town rather than the metropolitan area of which it is a part.

For example: Saanich rather than Victoria (metropolitan area); St. Albert rather than Edmonton (metropolitan area); Laval rather than Montréal (metropolitan area).

○ Born after **May 10, 2015**

○ Lived at the **same** address as now

○ Lived at a **different** address in the **same** city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve

○ Lived in a **different** city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve **in Canada**

Specify name of:

City, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve

Province/territory

Postal code

○ Lived **outside Canada**
Specify country

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

Refer to the definition of 'Mobility status, one year.'

Figure 6.3
Relationship between the category of mobility status and the 2016 Census of Population question on place of residence five years ago

Category of mobility status

2016 Census of Population

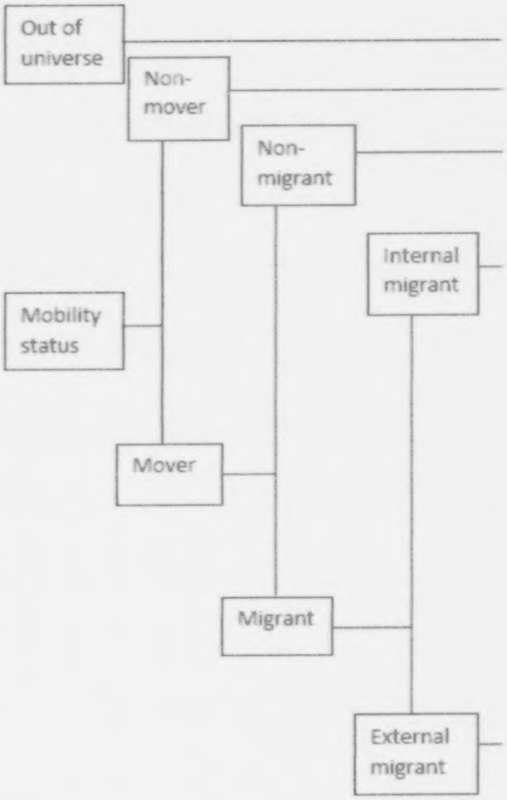
23. Where did this person live **5 years ago**, that is, on **May 10, 2011**?

Mark one circle only.

Note: For those who mark the fourth circle:

Please give the name of the city or town rather than the metropolitan area of which it is a part.

For example: Saanich rather than Victoria (metropolitan area); St. Albert rather than Edmonton (metropolitan area); Laval rather than Montréal (metropolitan area).



○ Born after **May 10, 2011**

○ Lived at the **same** address as now

○ Lived at a **different** address in the **same** city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve

○ Lived in a **different** city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve **in Canada**

Specify name of:

City, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve

Province/territory

Postal code

○ Lived **outside Canada**
Specify country

Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

Refer to the definition of 'Mobility status, five years.'

Appendices

Appendix 2.0 Census of Population and National Household Survey questionnaire content and derived variables since Confederation

	First time in census before 1981	Census of Population							National Household Survey 2011	Census of Population 2016
		1981	1986	1991	1996	2001	2006	2011		
Demographic characteristics										
Name	1871	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Date of birth	1871	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Age (in addition to date of birth)	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y
Sex	1871	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Marital status	1871	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Legal marital status	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Common-law status	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Mobility – Place of residence one year ago	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Mobility – Place of residence five years ago	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Number of moves since previous census	1971	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Date of first marriage	1941	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Number of children ever born	1941	Y	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
Ethno-cultural and language characteristics										
Knowledge of official languages	1901	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Knowledge of non-official languages	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Home language	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Mother tongue	1901	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Language of work	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Place of birth	1871	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Place of birth of parents	1891	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Generation status	1971	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Citizenship	1901	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Landed immigrant status	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Period/year of immigration	1901	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Age at immigration	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Ethnic origin	1871	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Registered or Treaty Indian status	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Membership in a First Nation or Indian band	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y

	First time in census before 1981	Census of Population							National Household Survey 2011	Census of Population 2016
		1981	1986	1991	1996	2001	2006	2011		
Aboriginal group	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Aboriginal identity	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Visible minority	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Population group	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Religion	1871	Y	N	Y	N	Y	N	N	Y	N
Activity limitations										
Long-term difficulties with daily living activities	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Activity limitations: at home	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	N
Activity limitations: at school or at work	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	N
Activity limitations: in other activities	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	N
Education										
School attendance	1871	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Highest grade of elementary or secondary schooling	1941	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
Years of schooling (university)	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
Years of schooling (other)	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
Total years of schooling	1941	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
Highest level of schooling	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
Secondary (high) school diploma or equivalent	1976	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Completion of full-time vocational course	1971	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Non-university certificate or diploma	1976	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Registered apprenticeship or other trades certificate or diploma	1981	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
College certificates or diplomas	1981	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
University certificates, diplomas, degrees	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Highest certificate, diploma or degree	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Major field of study	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Province of elementary or secondary schooling (or outside Canada)	1971	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Province, territory or country where highest certificate, diploma, degree (above high school) was completed	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	N	Y	Y

	First time in census before 1981	Census of Population							National Household Survey 2011	Census of Population 2016
		1981	1986	1991	1996	2001	2006	2011		
Household activities										
Unpaid housework	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N
Caring for children without pay	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N
Providing unpaid care/ assistance to seniors	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N
Labour market activities										
Actual hours worked last week	1951	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Usual hours worked each week	1911	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Last date of work	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Industry	1901	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Occupation	1871	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Class of worker	1891	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Weeks worked in reference year	1911	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Full-time/part-time work	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Temporary lay-off/absent from job	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
New job to start in four weeks or less	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Looked for work in past four weeks	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Availability for work	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Incorporation status	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Journey to work										
Place of work	1971	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Main mode of commuting	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Income characteristics										
Income in year previous to census year	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Wages and salaries	1901	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Net non-farm self-employment income	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Net farm self-employment income	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Family allowances	1961	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
Federal Child Tax Credits / child benefits	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Old Age Security pension (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS)	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y

	First time in census before 1981	Census of Population							National Household Survey 2011	Census of Population 2016
		1981	1986	1991	1996	2001	2006	2011		
Benefits from Canada or Québec Pension Plan (CPP/QPP)	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Benefits from Employment Insurance	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Other income from government sources	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Interest, dividends and other investment income	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Retirement pensions, superannuation, annuities	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Other money income	1961	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Income tax paid	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	N	Y	Y
Family and household characteristics										
Agricultural operator	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Household maintainer(s)	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Relationship to Person 1 or head of household	1891	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Family head (in addition to household head)	1921	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Tenure (owned/rented)	1921	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Tenure (condominium) – owner household	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Tenure (condominium) – renter household	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y
Tenure (band housing)	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Presence of mortgage	1941	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Who holds first mortgage	1971	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Number of persons per household	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Shelter costs – renter household	1941	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Reduction in rent (e.g., reduced rent by government subsidy)	1971	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Subsidized housing – renter household	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y
Automobiles available for personal use	1941	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Vacation home ownership	1971	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Major home appliances	1931	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Yearly payments of electricity	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y

	First time in census before 1981	Census of Population							National Household Survey 2011	Census of Population 2016
		1981	1986	1991	1996	2001	2006	2011		
Yearly payments of natural gas, oil, coal, wood, etc.	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Yearly payments of water and other municipal services	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Shelter costs – owner household	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Mortgage payments – owner household	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Property taxes – owner household	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Condominium fees – owner household living in a condominium	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Dwelling characteristics										
Number of rooms	1941	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Number of bedrooms	1971	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Number of bathrooms	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Period of construction	1941	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Condition of dwelling	N	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Structural type of dwelling	1941	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Value of dwelling	1941	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y	Y
Number of dwellings in the building	1941	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Garage	1971	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Piped running water in the dwelling	1941	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Bath or shower	1941	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Use of flush toilet in building	1941	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Unoccupied dwelling, reason for	1976	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Seasonal/marginal dwelling	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Length of occupancy	1941	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Source of water supply	1971	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Method of sewage disposal	1971	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Principal type of heating equipment	1941	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Principal fuel used for cooking	1971	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Principal fuel used for heating	1941	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Principal fuel used for water heating	1971	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

	First time in census before 1981	Census of Population							National Household Survey 2011	Census of Population 2016
		1981	1986	1991	1996	2001	2006	2011		
Coverage										
Did you leave anyone out?	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Household roster	1971	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Number of temporary residents	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N
Number of usual residents	1971	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Other										
Wartime service	1951	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Access to personal information 92 years after collection	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y

Symbols
N not included
Y included
Source: Statistics Canada, Census of Population, 2016.

Appendix 3.0 Mother tongue and home language, classifications from 2016, 2011 and 2006

Changes have been made to the language classification used in Statistics Canada data products. In this appendix, the 2011 and 2006 classifications are matched to the 2016 classification.

The individual language categories and the language family categories disseminated in 2016 Census data products do not always exist or match those present in 2011 and 2006. In most cases though, the corresponding language family total can be calculated for past years by adding all specific language categories of a language family. For example, the 2016 language family 'Balto-Slavic languages' did not exist in 2011 and 2006, however, the total for this language family can still be calculated for 2011 and 2006 by adding up the 2016 languages listed within this language family.

Please note that in the second part of the question on home language, the respondent had the option of marking the 'No' circle to indicate that there was no other language spoken on a regular basis.

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Official languages	Official languages	Official languages
English	English	English
French	French	French
Non-official languages	Non-official languages	Non-official languages
Aboriginal languages	Aboriginal languages	Aboriginal languages
Algonquian languages	Algonquian languages	Algonquian languages
Blackfoot	Blackfoot	Blackfoot
Cree-Montagnais languages	Not available	Not available
Atikamekw	Atikamekw	Atikamekw
Montagnais (Innu)[1]	Innu/Montagnais	Montagnais-Naskapi[2]
Moose Cree	Not available	Not available
Naskapi	Naskapi	Not available
Northern East Cree	Not available	Not available
Plains Cree	Plains Cree	Not available
Southern East Cree	Not available	Not available
Swampy Cree	Swampy Cree	Not available
Woods Cree	Woods Cree	Not available
Cree, n.o.s.	Cree, n.o.s.	Cree[3]
Eastern Algonquian languages	Not available	Not available
Malecite	Malecite	Malecite
Mi'kmaq	Mi'kmaq	Mi'kmaq
Ojibway-Potawatomi languages	Not available	Not available
Algonquin	Algonquin	Algonquin
Ojibway	Ojibway	Ojibway
Oji-Cree	Oji-Cree	Oji-Cree
Ottawa (Odawa)	Not available	Not available
Algonquian languages, n.i.e.	Algonquian languages, n.i.e.	Algonquian languages, n.i.e.
Athabaskan languages[4]	Athapaskan languages	Athapaskan languages
Northern Athabaskan languages	Not available	Not available
Babine (Wetsuwet'en)	Wetsuweten	Not available
Beaver	Beaver	Not available
Carrier	Carrier	Carrier

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Chilcotin	Chilcotin	Chilcotin
Dene[5]	Dene[5]	Dene
Dogrib (Tlicho)[4]	Tlicho (Dogrib)[6]	Dogrib
Gwich'in	Gwich'in[6]	Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)
Sarsi (Sarcee)[4]	Sarcee	Not available
Sekani	Sekani	Not available
Slavey-Hare languages	Not available	Not available
North Slavey (Hare)	North Slavey (Hare)[6]	North Slave (Hare)
South Slavey	South Slavey[6]	South Slave
Slavey, n.o.s.	Slavey, n.o.s.	Not available
Tahltan languages	Not available	Not available
Kaska (Nahani)	Kaska (Nahani)	Not available
Tahltan	Tahltan	Not available
Tutchone languages[7]	Not available	Not available
Northern Tutchone	Northern Tutchone	Not available
Southern Tutchone	Southern Tutchone	Not available
Athabaskan languages, n.i.e.[4]	Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.	Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.
Haida	Haida	Haida
Inuit languages	Inuit languages	Inuktitut[8]
Inuinnaqtun (Inuvialuktun)[9,10]	Inuinnaqtun	Inuinnaqtun
Inuktitut	Inuktitut	Not available
Inuit languages, n.i.e.	Inuit languages, n.i.e.	Inuktitut, n.i.e.[11]
Iroquoian languages	Iroquoian languages	Iroquoian languages
Cayuga	Cayuga	Not available
Mohawk	Mohawk	Mohawk
Oneida	Oneida	Not available
Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.	Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.	Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.
Kutenai	Kutenai	Kutenai
Michif	Michif	Not available
Salish languages	Salish languages	Salish languages
Comox	Not available	Not available
Halkomelem	Halkomelem	Not available
Lillooet	Lillooet	Not available
Okanagan	Okanagan	Not available
Shuswap (Secwepemctsin)	Shuswap (Secwepemctsin)[6]	Shuswap
Squamish	Squamish	Not available
Straits	Straits	Not available
Thompson (Ntlakapamux)	Thompson (Ntlakapamux)	Thompson (Ntlakapamux)
Salish languages, n.i.e.	Salish languages, n.i.e.	Salish languages, n.i.e.
Siouan languages	Siouan languages[6]	Siouan languages (Dakcta/Sioux)
Dakota	Dakota	Not available
Stoney	Stoney	Not available
Siouan languages, n.i.e.	Siouan languages, n.i.e.	Not available
Tlingit	Tlingit	Tlingit

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Tsimshian languages	Tsimshian languages	Tsimshian languages
Gitxsan (Gitksan)[4]	Gitksan	Gitksan
Nisga'a	Nisga'a	Nisga'a
Tsimshian	Tsimshian	Tsimshian
Wakashan languages	Wakashan languages	Wakashan languages
Haisla	Haisla	Not available
Heiltsuk	Heiltsuk	Not available
Kwakiutl (Kwak'wala)	Kwakiutl (Kwak'wala)	Not available
Nuu-chah-nulth (Nootka)[4]	Nootka (Nuu-chah-nulth)[6]	Nootka
Wakashan languages, n.i.e.	Wakashan languages, n.i.e.	Wakashan languages, n.i.e.
Aboriginal languages, n.o.s.[12]	Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.	Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.
Non-Aboriginal languages	Non-Aboriginal languages	Non-Aboriginal languages
Afro-Asiatic languages	Afro-Asiatic languages	Afro-Asiatic languages
Berber languages[4]	Berber languages (Kabyle)	Berber languages (Kabyle)
Kabyle	Not available	Not available
Berber languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Cushitic languages	Cushitic languages	Cushitic languages
Bilen	Not available	Not available
Oromo	Oromo	Oromo
Somali	Somali	Somali
Cushitic languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Semitic languages	Semitic languages	Semitic languages
Amharic	Amharic	Amharic
Arabic	Arabic	Arabic
Assyrian Neo-Aramaic	Not available	Not available
Chaldean Neo-Aramaic	Not available	Not available
Harari	Not available	Not available
Hebrew	Hebrew	Hebrew
Maltese	Maltese	Maltese
Tigrigna	Tigrigna	Tigrigna
Semitic languages, n.i.e.	Semitic languages, n.i.e.	Semitic languages, n.i.e.
Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.
Austro-Asiatic languages	Austro-Asiatic languages	Austro-Asiatic languages
Khmer (Cambodian)	Khmer (Cambodian)	Khmer (Cambodian)
Vietnamese	Vietnamese	Vietnamese
Austro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e	Not available	Not available
Austronesian languages[4]	Malayo-Polynesian languages	Malayo-Polynesian languages
Bikol	Bikol	Not available
Cebuano	Not available	Not available
Fijian	Fijian	Not available
Hiligaynon	Not available	Not available
Ilocano	Ilocano	Ilocano
Malagasy	Malagasy	Not available
Malay	Malay	Malay

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Pampangan (Kapampangan, Pampango)[4]	Pampango	Pampango
Pangasinan	Pangasinan	Not available
Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)	Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)	Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)
Waray-Waray	Not available	Not available
Austronesian languages, n.i.e.[4]	Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.	Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.
Creole languages[4]	Creoles	Creoles
Haitian Creole	Not available	Not available
Creole, n.o.s.	Not available	Not available
Creole languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Dravidian languages	Dravidian languages	Dravidian languages
Kannada	Kannada	Kannada
Malayalam	Malayalam	Malayalam
Tamil	Tamil	Tamil
Telugu	Telugu	Telugu
Dravidian languages, n.i.e.	Dravidian languages, n.i.e.	Dravidian languages, n.i.e.
Hmong-Mien languages	Not available	Not available
Indo-European languages	Not available	Not available
Albanian	Albanian	Not available
Armenian	Armenian	Armenian
Balto-Slavic languages	Not available	Not available
Baltic languages	Baltic languages	Baltic languages
Latvian	Latvian	Latvian
Lithuanian	Lithuanian	Lithuanian
Slavic languages	Slavic languages	Slavic languages
Belarusan[4]	Belarusian (Byelorussian)[6]	Belarusan (Byelorussian)
Bosnian	Bosnian	Bosnian
Bulgarian	Bulgarian	Bulgarian
Croatian	Croatian	Croatian
Czech	Czech	Czech
Macedonian	Macedonian	Macedonian
Polish	Polish	Polish
Russian	Russian	Russian
Serbian	Serbian	Serbian
Serbo-Croatian	Serbo-Croatian	Serbo-Croatian
Slovak	Slovak	Slovak
Slovene (Slovenian)[4]	Slovenian	Slovenian
Ukrainian	Ukrainian	Ukrainian
Slavic languages, n.i.e.	Slavic languages, n.i.e.	Slavic languages, n.i.e.
Celtic languages	Celtic languages	Celtic languages
Scottish Gaelic	Gaelic languages[13]	Gaelic languages[13]
Welsh	Welsh	Welsh
Celtic languages, n.i.e.[14]	Celtic languages, n.i.e.	Celtic languages, n.i.e.

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Germanic languages	Germanic languages	Germanic languages
Afrikaans	Afrikaans	Not available
Danish	Danish	Danish
Dutch	Dutch	Dutch
Frisian	Frisian	Frisian
German	German	German
Icelandic	Icelandic	Icelandic
Norwegian	Norwegian	Norwegian
Swedish	Swedish	Swedish
Vlaams (Flemish)[4]	Flemish	Flemish
Yiddish	Yiddish	Yiddish
Germanic languages, n.i.e.	Germanic languages, n.i.e.	Germanic languages, n.i.e.[15]
Greek	Greek	Greek
Indo-Iranian languages	Indo-Iranian languages	Indo-Iranian languages
Indo-Aryan languages	Indo-Aryan languages	Not available
Bengali	Bengali	Bengali
Gujarati	Gujarati	Gujarati
Hindi	Hindi	Hindi
Kashmiri	Not available	Not available
Konkani	Konkani	Konkani
Marathi	Marathi	Marathi
Nepali	Nepali	Not available
Oriya (Odia)	Not available	Not available
Punjabi (Panjabi)[4]	Panjabi (Punjabi)	Panjabi (Punjabi)
Sindhi	Sindhi	Sindhi
Sinhala (Sinhalese)	Sinhala (Sinhalese)	Sinhala (Sinhalese)
Urdu	Urdu	Urdu
Iranian languages	Iranian languages	Iranian languages
Kurdish	Kurdish	Kurdish
Pashto	Pashto	Pashto
Persian (Farsi)	Persian (Farsi)	Persian (Farsi)
Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.	Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.	Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.
Italic (Romance) languages[4]	Romance languages	Romance languages
Catalan	Catalan	Not available
Italian	Italian	Italian
Portuguese	Portuguese	Portuguese
Romanian	Romanian	Romanian
Spanish	Spanish	Spanish
Italic (Romance) languages, n.i.e.[4]	Romance languages, n.i.e.	Romance languages, n.i.e.
Japanese	Japanese	Japanese
Kartvelian languages	Not available	Not available
Georgian	Georgian	Not available
Korean	Korean	Korean

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Mongolic languages	Not available	Not available
Mongolian	Mongolian	Not available
Niger-Congo languages	Niger-Congo languages	Niger-Congo languages
Akan (Twi)	Akan (Twi)	Akan (Twi)
Bamanankan	Bamanankan	Not available
Edo	Edo	Edo
Ewe	Ewe	Not available
Fulah (Pular, Pulaar, Fulfulde)	Not available	Not available
Ga	Ga	Not available
Ganda	Ganda	Not available
Igbo	Igbo	Igbo
Lingala	Lingala	Lingala
Rundi (Kirundi)	Rundi (Kirundi)	Rundi (Kirundi)
Kinyarwanda (Rwanda)[4]	Rwanda (Kinyarwanda)	Rwanda (Kinyarwanda)
Shona	Shona	Shona
Swahili	Swahili	Swahili
Wolof	Wolof	Wolof
Yoruba	Not available	Not available
Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.	Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.	Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.
Nilo-Saharan languages	Not available	Not available
Dinka	Not available	Not available
Nilo-Saharan languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Sign languages[4]	Non-verbal languages	Non-verbal languages
American Sign Language	American Sign Language	American Sign Language
Quebec Sign Language	Quebec Sign Language	Quebec Sign Language
Sign languages, n.i.e	Sign languages, n.i.e	Sign languages, n.i.e
Sino-Tibetan languages	Sino-Tibetan languages	Sino-Tibetan languages
Chinese languages	Chinese languages	Chinese languages
Cantonese	Cantonese	Cantonese
Hakka	Hakka	Hakka
Mandarin	Mandarin	Mandarin
Min Dong	Not available	Not available
Min Nan (Chaochow, Teochow, Fukien, Taiwanese)[16]	Not available	Not available
Wu (Shanghainese)[4]	Shanghainese	Shanghainese
Chinese, n.o.s.	Chinese, n.o.s.[17]	Chinese, n.o.s.[17]
Chinese languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Tibeto-Burman languages	Not available	Not available
Burmese	Burmese	Not available
Karenic languages	Not available	Not available
Tibetan	Tibetan languages[18]	Tibetan languages[18]
Tibeto-Burman languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Tai-Kadai languages[4]	Tai languages	Tai languages
Lao	Lao	Lao

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Thai	Thai	Thai
Tai-Kadai languages, n.i.e	Not available	Not available
Turkic languages	Turkic languages	Turkic languages
Azerbaijani	Azerbaijani	Azerbaijani
Turkish	Turkish	Turkish
Uyghur	Not available	Not available
Uzbek	Not available	Not available
Turkic languages, n.i.e.	Turkic languages, n.i.e.	Turkic languages, n.i.e.
Uralic languages[4]	Finno-Ugric languages	Finno-Ugric languages
Estonian	Estonian	Estonian
Finnish	Finnish	Finnish
Hungarian	Hungarian	Hungarian
Uralic languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Other languages, n.i.e.[19]	Other languages	Other languages

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere
n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

1. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2011.
2. This category is equivalent to Montagnais (Innu) and Naskapi in 2016.
3. This category is equivalent to Cree, n.o.s., Swampy Cree, Plains Cree, Woods Cree, and Cree, n.i.e. in 2011, and to Cree, n.o.s., Woods Cree, Swampy Cree, Southern East Cree, Plains Cree, Northern East Cree, and Moose Cree in 2016.
4. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2011 and 2006.
5. This category is equivalent to Dene and Chipewyan in 2006.
6. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2006.
7. This category is equivalent to Northern Tutchone, Southern Tutchone, and Tutchone, n.o.s. in 2011.
8. In 2006, Inuktitut was the name of the language family that consisted of Inuinnaqtun and Inuktitut, n.i.e.
9. This category is equivalent to Inuinnaqtun and Inuvialuktun in 2011.
10. As in 2011, Inuinnaqtun and Inuvialuktun are also available as separate categories in 2016.
11. This category is equivalent to Inuktitut, Inuvialuktun, and Inuit languages, n.i.e. in 2011 and 2016.
12. Responses of Aboriginal languages, n.i.e. are included in their corresponding Aboriginal language family n.i.e. category.
13. This category includes Scottish Gaelic and Irish (Irish Gaelic).
14. Irish (Irish Gaelic) is included in Celtic, n.i.e. in 2016.
15. This category is equivalent to Germanic languages, n.i.e. and Afrikaans in 2016 and 2011.
16. Chaochow (Teochow), Fukien, and Taiwanese were separate categories in 2011 and 2006.
17. This category is equivalent to Chinese, n.o.s. and Chinese, n.i.e. in 2016.
18. This category is equivalent to Tibetan and Karenic languages in 2016.
19. This category is equivalent to Other languages, and African languages, n.i.e. in 2011 and 2006.

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Appendix 4.0 Derived Statistics

Median income and average income are two statistics commonly computed on income variables to measure central tendency.

These statistics can be derived for total income, after-tax income, employment income, wages and salaries, or any other particular source of income on a variety of universes: individuals, families, persons not in families and households.

Typically, for total income and after-tax income, median and average incomes of individuals are calculated for those with income (positive or negative); median and average incomes of households are calculated for all units, whether or not they had income; median and average incomes of families are calculated for all units, whether or not they had income; median and average incomes of persons not in families are calculated for all units, whether or not they had income.

However, for the income components, median and average incomes are sometimes calculated for units with income (positive or negative) only for all universes.

In 2016, as part of the measures to ensure non-disclosure of individual characteristics, the average income statistic is only available from the sampled population, i.e., information from the long-form census questionnaire. The median income statistic is the measure of central tendency and is available for 100% of the population (short-form census questionnaire).

Median income

The median income of a specified group is the amount that divides the income distribution of that group into two halves, i.e., the incomes of half of the units in that group are below the median, while those of the other half are above the median.

When median income is computed from the census short-form questionnaire, no weighting is required because each unit represents itself. When median income is computed from the census long-form questionnaire, certain units would represent multiple units (known as weight) due to sampling.

For an income size distribution, the median is usually estimated as follows:

M = $L_m + c_m \left(d / f_m \right)$, where

M = Median value

L_m = Lower boundary of the income group in which

$\frac{N}{2} = \frac{\sum W_i}{2}$ falls, where

N = Number of (weighted) units in the specified group for which the distribution is being shown

W_i = Weight of each unit in the specified group, for the short-form census questionnaire, the weight is equal to 1 for each unit.

c_m = Size (range) of the median income group

d = Number of units in the specified group necessary from the median income group to reach the middle

i.e., $\frac{N}{2} - \sum_{i}^{m-1} f_i$

f_m = Frequency or (weighted) total number of units in the median income group

In a similar fashion, decile income values (the 9 dollar amounts which divide the income recipients in 10 equal groups), quintiles (5 equal groups) and quartiles (4 equal groups) can also be derived for the population with income.

Average income

Average income of a specified group is calculated by dividing the aggregate income of that group by the number of units in that group.

This statistic is calculated for any specified group as follows:

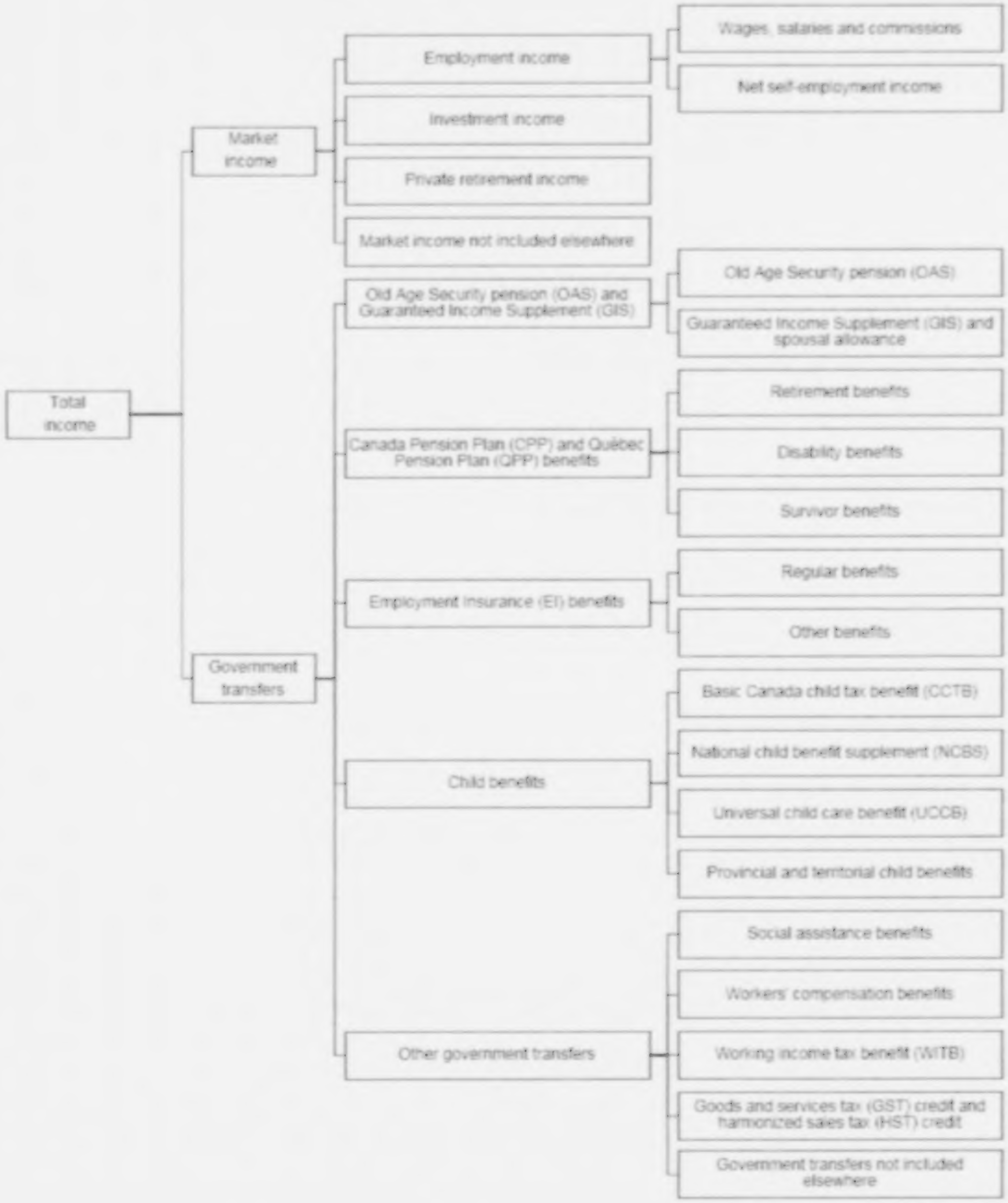
$\overline{Y}$ = $\frac{\sum(Y_i W_i)}{\sum W_i}$, where

$\overline{Y}$ = Average income of the group specified

Y_i = Actual income of each unit in the group specified

W_i = Weight of each unit in the group specified

Appendix 4.1 Components of income in 2015


Total income
Market income
Employment income
Wages, salaries and commissions
Net self-employment income
Investment income
Private retirement income
Market income not included elsewhere
Government transfers
Old Age Security pension (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS)
Old Age Security pension (OAS)
Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) and spousal allowance
Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) benefits
Retirement benefits
Disability benefits
Survivor benefits
Employment Insurance (EI) benefits
Regular benefits
Other benefits
Child benefits
Basic Canada child tax benefit (CCTB)
National child benefit supplement (NCBS)
Universal child care benefit (UCCB)
Provincial and territorial child benefits
Other government transfers
Social assistance benefits
Workers' compensation benefits
Working income tax benefit (WITB)
Goods and services tax (GST) credit and harmonized sales tax (HST) credit
Government transfers not included elsewhere

Source: Statistics Canada, Income Statistics Division.

Definitions of the components of income:

Market income – The sum of employment income (wages, salaries and commissions, net self-employment income from farm or non-farm unincorporated business and/or professional practice), investment income, private retirement income (retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities, including those from registered retirement savings plans [RRSPs] and registered retirement income funds [RRIFs]) and other money income from market sources during the reference period. It is equivalent to total income minus government transfers. It is also referred to as income before transfers and taxes.

Employment income – All income received as wages, salaries and commissions from paid employment and net self-employment income from farm or non-farm unincorporated business and/or professional practice during the reference period.

Wages, salaries and commissions – Gross wages and salaries before deductions for such items as income taxes, pension plan contributions and employment insurance premiums during the reference period. While other employee remuneration such as security options benefits, board and lodging and other taxable allowances and benefits are included in this source, employers' contributions to pension plans and employment insurance plans are excluded. Other receipts included in this source are military pay and allowances, tips, commissions and cash bonuses associated with paid employment, benefits from wage-loss replacement plans or income-maintenance insurance plans, supplementary unemployment benefits from an employer or union, research grants, royalties from a work or invention with no associated expenses and all types of casual earnings during the reference period.

Net self-employment income – Net income (gross receipts minus cost of operation and capital cost allowance) received during the reference period from self-employment activities, either on own account or in partnership. In the case of partnerships, only the person's share of income is included. Net partnership income of a limited or non-active partner is excluded. It includes farming income, fishing income and income from unincorporated business or professional practice. Commission income for a self-employed commission salesperson and royalties from a work or invention with expenses associated are also included in this source.

Investment income – Income received during the reference period in the form of interest from deposits in banks, trust companies, co-operatives, credit unions and *caisses populaires*, interests on savings certificates, bonds and debentures, dividends from both Canadian and foreign stocks, net rental income from real estate, mortgage and loan interest received, regular income from an estate or trust fund, interest from insurance policies and net partnership income for a limited or non-active partner. This variable does not include net capital gains or losses as they are not part of the standard income definition.

Private retirement income – All regular income received during the reference period associated with employer or personal retirement pensions, benefits or savings plans. It includes payments received from all annuities, including payments from employers' registered pension plans (RPPs), pooled registered pension plans (PRPPs) and matured registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs) in the form of a life annuity, a fixed-term annuity, a registered retirement income fund (RRIF) or an income-averaging annuity contract; pensions paid to widow(er)s or other relatives of deceased pensioners; pensions of retired civil servants, Canadian Armed Forces personnel and Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RCMP) officers; annuity payments received from the Canadian Government Annuities Fund, an insurance company, etc. It does not include lump-sum death benefits, lump-sum benefits or withdrawals from a pension plan or RRSP or refunds of over-contributions.

Market income not included elsewhere – Regular cash income from market sources that are not included in any of the other market income sources during the reference period. For example, severance pay and retirement allowances, alimony or child support received, periodic support from other persons not in the household, any income from abroad that is not investment income, scholarships, bursaries, fellowships and study grants and artists' project grants are included.

Government transfers – All cash benefits received from federal, provincial, territorial or municipal governments during the reference period. It includes:

- Old Age Security pension, Guaranteed Income Supplement, Allowance or Allowance for the Survivor;
- retirement, disability and survivor benefits from Canada Pension Plan and Québec Pension Plan;
- benefits from Employment Insurance and Québec parental insurance plan;
- child benefits from federal and provincial programs;
- social assistance benefits;
- workers' compensation benefits;
- Working income tax benefit;
- Goods and services tax credit and harmonized sales tax credit;
- other income from government sources.

Old Age Security pension (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) – Old Age Security pension and Guaranteed Income Supplements paid to persons aged 65 years and over, and to the Allowance or the Allowance for the Survivor paid to 60- to 64-year-old spouses of old age security recipients or widow(er)s by the federal government during the reference period.

Old Age Security pension (OAS) – Old Age Security pension paid to persons aged 65 years and over by the federal government during the reference period. The Guaranteed Income Supplement, Allowance and Allowance for the Survivor are excluded.

Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) and spousal allowance – Guaranteed Income Supplement paid to persons aged 65 years and over, and the Allowance or the Allowance for the Survivor paid to 60- to 64-year-old spouses of old age security recipients or widow(er)s by the federal government during the reference period.

Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) benefits – Benefits received during the reference period from the Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan in the form of retirement pensions, survivors' benefits and disability benefits. It does not include lump-sum death benefits.

Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Retirement benefits – Retirement benefits received during the reference period from the Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan.

Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Disability benefits – Disability benefits received during the reference period from the Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan.

Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Survivor benefits – Regular benefits received by surviving spouse or common-law partner, children or estate of a deceased Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan contributor during the reference period from the Canada Pension Plan or Québec Pension Plan. Does not include lump-sum death benefits.

Employment Insurance (EI) benefits – All Employment Insurance benefits received during the reference period, before income tax deductions. It includes benefits for unemployment, sickness, maternity, paternity, adoption, compassionate care, work sharing, retraining, and benefits to self-employed fishers received under the federal Employment Insurance Program or the Québec parental insurance plan.

Employment Insurance (EI) – Regular benefits – Regular benefits for unemployment received under the federal Employment Insurance program during the reference period, before income tax deductions.

Employment Insurance (EI) – Other benefits – Benefits for sickness, maternity, paternity, adoption, compassionate care, work sharing, retraining and benefits to self-employed fishers received under the federal Employment Insurance program or the Québec parental insurance plan during the reference period, before income tax deductions.

Child benefits – Payments received by parents or guardians with dependent children from various federal, provincial and territorial child benefit programs during the reference period.

Basic Canada child tax benefit (CCTB) – Basic Canada child tax benefit (CCTB) payments received by parents or guardians with dependent children during the reference period. These benefits aim at helping low- and middle-income families; the amount of benefits received depends on a family's income and the number of children within the family. This variable also includes the child disability benefit (CDB).

National child benefit supplement (NCBS) – National child benefit supplement (NCBS) received by parents or guardians with dependent children during the reference period. These benefits aim at helping low-income families; the amount of benefits received depends on a family's income and the number of children within the family.

Universal child care benefit (UCCB) – Universal child care benefit (UCCB) payments received by parents or guardians with dependent children during the reference period. The amount of benefits received depends on the number and age of children within a family.

Provincial and territorial child benefits – Provincial or territorial child benefits received by parents or guardians with dependent children during the reference period. Some of these programs include a basic benefit amount as well as an earned income supplement.

Other government transfers – All government transfers received during the reference period other than those from the following sources:

- Old Age Security pension, Guaranteed Income Supplement, Allowance or Allowance for the Survivor;
- retirement, disability and survivor benefits from Canada Pension Plan and Québec Pension Plan;
- benefits from Employment Insurance and Québec parental insurance plan;
- child benefits from federal and provincial programs.

The key components of this variable are social assistance benefits, workers' compensation benefits, working income tax benefit, goods and services tax credit and harmonized sales tax credit, refundable provincial tax credits, provincial income supplements for seniors, other provincial credits, benefits and rebates, veterans' pensions, war veterans' allowance, pensions to widow(er)s and dependants of veterans.

Social assistance benefits – All social assistance payments received by persons in need during the reference period. On the basis of need, eligible social assistance recipients may receive assistance to cover the cost of food, shelter, clothing and other daily necessities. Other allowances may also be granted to persons with special needs or circumstances, such as elderly persons, persons with disabilities, single-parent families and persons with barriers to employment.

Workers' compensation benefits – All benefits received from federal, provincial, territorial or municipal workers' compensation programs during the reference period, due to work-related injuries or disabilities.

Working income tax benefit (WITB) – Refundable tax credits received under the federal working income tax benefit program during the reference period. These benefits vary by province or territory and are intended to provide tax relief for eligible working low-income individuals and families who are already in the workforce and to encourage other Canadians to enter the workforce.

Goods and services tax (GST) credit and harmonized sales tax (HST) credit – Goods and services tax (GST) credit and harmonized sales tax (HST) credit received during the reference period. The GST/HST credit is a series of tax-free payments that help individuals and families with low or modest incomes offset all or part of the GST or HST that they pay.

Government transfers not included elsewhere – All government transfers received during the reference period, other than those from the following sources:

- Old Age Security pension, Guaranteed Income Supplement, Allowance or Allowance for the Survivor;
- retirement, disability and survivor benefits from Canada Pension Plan and Québec Pension Plan;
- benefits from Employment Insurance and Québec Parental Insurance Plan;
- child benefits from federal and provincial programs;
- social assistance benefits;
- workers' compensation benefits;
- working income tax benefit;
- goods and services tax credit and harmonized sales tax credit.

The key components of this variable are refundable provincial tax credits, provincial income supplements for seniors, other provincial credits, benefits and rebates, veterans' pensions, war veterans' allowance, pensions to widow(er)s and dependants of veterans.

Appendix 5.1 Ethnic origins disseminated from 2016, 2011 and 2006

2016 Census	2011 National Household Survey	2006 Census
North American Aboriginal origins		
First Nations (North American Indian)	First Nations (North American Indian)	North American Indian
Inuit	Inuit	Inuit
Métis	Métis	Métis
Other North American origins		
Acadian	Acadian	Acadian
American	American	American
Canadian	Canadian	Canadian
New Brunswicker	New Brunswicker	Other provincial or regional groups
Newfoundlander	Newfoundlander	Newfoundlander
Nova Scotian	Nova Scotian	Nova Scotian
Ontarian	Ontarian	Ontarian
Québécois	Québécois	Québécois
Other North American origins, n.i.e.[1]	Other North American origins, n.i.e.	Other provincial or regional groups
European origins		
British Isles origins		
Channel Islander	Channel Islander	British Isles, n.i.e.
Cornish	Cornish	Cornish
English	English	English
Irish	Irish	Irish
Manx	Manx	Manx
Scottish	Scottish	Scottish
Welsh	Welsh	Welsh
British Isles origins, n.i.e.[2]	British Isles origins, n.i.e.	British Isles, n.i.e.
French origins		
Alsatian	Alsatian	French
Breton	Breton	French
Corsican	Western European origins, n.i.e.	French
French	French	French
Western European origins (except French origins)		
Austrian	Austrian	Austrian
Bavarian	German	German
Belgian	Belgian	Belgian
Dutch	Dutch	Dutch (Netherlands)

2016 Census	2011 National Household Survey	2006 Census
Flemish	Flemish	Flemish
Frisian	Frisian	Frisian
German	German	German
Luxembourger	Luxembourger	Luxembourger
Swiss	Swiss	Swiss
Western European origins, n.i.e.[3]	Western European origins, n.i.e.	European, n.i.e.
Northern European origins (except British Isles origins)		
Danish	Danish	Danish
Finnish	Finnish	Finnish
Icelandic	Icelandic	Icelandic
Norwegian	Norwegian	Norwegian
Swedish	Swedish	Swedish
Northern European origins, n.i.e.[4]	Northern European origins, n.i.e.	Scandinavian, n.i.e.
Eastern European origins		
Bulgarian	Bulgarian	Bulgarian
Byelorussian	Byelorussian	Byelorussian
Czech	Czech	Czech
Czechoslovakian, n.o.s.[5]	Czechoslovakian, n.o.s.	Czechoslovakian
Estonian	Estonian	Estonian
Hungarian	Hungarian	Hungarian (Magyar)
Latvian	Latvian	Latvian
Lithuanian	Lithuanian	Lithuanian
Moldovan	Moldovan	Romanian
Polish	Polish	Polish
Romanian	Romanian	Romanian
Russian	Russian	Russian
Slovak	Slovak	Slovak
Ukrainian	Ukrainian	Ukrainian
Eastern European origins, n.i.e.[6]	Eastern European origins, n.i.e.	European, n.i.e.
Southern European origins		
Albanian	Albanian	Albanian
Bosnian	Bosnian	Bosnian
Catalan	Spanish	Spanish
Croatian	Croatian	Croatian
Cypriot	Cypriot	Cypriot
Greek	Greek	Greek
Italian	Italian	Italian

2016 Census	2011 National Household Survey	2006 Census
Kosovar	Kosovar	Kosovar
Macedonian	Macedonian	Macedonian
Maltese	Maltese	Maltese
Montenegrin	Montenegrin	Montenegrin
Portuguese	Portuguese	Portuguese
Serbian	Serbian	Serbian
Sicilian	Sicilian	Sicilian
Slovenian	Slovenian	Slovenian
Spanish	Spanish	Spanish
Yugoslavian, n.o.s.[7]	Yugoslavian, n.o.s.	Yugoslav, n.i.e.
Southern European origins, n.i.e.[8]	Southern European origins, n.i.e.	European, n.i.e.
Other European origins		
Basque	Basque	Basque
Jewish	Jewish	Jewish
Roma (Gypsy)	Roma (Gypsy)	Gypsy (Roma)
Slavic, n.o.s.[9]	Slavic, n.o.s.	Slav (European)
Other European origins, n.i.e.[10]	Other European origins, n.i.e.	European, n.i.e.
Caribbean origins		
Antiguan	Antiguan	Antiguan
Bahamian	Bahamian	Bahamian
Barbadian	Barbadian	Barbadian
Bermudan	Bermudan	Bermudan
Carib	Carib	Carib
Cuban	Cuban	Cuban
Dominican	Dominican	Dominican, n.o.s.
Grenadian	Grenadian	Grenadian
Guadeloupean	Caribbean origins, n.i.e.	Caribbean, n.i.e.
Haitian	Haitian	Haitian
Jamaican	Jamaican	Jamaican
Kittitian/Nevisian	Kittitian/Nevisian	Kittitian/Nevisian
Martinican	Martinican	Martinican
Montserratan	Montserratan	Montserratan
Puerto Rican	Puerto Rican	Puerto Rican
St. Lucian	St. Lucian	St. Lucian
Trinidadian/Tobagonian	Trinidadian/Tobagonian	Trinidadian/Tobagonian
Vincentian/Grenadinian	Vincentian/Grenadinian	Vincentian/Grenadinian
West Indian, n.o.s.[11]	West Indian, n.o.s.	West Indian
Caribbean origins, n.i.e.[12]	Caribbean origins, n.i.e.	Caribbean, n.i.e.

2016 Census	2011 National Household Survey	2006 Census
Latin, Central and South American origins		
Aboriginal from Central/ South America (except Arawak and Maya)	Aboriginal from Central/South America (except Maya)	Aboriginal from Central/South America
Arawak	Aboriginal from Central/South America (except Maya)	Aboriginal from Central/South America
Argentinian	Argentinian	Argentinian
Belizean	Belizean	Belizean
Bolivian	Bolivian	Bolivian
Brazilian	Brazilian	Brazilian
Chilean	Chilean	Chilean
Colombian	Colombian	Colombian
Costa Rican	Costa Rican	Costa Rican
Ecuadorian	Ecuadorian	Ecuadorian
Guatemalan	Guatemalan	Guatemalan
Guyanese	Guyanese	Guyanese
Hispanic	Hispanic	Hispanic
Honduran	Honduran	Honduran
Maya	Maya	Maya
Mexican	Mexican	Mexican
Nicaraguan	Nicaraguan	Nicaraguan
Panamanian	Panamanian	Panamanian
Paraguayan	Paraguayan	Paraguayan
Peruvian	Peruvian	Peruvian
Salvadorean	Salvadorean	Salvadorean
Uruguayan	Uruguayan	Uruguayan
Venezuelan	Venezuelan	Venezuelan
Latin, Central and South American origins, n.i.e.[13]	Latin, Central and South American origins, n.i.e.	Latin, Central or South American, n.i.e.
African origins		
Central and West African origins		
Akan	Akan	Akan
Angolan	Angolan	Angolan
Ashanti	Ashanti	Ashanti
Beninese	Beninese	African, n.i.e.
Burkinabe	Burkinabe	African, n.i.e.
Cameroonian	Cameroonian	Cameroonian
Chadian	Chadian	Chadian
Congolese	Congolese	Congolese (Zairian), Congolese, n.o.s.
Edo	Central and West African origins, n.i.e.	Nigerian
Ewe	Central and West African origins, n.i.e.	African, n.i.e.
Gabonese	Gabonese	Gabonese
Gambian	Gambian	Gambian

2016 Census	2011 National Household Survey	2006 Census
Ghanaian	Ghanaian	Ghanaian
Guinean	Guinean	Guinean, n.o.s.
Ibo	Ibo	Ibo
Ivorian	Ivorian	Ivorian
Liberian	Liberian	African, n.i.e.
Malian	Malian	Malian
Malinké	Central and West African origins, n.i.e.	African, n.i.e.
Nigerian	Nigerian	Nigerian
Peulh	Peulh	Peulh
Senegalese	Senegalese	Senegalese
Sierra Leonean	Sierra Leonean	Sierra Leonean
Togolese	Togolese	Togolese
Wolof	Central and West African origins, n.i.e.	Senegalese
Yoruba	Yoruba	Yoruba
Central and West African origins, n.i.e.[14]	Central and West African origins, n.i.e.	African, n.i.e.
North African origins		
Algerian	Algerian	Algerian
Berber	Berber	Berber
Coptic	Coptic	Egyptian
Dinka	Dinka	Dinka
Egyptian	Egyptian	Egyptian
Libyan	Libyan	Libyan
Maure	Maure	Maghrebi, n.i.e.
Moroccan	Moroccan	Moroccan
Sudanese	Sudanese	Sudanese
Tunisian	Tunisian	Tunisian
North African origins, n.i.e.[15]	North African origins, n.i.e.	Maghrebi, n.i.e.
Southern and East African origins		
Afrikaner	Afrikaner	Afrikaner
Amhara	Amhara	Amhara
Bantu, n.o.s.[16]	Bantu, n.o.s.	Bantu
Burundian	Burundian	Burundian
Djiboutian	Southern and East African origins, n.i.e.	African, n.i.e.
Eritrean	Eritrean	Eritrean
Ethiopian	Ethiopian	Ethiopian
Harari	Harari	Harari
Kenyan	Kenyan	Kenyan
Malagasy	Malagasy	Malagasy
Mauritian	Mauritian	Mauritian
Oromo	Oromo	Oromo
Rwandan	Rwandan	Rwandan
Seychellois	Seychellois	Seychellois

2016 Census	2011 National Household Survey	2006 Census
Somali	Somali	Somali
South African	South African	South African
Tanzanian	Tanzanian	Tanzanian
Tigrian	Tigrian	Tigrian
Ugandan	Ugandan	Ugandan
Zambian	Zambian	Zambian
Zimbabwean	Zimbabwean	Zimbabwean
Zulu	Zulu	Zulu
Southern and East African origins, n.i.e.[17]	Southern and East African origins, n.i.e.	East African, African, n.i.e.
Other African origins		
Black, n.o.s.[18]	Black, n.o.s.	Black
Other African origins, n.i.e.[19]	Other African origins, n.i.e.	African, n.i.e.
Asian origins		
West Central Asian and Middle Eastern origins		
Afghan	Afghan	Afghan
Arab, n.o.s.[20]	Arab, n.o.s.	Arab, n.i.e.
Armenian	Armenian	Armenian
Assyrian	Assyrian	Assyrian
Azerbaijani	Azerbaijani	Azerbaijani
Georgian	Georgian	Georgian
Hazara	West Central Asian and Middle Eastern origins, n.i.e.	Afghan
Iranian	Iranian	Iranian
Iraqi	Iraqi	Iraqi
Israeli	Israeli	Israeli
Jordanian	Jordanian	Jordanian
Kazakh	Kazakh	West Asian, n.i.e.
Kurd	Kurd	Kurd
Kuwaiti	Kuwaiti	Kuwaiti
Kyrgyz	West Central Asian and Middle Eastern origins, n.i.e.	West Asian, n.i.e.
Lebanese	Lebanese	Lebanese
Palestinian	Palestinian	Palestinian
Pashtun	Pashtun	Pashtun
Saudi Arabian	Saudi Arabian	Saudi Arabian
Syrian	Syrian	Syrian
Tajik	Tajik	West Asian, n.i.e.
Tatar	Tatar	Tatar
Turk	Turk	Turk
Turkmen	West Central Asian and Middle Eastern origins, n.i.e.	West Asian, n.i.e.

2016 Census	2011 National Household Survey	2006 Census
Uighur	Uighur	West Asian, n.i.e.
Uzbek	Uzbek	West Asian, n.i.e.
Yemeni	Yemeni	Yemeni
West Central Asian and Middle Eastern origins, n.i.e.[21]	West Central Asian and Middle Eastern origins, n.i.e.	West Asian, n.i.e.
South Asian origins		
Bangladeshi	Bangladeshi	Bangladeshi
Bengali	Bengali	Bengali
Bhutanese	South Asian origins, n.i.e.	South Asian, n.i.e.
East Indian	East Indian	East Indian
Goan	Goan	Goan
Gujarati	Gujarati	Gujarati
Kashmiri	Kashmiri	Kashmiri
Nepali	Nepali	Nepali
Pakistani	Pakistani	Pakistani
Punjabi	Punjabi	Punjabi
Sinhalese	Sinhalese	Sinhalese
Sri Lankan	Sri Lankan	Sri Lankan
Tamil	Tamil	Tamil
South Asian origins, n.i.e.[22]	South Asian origins, n.i.e.	South Asian, n.i.e.
East and Southeast Asian origins		
Burmese	Burmese	Burmese
Cambodian (Khmer)	Cambodian (Khmer)	Cambodian, Khmer
Chinese	Chinese	Chinese
Filipino	Filipino	Filipino
Hmong	Hmong	Hmong
Indonesian	Indonesian	Indonesian
Japanese	Japanese	Japanese
Karen	East and Southeast Asian origins, n.i.e.	Burmese
Korean	Korean	Korean
Laotian	Laotian	Laotian
Malaysian	Malaysian	Malaysian
Mongolian	Mongolian	Mongolian
Singaporean	Singaporean	Singaporean
Taiwanese	Taiwanese	Taiwanese
Thai	Thai	Thai
Tibetan	Tibetan	Tibetan
Vietnamese	Vietnamese	Vietnamese
East and Southeast Asian origins, n.i.e.[23]	East and Southeast Asian origins, n.i.e.	East or Southeast Asian, n.i.e.
Other Asian origins		
Other Asian origins, n.i.e.[24]	Other Asian origins, n.i.e.	Asian, n.o.s.

2016 Census	2011 National Household Survey	2006 Census
Oceania origins		
Australian	Australian	Australian
New Zealander	New Zealander	New Zealander
Pacific Islands origins		
Fijian	Fijian	Fijian
Hawaiian	Hawaiian	Hawaiian
Maori	Maori	Maori
Polynesian, n.o.s.[25]	Polynesian, n.o.s.	Polynesian
Samoan	Samoan	Samoan
Pacific Islands origins, n.i.e.[26]	Pacific Islands origins, n.i.e.	Pacific Islander, n.i.e.

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere

n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

1. Includes general responses indicating North American origins (e.g., "North American") as well as more specific responses indicating North American origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Maritimer").

2. Includes general responses indicating British Isles origins (e.g., "British," "United Kingdom") as well as more specific responses indicating British Isles origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Celtic").

3. Includes general responses indicating Western European origins (e.g., "Western European") as well as more specific responses indicating Western European origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Liechtensteiner").

4. Includes general responses indicating Northern European origins (e.g., "Northern European") as well as more specific responses indicating Northern European origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Faroese," "Scandinavian").

5. Includes responses of "Czechoslovakian," not otherwise specified.

6. Includes general responses indicating Eastern European origins (e.g., "Eastern European") as well as more specific responses indicating Eastern European origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Baltic").

7. Includes responses of "Yugoslavian," not otherwise specified.

8. Includes general responses indicating Southern European origins (e.g., "Southern European") as well as more specific responses indicating Southern European origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Gibraltarian").

9. Includes responses of "Slavic," not otherwise specified.

10. Includes general responses indicating other European origins (e.g., "European") as well as more specific responses indicating European origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Central European").

11. Includes responses of "West Indian," not otherwise specified.

12. Includes general responses indicating Caribbean origins (e.g., "Antilles," "Caribbean") as well as more specific responses indicating Caribbean origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Aruban").

13. Includes general responses indicating Latin, Central or South American origins (e.g., "South American") as well as more specific responses indicating Latin, Central or South American origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Surinamese").

14. Includes general responses indicating Central or West African origins (e.g., "West African") as well as more specific responses indicating Central or West African origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Luba," "Mossi").

15. Includes general responses indicating North African origins (e.g., "North African") as well as more specific responses indicating North African origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Maghrebi").

16. Includes responses of "Bantu," not otherwise specified.

17. Includes general responses indicating Southern or East African origins (e.g., "East African") as well as more specific responses indicating Southern or East African origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Hutu," "Shona").

18. Includes responses of "Black," not otherwise specified.

19. Includes general responses indicating other African origins (e.g., "African") as well as more specific responses indicating other African origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Saharan").

20. Includes responses of "Arab," not otherwise specified.

21. Includes general responses indicating West Asian, Central Asian and Middle Eastern origins (e.g., "West Asian," "Middle Eastern") as well as more specific responses indicating West Asian, Central Asian and Middle Eastern origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Baloch," "Circassian").

22. Includes general responses indicating South Asian origins (e.g., "South Asian") as well as more specific responses indicating South Asian origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Telugu").

23. Includes general responses indicating East and Southeast Asian origins (e.g., "Southeast Asian") as well as more specific responses indicating East and Southeast Asian origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Bruneian").

24. Includes general responses indicating other Asian origins (e.g., "Asian") as well as more specific responses indicating other Asian origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Eurasian").

25. Includes responses of "Polynesian," not otherwise specified.

26. Includes general responses indicating Pacific Islands origins (e.g., "Pacific Islander") as well as more specific responses indicating Pacific Islands origins that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., "Tahitian").

Sources: Statistics Canada, censuses of population, 2016 and 2006, and 2011 National Household Survey.

Appendix 5.2 Places of birth disseminated in the 2016 Census of Population

2016 Census of Population Classification

The classification used to disseminate data for the variables on place of birth of person, place of birth of father and place of birth of mother is based on the Standard Classification of Countries and Areas of Interest for Social Statistics - SCCAI 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=367512). For additional information on the changes to country names and codes since 1970, please refer to the Current and historical countries and areas of interest (http://www.statcan.gc.ca/eng/subjects/standard/sccai/2016/countries-of-interest).

- **Inside Canada**
  - Newfoundland and Labrador
  - Prince Edward Island
  - Nova Scotia
  - New Brunswick
  - Quebec
  - Ontario
  - Manitoba
  - Saskatchewan
  - Alberta
  - British Columbia
  - Yukon
  - Northwest Territories
  - Nunavut
- **Outside Canada**
  - **Americas**
    - **North America**
      - Greenland
      - Saint Pierre and Miquelon
      - United States[168]
    - **Central America**
      - Belize
      - Costa Rica
      - El Salvador
      - Guatemala
      - Honduras
      - Mexico
      - Nicaragua
      - Panama

---

[168] The official name of United States is United States of America.

- **Caribbean and Bermuda**
    - Anguilla
    - Antigua and Barbuda
    - Aruba
    - Bahamas
    - Barbados
    - Bermuda
    - Bonaire, Sint Eustatius and Saba
    - Cayman Islands
    - Cuba
    - Curaçao
    - Dominica
    - Dominican Republic
    - Grenada
    - Guadeloupe
    - Haiti
    - Jamaica
    - Martinique
    - Montserrat
    - Puerto Rico
    - Saint Barthélemy
    - Saint Kitts and Nevis
    - Saint Lucia
    - Saint Martin (French part)
    - Saint Vincent and the Grenadines
    - Sint Maarten (Dutch part)
    - Trinidad and Tobago
    - Turks and Caicos Islands
    - Virgin Islands, British
    - Virgin Islands, United States
- **South America**
    - Argentina
    - Bolivia[169]
    - Brazil
    - Chile
    - Colombia
    - Ecuador

---

[169] The official name of Bolivia is Plurinational State of Bolivia.

        - Falkland Islands (Malvinas)
        - French Guiana
        - Guyana
        - Paraguay
        - Peru
        - South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands
        - Suriname
        - Uruguay
        - Venezuela[170]
- **Europe**
    - **Western Europe**
        - Austria
        - Belgium
        - France
        - Germany
        - Liechtenstein
        - Luxembourg
        - Monaco
        - Netherlands
        - Switzerland
    - **Eastern Europe**
        - Belarus
        - Bulgaria
        - Czech Republic
        - Estonia
        - Hungary
        - Latvia
        - Lithuania
        - Moldova[171]
        - Poland
        - Romania
        - Russian Federation
        - Slovakia
        - Ukraine

---

[170] The official name of Venezuela is Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela.

[171] The official name of Moldova is Republic of Moldova.

- **Northern Europe**
  - Åland Islands
  - Denmark
  - Faroe Islands
  - Finland
  - Guernsey
  - Iceland
  - Ireland[172]
  - Isle of Man
  - Jersey
  - Norway
  - Sark
  - Svalbard and Jan Mayen
  - Sweden
  - United Kingdom[173]
- **Southern Europe**
  - Albania
  - Andorra
  - Bosnia and Herzegovina
  - Croatia
  - Gibraltar
  - Greece
  - Holy See (Vatican City State)
  - Italy
  - Kosovo[174]
  - Macedonia, Republic of[175]
  - Malta
  - Montenegro
  - Portugal
  - San Marino
  - Serbia[176]
  - Slovenia
  - Spain

---

[172] Ireland is also referred to as Republic of Ireland.

[173] The official name of United Kingdom is United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. United Kingdom includes Scotland, Wales, England and Northern Ireland (excludes Isle of Man, the Channel Islands and British Overseas Territories).

[174] The official name of Kosovo is Republic of Kosovo.

[175] Macedonia, Republic of: known as the former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia by the United Nations and other international bodies.

[176] Serbia excludes Kosovo.

- **Africa**
    - **Western Africa**
        - Benin
        - Burkina Faso
        - Cabo Verde
        - Côte d'Ivoire
        - Gambia
        - Ghana
        - Guinea
        - Guinea-Bissau
        - Liberia
        - Mali
        - Mauritania
        - Niger
        - Nigeria
        - Saint Helena[177]
        - Senegal
        - Sierra Leone
        - Togo
    - **Eastern Africa**
        - Burundi
        - Comoros
        - Djibouti
        - Eritrea
        - Ethiopia
        - Kenya
        - Madagascar
        - Malawi
        - Mauritius
        - Mayotte
        - Mozambique
        - Réunion
        - Rwanda
        - Seychelles
        - Somalia
        - South Sudan

---

[177] The official name of Saint Helena is Saint Helena, Ascension and Tristan da Cunha.

    - Tanzania[178]
    - Uganda
    - Zambia
    - Zimbabwe
  - **Northern Africa**
    - Algeria
    - Egypt
    - Libya
    - Morocco
    - Sudan[179]
    - Tunisia
    - Western Sahara
  - **Central Africa**
    - Angola
    - Cameroon
    - Central African Republic
    - Chad
    - Congo, Democratic Republic of the
    - Congo, Republic of the
    - Equatorial Guinea
    - Gabon
    - Sao Tome and Principe
  - **Southern Africa**
    - Botswana
    - Lesotho
    - Namibia
    - South Africa, Republic of
    - Swaziland
- **Asia**
  - **West Central Asia and the Middle East**
    - Afghanistan
    - Armenia
    - Azerbaijan
    - Bahrain
    - Cyprus
    - Georgia

---

[178] The official name of Tanzania is United Republic of Tanzania.

[179] The full name of Sudan is the Republic of the Sudan.

  - Iran[180]
  - Iraq
  - Israel
  - Jordan
  - Kazakhstan
  - Kuwait
  - Kyrgyzstan
  - Lebanon
  - Oman
  - Qatar
  - Saudi Arabia
  - Syria[181]
  - Tajikistan
  - Turkey
  - Turkmenistan
  - United Arab Emirates
  - Uzbekistan
  - West Bank and Gaza Strip (Palestine)[182]
  - Yemen
- **Eastern Asia**
  - China[183]
  - Hong Kong[184]
  - Japan
  - Korea, North[185]
  - Korea, South[186]
  - Macao[187]
  - Mongolia
  - Taiwan
- **Southeast Asia**
  - Brunei Darussalam
  - Burma (Myanmar)

---

[180] The official name of Iran is Islamic Republic of Iran.

[181] The official name of Syria is Syrian Arab Republic.

[182] West Bank and Gaza Strip (Palestine): West Bank and Gaza Strip are the territories referred to in the Declaration of Principles, signed by Israel and the Palestine Liberation Organization in 1993. Palestine refers to pre-1948 British mandate for Palestine.

[183] China excludes Hong Kong and Macao.

[184] The full name of Hong Kong is the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region of China.

[185] The official name of North Korea is Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

[186] The official name of South Korea is Republic of Korea.

[187] The full name of Macao is Macao Special Administrative Region of China.

        - Cambodia
        - Indonesia
        - Laos[188]
        - Malaysia
        - Philippines
        - Singapore
        - Thailand
        - Timor-Leste
        - Viet Nam
    - **Southern Asia**
        - Bangladesh
        - Bhutan
        - British Indian Ocean Territory
        - India
        - Maldives
        - Nepal
        - Pakistan
        - Sri Lanka
- **Oceania**
    - American Samoa
    - Australia
    - Christmas Island
    - Cocos (Keeling) Islands
    - Cook Islands
    - Fiji
    - French Polynesia
    - Guam
    - Kiribati
    - Marshall Islands
    - Micronesia, Federated States of
    - Nauru
    - New Caledonia
    - New Zealand
    - Niue
    - Norfolk Island
    - Northern Mariana Islands
    - Palau

---

[188] The official name of Laos is Lao People's Democratic Republic.

  - Papua New Guinea
  - Pitcairn
  - Samoa
  - Solomon Islands
  - Tokelau
  - Tonga
  - Tuvalu
  - United States Minor Outlying Islands
  - Vanuatu
  - Wallis and Futuna
- **Antarctica and Adjacent Islands**
  - Antarctica
  - Bouvet Island
  - French Southern Territories
  - Heard Island and McDonald Islands

Appendix 5.3 Countries of citizenship disseminated in the 2016 Census of Population

2016 Census of Population Classification

The classification used to disseminate data for the variable on countries of citizenship is based on the Classification of Country of Citizenship 2016 (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=370394).

Canada

- Canada, by birth
- Canada, by naturalization

Other countries of citizenship

- Afghanistan
- Albania
- Algeria
- Andorra
- Angola
- Antigua and Barbuda
- Argentina
- Armenia
- Australia[189]
- Austria
- Azerbaijan
- Bahamas
- Bahrain
- Bangladesh
- Barbados
- Belarus
- Belgium
- Belize
- Benin
- Bhutan
- Bolivia[190]
- Bosnia and Herzegovina

---

[189] Includes dependencies or associated overseas territory of Austlralia. This includes responses of 'Cocos (Keeling) Islands,' 'Christmas Island' and 'Norfolk Island.'

[190] The official name of Bolivia is Plurinational State of Bolivia.

Botswana

Brazil

Brunei Darussalam

Bulgaria

Burkina Faso

Burma (Myanmar)

Burundi

Cabo Verde

Cambodia

Cameroon

Central African Republic

Chad

Chile

China, People's Republic of[191]

Colombia

Comoros

Congo, Democratic Republic of the

Congo, Republic of the

Costa Rica

Côte d'Ivoire

Croatia

Cuba

Cyprus

Czech Republic

Denmark[192]

Djibouti

Dominica

Dominican Republic

Ecuador

Egypt

El Salvador

Equatorial Guinea

Eritrea

---

[191] Includes responses of 'People's Republic of China,' 'Macao' and 'Hong Kong.' Macao and Hong Kong are special administrative regions of China.

[192] Includes dependencies or associated overseas territory of Denmark. This includes responses such as 'Faroe Islands' and 'Greenland.'

Estonia

Ethiopia

Fiji

Finland[193]

France[194]

Gabon

Gambia

Georgia

Germany

Ghana

Greece

Grenada

Guatemala

Guinea

Guinea-Bissau

Guyana

Haiti

Holy See (Vatican City State)

Honduras

Hungary

Iceland

India

Indonesia

Iran[195]

Iraq

Ireland[196]

Israel

Italy

Jamaica

Japan

Jordan

---

[193] Includes dependencies or associated overseas territory of Finland. This includes responses such as 'Åland Islands.'

[194] Includes dependencies or associated overseas territory of France. This includes responses such as 'French Polynesia,' 'French Guiana,' 'Guadeloupe,' 'Martinique,' 'Mayotte,' 'New Caledonia,' 'Réunion,' 'Saint Barthélemy,' 'Saint Martin (French part),' 'Saint Pierre and Miquelon,' 'Wallis and Futuna' and 'French dependency.'

[195] The official name of Iran is Islamic Republic of Iran.

[196] Ireland is also referred to as Republic of Ireland.

Kazakhstan
Kenya
Kiribati
Korea, North[197]
Korea, South[198]
Kosovo[199]
Kuwait
Kyrgyzstan
Laos[200]
Latvia
Lebanon
Lesotho
Liberia
Libya
Liechtenstein
Lithuania
Luxembourg
Macedonia, Republic of[201]
Madagascar
Malawi
Malaysia
Maldives
Mali
Malta
Marshall Islands
Mauritania
Mauritius
Mexico
Micronesia, Federated States of
Moldova[202]

---

[197] The official name of North Korea is Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

[198] The official name of South Korea is Republic of Korea.

[199] The official name of Kosovo is Republic of Kosovo.

[200] The official name of Laos is Lao People's Democratic Republic.

[201] Macedonia, Republic of: known as the former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia by the United Nations and other international bodies.

[202] The official name of Moldova is Republic of Moldova.

Monaco

Mongolia

Montenegro

Morocco

Mozambique

Namibia

Nauru

Nepal

Netherlands[203]

New Zealand[204]

Nicaragua

Niger

Nigeria

Norway[205]

Oman

Pakistan

Palau

Panama

Papua New Guinea

Paraguay

Peru

Philippines

Poland

Portugal

Qatar

Romania

Russian Federation

Rwanda

Saint Kitts and Nevis

Saint Lucia

Saint Vincent and the Grenadines

Samoa

---

[203] Includes dependencies or associated overseas territory of Netherlands. This includes responses such as 'Bonaire, Sint Eustatius and Saba,' 'Aruba,' 'Curaçao' and 'Sint Maarten (Dutch part).'

[204] Includes dependencies or associated overseas territory of New Zealand. This includes responses such as 'Cook Islands,' 'Niue' and 'Tokelau.'

[205] Includes dependencies or associated overseas territory of Norway. This includes responses such as 'Svalbard and Jan Mayen.'

San Marino

Sao Tome and Principe

Saudi Arabia

Senegal

Serbia[206]

Seychelles

Sierra Leone

Singapore

Slovakia

Slovenia

Solomon Islands

Somalia

South Africa, Republic of

South Sudan

Spain

Sri Lanka

Sudan[207]

Suriname

Swaziland

Sweden

Switzerland

Syria[208]

Taiwan

Tajikistan

Tanzania[209]

Thailand

Timor-Leste

Togo

Tonga

Trinidad and Tobago

Tunisia

Turkey

---

206. Serbia: excludes response of 'Kosovo.'

207. The full name of Sudan is the Republic of the Sudan.

208. The official name of Syria is Syrian Arab Republic.

209. The official name of Tanzania is United Republic of Tanzania.

Turkmenistan

Tuvalu

Uganda

Ukraine

United Arab Emirates

United Kingdom—British citizen[210]

United Kingdom—dependencies and other[211]

United States[212]

Uruguay

Uzbekistan

Vanuatu

Venezuela[213]

Viet Nam

West Bank and Gaza Strip (Palestine)[214]

Yemen

Zambia

Zimbabwe

Stateless[215]

---

[210] This includes responses such as 'British,' 'British citizen,' 'Britain,' 'Scotland,' 'Wales,' 'Northern Ireland,' 'Isle of Man,' 'Guernsey,' 'Jersey,' 'Sark' and 'Channel Islands.' The official name of United Kingdom is United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

[211] Includes dependencies or associated overseas territory of the United Kingdom. This includes responses such as 'Anguilla,' 'Bermuda,' 'British Indian Ocean Territory,' 'Cayman Islands,' 'Falkland Islands (Malvinas),' 'Gibraltar,' 'Montserrat,' 'Pitcairn,' 'Saint Helena,' 'Turks and Caicos Islands,' 'British Virgin Islands,' 'British dependency' and 'British Overseas citizenship.' This excludes responses of 'Scotland,' 'Wales,' 'Northern Ireland,' 'Isle of Man,' 'Guernsey,' 'Jersey,' 'Sark' and 'Channel Islands.' The official name of United Kingdom is United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

[212] Includes dependencies or associated overseas territory of the United States. This includes responses such as 'American Samoa,' 'Guam,' 'Northern Mariana Islands,' 'Puerto Rico,' 'United States Minor Outlying Islands,' 'Virgin Islands,' United States' and 'American dependency.' The official name of United States is United States of America.

[213] The official name of Venezuela is Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela.

[214] This includes responses such as 'West Bank,' 'Gaza Strip' and 'Palestine.' West Bank and Gaza Strip are the territories referred to in the Declaration of Principles, signed by Israel and the Palestine Liberation Organization in 1993. Palestine refers to pre-1948 British mandate Palestine.

[215] Includes responses of 'Stateless' and 'Western Sahara.'

Appendix 5.4 Aboriginal ancestries disseminated in the 2016 Census of Population

- First Nations ancestry
    - Abenaki
    - Algonquin
    - Anishinaabe, n.o.s.[216]
    - Apache
    - Assiniboine
    - Atikamekw
    - Beaver (Dunne-za)
    - Blackfoot, n.o.s.[217]
    - Blood (Kainai)
    - Carrier (Dakelh)
    - Cayuga
    - Cherokee
    - Chilcotin (Tsilhqot'in)
    - Chipewyan (Denesuline)
    - Cowichan
    - Cree
    - Crow
    - Dakota
    - Delaware (Lenape)
    - Dene Tha (Slavey)
    - Dene, n.o.s.[218]
    - Gitxsan
    - Gwich'in
    - Haida
    - Haisla
    - Heiltsuk
    - Huron (Wendat)
    - Innu/Montagnais
    - Iroquois, n.o.s.[219]
    - Kaska

---

[216] Includes general responses indicating Anishinaabe ancestry (e.g., 'Anishinaabe') as well as more specific responses indicating Anishinaabe ancestry (e.g., 'Nipissing').

[217] Includes general responses indicating Blackfoot ancestry (e.g., 'Blackfoot') as well as more specific responses indicating Blackfoot ancestry (e.g., 'Siksika,' 'Piikani').

[218] Includes general responses indicating Dene ancestry (e.g., 'Dene').

[219] Includes general responses indicating Iroquois ancestry (e.g., 'Iroquois,' 'Haudenosaunee') as well as more specific responses indicating Iroquois origins (e.g., 'Seneca,' 'Onondaga,' 'Tuscarora').

- Ktunaxa (Kutenai)
- Kwakwaka'wakw (Kwakiutl)
- Lakota
- Maliseet
- Mi'kmaq
- Mohawk
- Musqueam
- Naskapi
- Navajo
- Nisga'a
- Nlaka'pamux (Thompson)
- Nuu-chah-nulth
- Nuxalk
- Odawa
- Ojibway
- Oji-Cree
- Okanagan (Syilx)
- Oneida
- Potawatomi
- Sahtu (North Slavey)
- Salish, n.o.s.[220]
- Saulteaux
- Sechelt (Shishalh)
- Secwepemc (Shuswap)
- Sekani
- Sioux, n.o.s.[221]
- Squamish
- St'at'imc (Lillooet)
- Sto:lo
- Stoney (Nakoda)
- Tahltan
- Tlicho (Dogrib)
- Tlingit
- Tsimshian
- Tsuu T'ina (Sarcee)

---

220. Includes general responses indicating Salish ancestry (e.g., 'Salish') as well as more specific responses indicating Salish ancestry (e.g., 'Coast Salish,' 'Interior Salish,' 'K'omoks,' 'Saanich').

221. Includes general responses indicating Sioux ancestry (e.g., 'Sioux').

  - Tutchone, n.o.s.[222]
  - Wet'suwet'en
  - First Nations ancestry, n.i.e.[223]
- ► Métis ancestry
- ► Inuit ancestry
- ► Non-Aboriginal ancestry

---

[222] Includes general responses indicating Tutchone ancestry (e.g., 'Tutchone') as well as more specific responses indicating Tutchone ancestry (e.g., 'Northern Tutchone,' 'Southern Tutchone').

[223] Includes general responses indicating First Nations ancestry (e.g., 'First Nations,' 'North American Indian') as well as more specific responses indicating First Nations ancestry that have not been included elsewhere (e.g., 'Passamaquoddy,' 'Crow,' 'Cheyenne,' 'Athabascan').

Appendix 5.5 Admission categories disseminated in the 2016 Census of Population

2016 Census of Population Classification

This variable is the result of a record linkage to Immigration, Refugees and Citizenship Canada's (IRCC) administrative immigration records for immigrants admitted since 1980. For more information regarding admission category, please refer to the Immigration, Refugees and Citizenship Canada (http://www.cic.gc.ca/) website. For a visual representation of the classification, please refer to Figure 5.4.

1. **Economic immigrant**[224]
    - **Worker programs**[225]
        - Skilled worker[226]
            - Federal skilled worker[227]
            - Quebec skilled worker[228]
        - Skilled trades worker[229]
        - Canadian experience class[230]
        - Caregiver[231]

---

[224] This category includes immigrants who have been selected for their ability to contribute to Canada's economy through their ability to meet labour market needs, to own and manage or to build a business, to make a substantial investment, to create their own employment or to meet specific provincial or territorial labour market needs.

[225] This category includes immigrants who have been selected for their ability to meet labour market needs. They were assessed on the basis of their skills and work experience, either as skilled workers, skilled trades workers or based on their Canadian work experience, including skilled work experience and work experience as caregivers.

[226] This category includes immigrants who have been selected for their ability to meet specific labour needs as skilled workers. They were assessed on the basis of selection criteria such as their education, language abilities and work experience in management, professional or technical jobs.

[227] This category includes immigrants who have been selected by the federal government for their ability to meet specific labour needs as skilled workers. They were assessed on the basis of selection criteria such as their education, language abilities and work experience in management, professional or technical jobs. Since 1991, they must have had the intention to reside in a province or territory other than Quebec.

[228] This category includes immigrants who have been selected by the Quebec government for their ability to meet specific labour needs as skilled workers. They were assessed on the basis of selection criteria such as their education, language abilities and work experience in management, professional, or technical jobs. They must have had the intention to reside in the province of Quebec. This category also includes immigrants who were granted permanent resident status on the basis of their Quebec work experience. The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 1991.

[229] This category includes immigrants who have been selected by the federal government for their ability to meet labour needs in specific trades. They were assessed on the basis of selection criteria such as their education, language abilities and work experience in qualifying skilled trades jobs. They must have had a valid offer of employment in a skilled trades occupation by a Canadian employer or a certificate of qualification in a skilled trades occupation issued by a provincial or territorial authority. They must have had the intention to reside in a province or territory other than Quebec. The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 2013.

[230] This category includes immigrants who have been selected by the federal government and were granted permanent resident status on the basis of their Canadian work experience. They were assessed on the basis of selection criteria such as their Canadian education, language abilities and Canadian work experience in management, professional, or technical jobs. They must have had the intention to reside in a province or territory other than Quebec. The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 2009.

[231] This category includes immigrants who were granted permanent resident status after providing, in Canada and for a determinate period of time, home child care or care for people with care needs such as the elderly, people with disabilities or people with chronic disease. Most immigrants classified under this category must have worked as a live-in employee in a private residence in Canada during their qualifying period of temporary work. Immigrants admitted under the Foreign domestic program (replaced by the live-in caregiver program in 1992) are included in this category. The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 1982.

- **Business programs**[232]
    - Entrepreneur[233]
        - Federal entrepreneur[234]
        - Quebec entrepreneur[235]
    - Investor[236]
        - Federal investor[237]
        - Quebec investor[238]
    - Self-employed[239]
        - Federal self-employed[240]
        - Quebec self-employed[241]
- **Provincial and territorial nominee**[242]

---

[232] This category includes immigrants who have been selected for their skills and potential to own and manage or to build a business, to make a substantial investment, or to create their own employment.

[233] This category includes immigrants who have been selected for their skills and potential to own and manage or to build a qualifying business in Canada.

[234] This category includes immigrants who have been selected by the federal government for their skills and potential to own and manage a business. They must have had a minimum net worth and were admitted on the condition that they own and manage a qualifying business in Canada for a determinate period of time. This category also includes a small number of immigrants who have been selected by the federal government for their skills and potential to build an innovative business in Canada that can create jobs for Canadians and compete on a global scale. They must have obtained support for their business idea from a designated Canadian business incubator, venture capital fund or angel investor group. Since 1991, they must have had the intention to reside in a province or territory other than Quebec.

[235] This category includes immigrants who have been selected by the Quebec government for their skills and potential to own and manage a business. They must have had a minimum net worth and were admitted on the condition that they own and manage a qualifying business in Quebec for a determinate period of time. They must have had the intention to reside in the province of Quebec. The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 1993.

[236] This category includes immigrants who were granted permanent resident status on the condition that they make a substantial investment in Canada. They must have had a minimum net worth and their investment was used in Canada for economic development and job creation. The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 1986.

[237] This category includes immigrants who were selected by the federal government and were granted permanent resident status on the condition that they make a substantial investment in Canada. They must have had a minimum net worth and their investment was used in Canada for economic development and job creation. Since 1991, they must have had the intention to reside in a province or territory other than Quebec. The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 1986.

[238] This category includes immigrants who were selected by the Quebec government and were granted permanent resident status on the condition that they make a substantial investment in Quebec. They must have had a minimum net worth and their investment was used in Quebec for economic development and job creation. They must have had the intention to reside in the province of Quebec. The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 1993.

[239] This category includes immigrants who were granted permanent resident status on the condition that they can, and intend to, create their own employment in Canada and contribute significantly to the Canadian economy or to the country cultural or athletic life.

[240] This category includes immigrants who were selected by the federal government and were granted permanent resident status on the condition that they can, and intend to, create their own employment in Canada and contribute significantly to the Canadian economy or to the country cultural or athletic life. Since 1991, they must have had the intention to reside in a province or territory other than Quebec.

[241] This category includes immigrants who were selected by the Quebec government and were granted permanent resident status on the condition that they can, and intend to, create their own employment in Quebec and contribute significantly to the province economy. They must have had the intention to reside in the province of Quebec. The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 1994.

[242] This category includes immigrants who have been nominated by a province or territory for their ability to contribute to the local economy and meet specific labour market and economic development needs. They were assessed on the basis of selection criteria such as their education, work experience and specific skills and must have had the ability to economically establish. The federal government makes the final selection decision, but each participating province and territory determines its own criteria to nominate people who meet their labour market and economic development needs such as students, business people, skilled workers or semi-skilled workers. They must have had the intention to reside in the province or territory that nominated them. The province of Quebec and the territory of Nunavut don't have a provincial or territorial nominee program. The programs for each participating province and territory were put in place in different years. The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 1996, nominated by the province of Manitoba.

2. **Immigrant sponsored by family**[243]
    - Sponsored spouse or partner[244]
    - Sponsored parent or grandparent[245]
    - Sponsored child[246]
    - Sponsored intercountry adopted child[247]
    - Public policy or humanitarian and compassionate case sponsored by family[248]
    - Immigrant sponsored by family, not included elsewhere[249]
3. **Refugee**[250]
    - **Protected person in Canada or dependant abroad**[251]
        - Protected person in Canada[252]
        - Dependant abroad of a protected person in Canada[253]

---

[243] This category includes immigrants who were sponsored by a Canadian citizen or permanent resident and were granted permanent resident status on the basis of their relationship either as the spouse, partner, parent, grand-parent, child or other relative of this sponsor. The terms "family class" or "family reunification" are sometime used to refer to this category.

[244] This category includes immigrants who were sponsored by a Canadian citizen or permanent resident and who have been granted permanent resident status on the basis of their relationship as the spouse, fiancé, common-law or conjugal partner of this sponsor. Since 2002, fiancés are no longer eligible for sponsorship under this category.

[245] This category includes immigrants who were sponsored by a Canadian citizen or permanent resident and who have been granted permanent resident status on the basis of their relationship as the mother, father, grandmother or grandfather of this sponsor.

[246] This category includes immigrants who were sponsored by a Canadian citizen or permanent resident and who have been granted permanent resident status on the basis of their relationship as the dependent child of this sponsor.

[247] This category includes immigrants who were sponsored by a Canadian citizen or permanent resident living in Canada and who have been granted permanent resident status on the basis of an intercountry adoption by this sponsor or this sponsor's intention to adopt them in Canada. Not all intercountry adoptions are included in this category. Some intercountry adopted children are granted permanent resident status while others are granted Canadian citizenship without first becoming permanent residents. The latter group is not included in this category.

[248] This category includes immigrants who were sponsored by a Canadian citizen or permanent resident living in Canada, who may not have qualified in any program, but have been granted, on an exceptional basis, permanent resident status based on humanitarian and compassionate considerations. Data for this category are only available for immigrants who have landed between 2002 and 2014.

[249] This category includes immigrants who were sponsored by a Canadian citizen or permanent resident living in Canada and who have been granted permanent resident status on the basis of their family relationship with this sponsor. Family relationships eligible for sponsorship under this category include young brothers, sisters, nephews, nieces and grandchildren who are orphans, or any other relative if the sponsor has no spouse, partner, parent, grandparent, children, aunt, uncle, niece, or nephew who they could sponsor or who is a Canadian citizen or permanent resident.

[250] This category includes immigrants who were granted permanent resident status on the basis of a well-founded fear of returning to their home country. This category includes persons who had a well-founded fear of persecution for reasons of race, religion, nationality, membership in particular social group or for political opinion (Geneva Convention refugees) as well as persons who had been seriously and personally affected by civil war or armed conflict, or have suffered a massive violation of human rights. Some refugees were in Canada when they applied for refugee protection for themselves and their family members (either with them in Canada or abroad). Others were abroad and were referred for resettlement to Canada by the United Nations Refugee Agency, another designated referral organization or private sponsors.

[251] This category includes immigrants who applied for refugee protection status while in Canada and who were granted permanent status on the basis of a well-founded fear of returning to their country of origin as well as immigrants who were granted permanent resident status as their family members abroad. The first group includes persons who had a well-founded fear of persecution for reasons of race, religion, nationality, membership in particular social group or political opinion (Geneva convention refugees). The term "refugees landed in Canada" was formerly used to refer to the protected persons in Canada. Data for this category are only available for immigrants who have landed since 1990.

[252] This category includes immigrants who applied for refugee protection status while in Canada and who were granted permanent resident status on the basis of a well-founded fear of returning to their country of origin. This category includes persons who had a well-founded fear of persecution for reasons of race, religion, nationality, membership in particular social group or political opinion (Geneva convention refugees). The term "refugees landed in Canada" was formerly used to refer to the protected persons in Canada. Data for this category are only available for immigrants who have landed since 1990.

[253] This category includes immigrants who have been granted permanent resident status as family members of a protected person in Canada, who were living abroad at the time of application and whose application for permanent residence was considered concurrently with that of the protected person in Canada. Data for this category are only available for immigrants who have landed since 1990.

- **Resettled refugee**[254]
    - Government-assisted refugee[255]
    - Privately sponsored refugee[256]
    - Blended visa office-referred refugee[257]

4. **Other immigrant**[258]
    - Public policy or humanitarian and compassionate case[259]
        - Humanitarian and compassionate case[260]
        - Public policy case[261]
    - Other immigrant, not included elsewhere[262]

---

[254] This category includes immigrants who have been selected abroad while outside of their home country or country where they normally lived and who were granted permanent resident status on the basis of a well-founded fear of returning to that country. The United Nations Refugee Agency, another designated referral organization or a private sponsor referred them for resettlement to Canada. This category includes persons who had a well-founded fear of persecution for reasons of race, religion, nationality, membership in particular social group or political opinion (Geneva Convention refugees) as well as persons who had been seriously and personally affected by civil war or armed conflict, or have suffered a massive violation of human rights.

[255] This category includes immigrants who have been selected abroad while outside of their home country or country where they normally lived, who were granted permanent resident status on the basis of a well-founded fear of returning to that country and who have received resettlement assistance from the federal government. The United Nations Refugee Agency or another designated referral organization referred them for resettlement to Canada. This category includes persons who had a well-founded fear of persecution for reasons of race, religion, nationality, membership in particular social group or political opinion (Geneva Convention refugees).

[256] This category includes immigrants who have been selected abroad while outside of their home country or country where they normally lived, who were granted permanent resident status on the basis of a well-founded fear of returning to that country and who were privately sponsored by organizations, groups of Canadian citizens and/or permanent residents, or had the funds to support themselves and any dependants after they arrived in Canada. Private sponsors in Canada referred them for resettlement to Canada. This category includes persons who had a well-founded fear of persecution for reasons of race, religion, nationality, membership in particular social group or political opinion (Geneva Convention refugees) as well as persons who had been seriously and personally affected by civil war or armed conflict, or have suffered a massive violation of human rights.

[257] This category includes immigrants who have been selected abroad while outside of their home country or country where they normally lived, who were granted permanent resident status on the basis of a well-founded fear of returning to that country and who have received resettlement assistance from both the federal government and private sponsors. The United Nations Refugee Agency or another designated referral organization referred them for resettlement to Canada. This category includes persons who had a well-founded fear of persecution for reasons of race, religion, nationality, membership in particular social group or political opinion (Geneva Convention refugees). The first immigrants admitted under a program classified in this category landed in 2013.

[258] This category includes immigrants who were granted permanent resident status under a program that does not fall in the economic immigrants, the immigrants sponsored by family or the refugee categories.

[259] This category includes immigrants who may not have qualified in any program but have been granted, on an exceptional basis, permanent resident status based on humanitarian and compassionate considerations or for public policy reasons. Data for this category are only available for immigrants who have landed since 2002.

[260] This category includes immigrants who would not normally have qualified under any program but have been granted, on an exceptional basis, permanent resident status based on humanitarian and compassionate considerations. Data for this category are only available for immigrants who have landed since 2002.

[261] This category includes immigrants who may not have qualified for any program but have been granted, on an exceptional basis, permanent resident status for public policy reasons. Persons admitted under this category would have been exempted from some requirements stipulated in other programs, examples could include, exemption from a requirement to provide particular documentation certifying one's status as a refugee, exemption to pay the processing fee, exemption to meet the age-based requirement, etc. Data for this category are only available for immigrants who have landed since 2004.

[262] This category includes immigrants who have been granted permanent resident status under a program not classified in any other category.

Appendix 5.6 Knowledge of non-official languages, classifications from 2016, 2011 and 2006

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
None	None	None
Non-official languages	Non-official languages	Non-official languages
Aboriginal languages	Aboriginal languages	Aboriginal languages
Algonquian languages	Algonquian languages	Algonquian languages
Blackfoot	Blackfoot	Blackfoot
Cree-Montagnais languages	Not available	Not available
Atikamekw	Atikamekw	Atikamekw
Montagnais (Innu)[1]	Innu/Montagnais	Montagnais-Naskapi[2]
Moose Cree	Not available	Not available
Naskapi	Naskapi	Not available
Northern East Cree	Not available	Not available
Plains Cree	Plains Cree	Not available
Southern East Cree	Not available	Not available
Swampy Cree	Swampy Cree	Not available
Woods Cree	Woods Cree	Not available
Cree, n.o.s.	Cree, n.o.s.	Cree[3]
Eastern Algonquian languages	Not available	Not available
Malecite	Malecite	Malecite
Mi'kmaq	Mi'kmaq	Mi'kmaq
Ojibway-Potawatomi languages	Not available	Not available
Algonquin	Algonquin	Algonquin
Ojibway	Ojibway	Ojibway
Oji-Cree	Oji-Cree	Oji-Cree
Ottawa (Odawa)	Not available	Not available
Algonquian languages, n.i.e.	Algonquian languages, n.i.e.	Algonquian languages, n.i.e.
Athabaskan languages[4]	Athapaskan languages	Athapaskan languages
Northern Athabaskan languages	Not available	Not available
Babine (Wetsuwet'en)	Wetsuweten	Not available
Beaver	Beaver	Not available
Carrier	Carrier	Carrier
Chilcotin	Chilcotin	Chilcotin
Dene[5]	Dene[5]	Dene
Dogrib (Tlicho)[4]	Tlicho (Dogrib)[6]	Dogrib
Gwich'in	Gwich'in[6]	Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)
Sarsi (Sarcee)[4]	Sarcee	Not available
Sekani	Sekani	Not available
Slavey-Hare languages	Not available	Not available
North Slavey (Hare)	North Slavey (Hare)[6]	North Slave (Hare)
South Slavey	South Slavey[6]	South Slave
Slavey, n.o.s.	Slavey, n.o.s.	Not available
Tahltan languages	Not available	Not available
Kaska (Nahani)	Kaska (Nahani)	Not available

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Tahltan	Tahltan	Not available
Tutchone languages[7]	Not available	Not available
Northern Tutchone	Northern Tutchone	Not available
Southern Tutchone	Southern Tutchone	Not available
Athabaskan languages, n.i.e.[4]	Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.	Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.
Haida	Haida	Haida
Inuit languages	Inuit languages	Inuktitut[8]
Inuinnaqtun (Inuvialuktun)[9,10]	Inuinnaqtun	Inuinnaqtun
Inuktitut	Inuktitut	Not available
Inuit languages, n.i.e.	Inuit languages, n.i.e.	Inuktitut, n.i.e.[11]
Iroquoian languages	Iroquoian languages	Iroquoian languages
Cayuga	Cayuga	Not available
Mohawk	Mohawk	Mohawk
Oneida	Oneida	Not available
Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.	Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.	Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.
Kutenai	Kutenai	Kutenai
Michif	Michif	Not available
Salish languages	Salish languages	Salish languages
Comox	Not available	Not available
Halkomelem	Halkomelem	Not available
Lillooet	Lillooet	Not available
Okanagan	Okanagan	Not available
Shuswap (Secwepemctsin)	Shuswap (Secwepemctsin)[6]	Shuswap
Squamish	Squamish	Not available
Straits	Straits	Not available
Thompson (Ntlakapamux)	Thompson (Ntlakapamux)	Thompson (Ntlakapamux)
Salish languages, n.i.e.	Salish languages, n.i.e.	Salish languages, n.i.e.
Siouan languages	Siouan languages[6]	Siouan languages (Dakota/Sioux)
Dakota	Dakota	Not available
Stoney	Stoney	Not available
Siouan languages, n.i.e.	Siouan languages, n.i.e.	Not available
Tlingit	Tlingit	Tlingit
Tsimshian languages	Tsimshian languages	Tsimshian languages
Gitxsan (Gitksan)[4]	Gitksan	Gitksan
Nisga'a	Nisga'a	Nisga'a
Tsimshian	Tsimshian	Tsimshian
Wakashan languages	Wakashan languages	Wakashan languages
Haisla	Haisla	Not available
Heiltsuk	Heiltsuk	Not available
Kwakiutl (Kwak'wala)	Kwakiutl (Kwak'wala)	Not available
Nuu-chah-nulth (Nootka)[4]	Nootka (Nuu-chah-nulth)[6]	Nootka
Wakashan languages, n.i.e.	Wakashan languages, n.i.e.	Wakashan languages, n.i.e.
Aboriginal languages, n.o.s.[12]	Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.	Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.
Non-Aboriginal languages	Non-Aboriginal languages	Non-Aboriginal languages
Afro-Asiatic languages	Afro-Asiatic languages	Afro-Asiatic languages

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Berber languages[4]	Berber languages (Kabyle)	Berber languages (Kabyle)
Kabyle	Not available	Not available
Berber languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Cushitic languages	Cushitic languages	Cushitic languages
Bilen	Not available	Not available
Oromo	Oromo	Oromo
Somali	Somali	Somali
Cushitic languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Semitic languages	Semitic languages	Semitic languages
Amharic	Amharic	Amharic
Arabic	Arabic	Arabic
Assyrian Neo-Aramaic	Not available	Not available
Chaldean Neo-Aramaic	Not available	Not available
Harari	Not available	Not available
Hebrew	Hebrew	Hebrew
Maltese	Maltese	Maltese
Tigrigna	Tigrigna	Tigrigna
Semitic languages, n.i.e.	Semitic languages, n.i.e.	Semitic languages, n.i.e.
Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.
Austro-Asiatic languages	Austro-Asiatic languages	Austro-Asiatic languages
Khmer (Cambodian)	Khmer (Cambodian)	Khmer (Cambodian)
Vietnamese	Vietnamese	Vietnamese
Austro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e	Not available	Not available
Austronesian languages[4]	Malayo-Polynesian languages	Malayo-Polynesian languages
Bikol	Bikol	Not available
Cebuano	Not available	Not available
Fijian	Fijian	Not available
Hiligaynon	Not available	Not available
Ilocano	Ilocano	Ilocano
Malagasy	Malagasy	Not available
Malay	Malay	Malay
Pampangan (Kapampangan, Pampango)[4]	Pampango	Pampango
Pangasinan	Pangasinan	Not available
Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)	Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)	Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)
Waray-Waray	Not available	Not available
Austronesian languages, n.i.e.[4]	Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.	Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.
Creole languages[4]	Creoles	Creoles
Haitian Creole	Not available	Not available
Creole, n.o.s.	Not available	Not available
Creole languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Dravidian languages	Dravidian languages	Dravidian languages
Kannada	Kannada	Kannada
Malayalam	Malayalam	Malayalam

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Tamil	Tamil	Tamil
Telugu	Telugu	Telugu
Dravidian languages, n.i.e.	Dravidian languages, n.i.e.	Dravidian languages, n.i.e.
Hmong-Mien languages	Not available	Not available
Indo-European languages	Not available	Not available
Albanian	Albanian	Not available
Armenian	Armenian	Armenian
Balto-Slavic languages	Not available	Not available
Baltic languages	Baltic languages	Baltic languages
Latvian	Latvian	Latvian
Lithuanian	Lithuanian	Lithuanian
Slavic languages	Slavic languages	Slavic languages
Belarusan[4]	Belarusian (Byelorussian)[6]	Belarusan (Byelorussian)
Bosnian	Bosnian	Bosnian
Bulgarian	Bulgarian	Bulgarian
Croatian	Croatian	Croatian
Czech	Czech	Czech
Macedonian	Macedonian	Macedonian
Polish	Polish	Polish
Russian	Russian	Russian
Serbian	Serbian	Serbian
Serbo-Croatian	Serbo-Croatian	Serbo-Croatian
Slovak	Slovak	Slovak
Slovene (Slovenian)[4]	Slovenian	Slovenian
Ukrainian	Ukrainian	Ukrainian
Slavic languages, n.i.e.	Slavic languages, n.i.e.	Slavic languages, n.i.e.
Celtic languages	Celtic languages	Celtic languages
Scottish Gaelic	Gaelic languages[13]	Gaelic languages[13]
Welsh	Welsh	Welsh
Celtic languages, n.i.e.[14]	Celtic languages, n.i.e.	Celtic languages, n.i.e.
Germanic languages	Germanic languages	Germanic languages
Afrikaans	Afrikaans	Not available
Danish	Danish	Danish
Dutch	Dutch	Dutch
Frisian	Frisian	Frisian
German	German	German
Icelandic	Icelandic	Icelandic
Norwegian	Norwegian	Norwegian
Swedish	Swedish	Swedish
Vlaams (Flemish)[4]	Flemish	Flemish
Yiddish	Yiddish	Yiddish
Germanic languages, n.i.e.	Germanic languages, n.i.e.	Germanic languages, n.i.e.[15]
Greek	Greek	Greek
Indo-Iranian languages	Indo-Iranian languages	Indo-Iranian languages

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Indo-Aryan languages	Indo-Aryan languages	Not available
Bengali	Bengali	Bengali
Gujarati	Gujarati	Gujarati
Hindi	Hindi	Hindi
Kashmiri	Not available	Not available
Konkani	Konkani	Konkani
Marathi	Marathi	Marathi
Nepali	Nepali	Not available
Oriya (Odia)	Not available	Not available
Punjabi (Panjabi)[4]	Panjabi (Punjabi)	Panjabi (Punjabi)
Sindhi	Sindhi	Sindhi
Sinhala (Sinhalese)	Sinhala (Sinhalese)	Sinhala (Sinhalese)
Urdu	Urdu	Urdu
Iranian languages	Iranian languages	Iranian languages
Kurdish	Kurdish	Kurdish
Pashto	Pashto	Pashto
Persian (Farsi)	Persian (Farsi)	Persian (Farsi)
Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.	Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.	Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.
Italic (Romance) languages[4]	Romance languages	Romance languages
Catalan	Catalan	Not available
Italian	Italian	Italian
Portuguese	Portuguese	Portuguese
Romanian	Romanian	Romanian
Spanish	Spanish	Spanish
Italic (Romance) languages, n.i.e.[4]	Romance languages, n.i.e.	Romance languages, n.i.e.
Japanese	Japanese	Japanese
Kartvelian languages	Not available	Not available
Georgian	Georgian	Not available
Korean	Korean	Korean
Mongolic languages	Not available	Not available
Mongolian	Mongolian	Not available
Niger-Congo languages	Niger-Congo languages	Niger-Congo languages
Akan (Twi)	Akan (Twi)	Akan (Twi)
Bamanankan	Bamanankan	Not available
Edo	Edo	Edo
Ewe	Ewe	Not available
Fulah (Pular, Pulaar, Fulfulde)	Not available	Not available
Ga	Ga	Not available
Ganda	Ganda	Not available
Igbo	Igbo	Igbo
Lingala	Lingala	Lingala

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Rundi (Kirundi)	Rundi (Kirundi)	Rundi (Kirundi)
Kinyarwanda (Rwanda)[4]	Rwanda (Kinyarwanda)	Rwanda (Kinyarwanda)
Shona	Shona	Shona
Swahili	Swahili	Swahili
Wolof	Wolof	Wolof
Yoruba	Not available	Not available
Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.	Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.	Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.
Nilo-Saharan languages	Not available	Not available
Dinka	Not available	Not available
Nilo-Saharan languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Sign languages[4]	Non-verbal languages	Non-verbal languages
American Sign Language	American Sign Language	American Sign Language
Quebec Sign Language	Quebec Sign Language	Quebec Sign Language
Sign languages, n.i.e	Sign languages, n.i.e	Sign languages, n.i.e
Sino-Tibetan languages	Sino-Tibetan languages	Sino-Tibetan languages
Chinese languages	Chinese languages	Chinese languages
Cantonese	Cantonese	Cantonese
Hakka	Hakka	Hakka
Mandarin	Mandarin	Mandarin
Min Dong	Not available	Not available
Min Nan (Chaochow, Teochow, Fukien, Taiwanese)[16]	Not available	Not available
Wu (Shanghainese)[4]	Shanghainese	Shanghainese
Chinese, n.o.s.	Chinese, n.o.s.[17]	Chinese, n.o.s.[17]
Chinese languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Tibeto-Burman languages	Not available	Not available
Burmese	Burmese	Not available
Karenic languages	Not available	Not available
Tibetan	Tibetan languages[18]	Tibetan languages[18]
Tibeto-Burman languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Tai-Kadai languages[4]	Tai languages	Tai languages
Lao	Lao	Lao
Thai	Thai	Thai
Tai-Kadai languages, n.i.e	Not available	Not available
Turkic languages	Turkic languages	Turkic languages
Azerbaijani	Azerbaijani	Azerbaijani
Turkish	Turkish	Turkish
Uyghur	Not available	Not available
Uzbek	Not available	Not available
Turkic languages, n.i.e.	Turkic languages, n.i.e.	Turkic languages, n.i.e.
Uralic languages[4]	Finno-Ugric languages	Finno-Ugric languages
Estonian	Estonian	Estonian

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Finnish	Finnish	Finnish
Hungarian	Hungarian	Hungarian
Uralic languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Other languages, n.i.e.[19]	Other languages	Other languages

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere

n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

1. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2011.
2. This category is equivalent to Montagnais (Innu) and Naskapi in 2016.
3. This category is equivalent to Cree, n.o.s., Swampy Cree, Plains Cree, Woods Cree, and Cree, n.i.e. in 2011, and to Cree, n.o.s., Woods Cree, Swampy Cree, Southern East Cree, Plains Cree, Northern East Cree, and Moose Cree in 2016.
4. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2011 and 2006.
5. This category is equivalent to Dene and Chipewyan in 2006.
6. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2006.
7. This category is equivalent to Northern Tutchone, Southern Tutchone, and Tutchone, n.o.s. in 2011.
8. In 2006, Inuktitut was the name of the language family that consisted of Inuinnaqtun and Inuktitut, n.i.e.
9. This category is equivalent to Inuinnaqtun and Inuvialuktun in 2011.
10. As in 2011, Inuinnaqtun and Inuvialuktun are also available as separate categories in 2016.
11. This category is equivalent to Inuktitut, Inuvialuktun, and Inuit languages, n.i.e. in 2011 and 2016.
12. Responses of Aboriginal languages, n.i.e. are included in their corresponding Aboriginal language family n.i.e. category.
13. This category includes Scottish Gaelic and Irish (Irish Gaelic).
14. Irish (Irish Gaelic) is included in Celtic, n.i.e. in 2016.
15. This category is equivalent to Germanic languages, n.i.e. and Afrikaans in 2016 and 2011.
16. Chaochow (Teochow), Fukien, and Taiwanese were separate categories in 2011 and 2006.
17. This category is equivalent to Chinese, n.o.s. and Chinese, n.i.e. in 2016.
18. This category is equivalent to Tibetan and Karenic languages in 2016.
19. This category is equivalent to Other languages, and African languages, n.i.e. in 2011 and 2006.

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Appendix 6.1 Comparability of labour force status data from the 2016 Census of Population (long-form questionnaire) and the Labour Force Survey

Both the Census of Population long-form questionnaire and the Labour Force Survey (LFS) collect data on the labour market activities of the Canadian population.

However, there are a number of fundamental differences between the two surveys with respect to:

- enumeration method
- coverage
- sample size
- reference period
- number of questions and their content.

1. Enumeration method

In the Census of Population long-form questionnaire, the method used for most respondents was self-enumeration; that is, people completed the questionnaire themselves. There were two primary collection methods: a paper questionnaire and an online questionnaire, although in some instances, a respondent may have been asked to complete the questionnaire by an enumerator.

The LFS is administered by experienced interviewers using computer-assisted telephone interviews (CATI) or by personal visit from a field interviewer. Since 2015, respondents have the option of completing the survey on-line for subsequent interviews.

2. Coverage

The Census of Population long-form questionnaire, a mandatory survey, includes all people who usually live in Canada as well as persons asking for refugee status, and persons from another country with a work, study or temporary resident permit and family members living with them. The survey excludes people living in institutions such as hospitals and retirement homes. Furthermore, questions on the labour market activities are asked to individuals 15 years of age and over.

The LFS is also a mandatory survey. It covers the civilian and non-institutionalized population aged 15 years of age and over. It is conducted nationwide, in both the provinces and the territories. Excluded from the survey's coverage are: persons living on reserves and other Aboriginal settlements in the provinces; full-time members of the Canadian Armed Forces; the institutionalized population; and households in extreme remote areas with very low population density. The National Labour Force Survey estimates are derived using the results of the LFS in the provinces. Territorial LFS results are not included in the national estimates, but are published separately.

3. Sample size

Approximately 3.5 million households across Canada were selected for the 2016 Census of Population long-form questionnaire. This represents about 22% of all households.

The monthly LFS sample size is approximately 56,000 households, resulting in the collection of labour market information for approximately 100,000 individuals.

4. Reference period

The reference period for the 2016 Census of Population was the week of Sunday, May 1 to Saturday, May 7, 2016. However, all households in the 2016 Census of Population sample in remote and northern areas of the country received the questionnaire between February and April 2016, in which case, the reference period was the week prior to the date on which the household was enumerated.

The reference period for the May 2016 Labour Force Survey was the week of Sunday, May 15 to Saturday, May 21, 2016.

5. Number of questions and their content

The 2016 Census of Population long-form questionnaire included five questions on labour market activities:

- the number of hours worked for pay or in self-employment;
- a temporary lay-off or absence from job or business;
- the existence of definite arrangements to start a new job within the next four weeks;
- the search for paid work (full-time or part-time) during the past four weeks;
- the availability to start a job during the last week, if one had been available.

There were three possible sequences of questions depending on the respondent's situation. For example, a respondent who reported having worked one or more hours during the reference week was not required to answer the other four questions.

The LFS contains a more extensive set of labour questions. The interview is computer-assisted, which makes it possible to tailor the sequence and content of the questions to the respondent. The method also provides the opportunity to clarify and correct responses as the interview progresses.

The assignment of the labour force status values, e.g., 'employed,' 'unemployed' and 'not in the labour force' can differ between the two surveys because the following individuals can be classified differently:

a. Self-employed workers

In the 2016 Census of Population long-form questionnaire, self-employed workers who do not report working any hours or being absent from work during the reference week were classified as 'unemployed' or 'not in the labour force,' depending on their responses to the other questions. As well, the 2016 Census of Population long-form questionnaire did not ask respondents the reason for their absence.

In the LFS, the same self-employed workers may be classified as 'employed' if they attributed their absence to not having any work during the reference week.

b. Persons on lay-off

In both the 2016 Census of Population and the LFS, persons on lay-off are classified as 'unemployed' if they are available for work, or as 'not in the labour force' if they are not available for work during the reference week.

According to the 2016 Census of Population, persons on lay-off expect to return to their jobs. No limit is specified for returning to work or for the duration of the lay-off. Seasonal workers are not explicitly excluded from this category.

According to the LFS, persons on lay-off have been temporarily released by their employers due to economic conditions. They must have a definite date to return to work, or an indication that they will be recalled in the future. The lay-off period must not exceed one year, and seasonal workers are not included in this category.

c. Students

In the 2016 Census of Population, full-time students looking for full-time work who are not employed and are available for work are considered unemployed.

In the LFS, full-time students currently attending schools and looking for full-time work are not considered to be available for work during the reference week. They are assumed to be looking for a summer or co-op job or permanent job to start sometime in the future, and are therefore not part of the labour force.

For more information about the Labour Force Survey, refer to the *Guide to the Labour Force Survey*, (http://www5.statcan.gc.ca/olc-cel/olc.action?objId=71-543-G&ObjType=2&lang=en&limit=0) Catalogue no. 71-543-G.

Appendix 6.2 Major field of study – Classification based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016 codes

CIP Canada 2016 classification structure (http://www23.statcan.gc.ca/imdb/p3VD.pl?Function=getVD&TVD=299355)

Publication date: August 2016

(Source: Statistics Canada—Catalogue no. 12-590-X)

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
01.	**Agriculture, agriculture operations and related sciences**	
01.00	**Agriculture, general**	
01.0000	Agriculture, general	CIP_ALL
01.01	**Agricultural business and management**	
01.0101	Agricultural business and management, general	CIP_ALL
01.0102	Agribusiness/agricultural business operations	CIP_ALL
01.0103	Agricultural economics	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.0104	Farm/farm and ranch management	CIP_ALL
01.0105	Agricultural/farm supplies retailing and wholesaling	CIP_TR_COL
01.0106	Agricultural business technology	CIP_TR_COL
01.0199	Agricultural business and management, other	CIP_ALL
01.02	**Agricultural mechanization**	
01.0201	Agricultural mechanization, general	CIP_ALL
01.0204	Agricultural power machinery operation	CIP_TR_COL
01.0205	Agricultural mechanics and equipment/machine technology	CIP_TR_COL
01.0299	Agricultural mechanization, other	CIP_ALL
01.03	**Agricultural production operations**	
01.0301	Agricultural production operations, general	CIP_TR_COL
01.0302	Animal/livestock husbandry and production	CIP_TR_COL
01.0303	Aquaculture	CIP_ALL
01.0304	Crop production	CIP_ALL
01.0306	Dairy husbandry and production	CIP_ALL
01.0307	Horse husbandry/equine science and management	CIP_TR_COL
01.0308	Agroecology and sustainable agriculture	CIP_ALL
01.0309	Viticulture and enology	CIP_ALL
01.0399	Agricultural production operations, other	CIP_ALL
01.04	**Agricultural and food products processing**	
01.0401	Agricultural and food products processing	CIP_TR_COL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
01.05	**Agricultural and domestic animal services**	
01.0504	Dog/pet/animal grooming	CIP_TR_COL
01.0505	Animal training	CIP_TR_COL
01.0507	Equestrian/equine studies	CIP_TR_COL
01.0508	Taxidermy/taxidermist	CIP_TR_COL
01.0599	Agricultural and domestic animal services, other	CIP_ALL
01.06	**Applied horticulture/horticultural business services**	
01.0601	Applied horticulture/horticulture operations, general	CIP_ALL
01.0603	Ornamental horticulture	CIP_ALL
01.0604	Greenhouse operations and management	CIP_ALL
01.0605	Landscaping and groundskeeping	CIP_ALL
01.0606	Plant nursery operations and management	CIP_TR_COL
01.0607	Turf and turfgrass management	CIP_TR_COL
01.0608	Floriculture/floristry operations and management	CIP_ALL
01.0699	Applied horticulture/horticultural business services, other	CIP_ALL
01.07	**International agriculture**	
01.0701	International agriculture	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.08	**Agricultural public services**	
01.0801	Agricultural and extension education services	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.0802	Agricultural communication/journalism	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.0899	Agricultural public services, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.09	**Animal sciences**	
01.0901	Animal sciences, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.0902	Agricultural animal breeding	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.0903	Animal health	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.0904	Animal nutrition	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.0905	Dairy science	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.0906	Livestock management	CIP_ALL
01.0907	Poultry science	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.0999	Animal sciences, other	CIP_ALL
01.10	**Food science and technology**	
01.1001	Food science	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.1002	Food technology and processing	CIP_ALL
01.1099	Food science and technology, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
01.11	**Plant sciences**	
01.1101	Plant sciences, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.1102	Agronomy and crop science	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.1103	Horticultural science	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.1104	Agricultural and horticultural plant breeding	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.1105	Plant protection and integrated pest management	CIP_ALL
01.1106	Range science and management	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.1199	Plant sciences, other	CIP_ALL
01.12	**Soil sciences**	
01.1201	Soil science and agronomy, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.1202	Soil chemistry and physics	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.1203	Soil microbiology	CIP_COL_UNIV
01.1299	Soil sciences, other	CIP_ALL
01.99	**Agriculture, agriculture operations and related sciences, other**	
01.9999	Agriculture, agriculture operations and related sciences, other	CIP_ALL
03.	**Natural resources and conservation**	
03.01	**Natural resources conservation and research**	
03.0101	Natural resources/conservation, general	CIP_ALL
03.0103	Environmental studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
03.0104	Environmental science	CIP_COL_UNIV
03.0199	Natural resources conservation and research, other	CIP_ALL
03.02	**Natural resources management and policy**	
03.0201	Natural resources management and policy, general	CIP_ALL
03.0204	Natural resource economics	CIP_UNIV
03.0205	Water, wetlands and marine resources management	CIP_ALL
03.0206	Land use planning and management/development	CIP_ALL
03.0207	Natural resource recreation and tourism	CIP_ALL
03.0208	Natural resources law enforcement and protective services	CIP_TR_COL
03.0299	Natural resources management and policy, other	CIP_ALL
03.03	**Fishing and fisheries sciences and management**	
03.0301	Fishing and fisheries sciences and management	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
03.05	**Forestry**	
03.0501	Forestry, general	CIP_ALL
03.0502	Forest sciences and biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
03.0506	Forest management/forest resources management	CIP_ALL
03.0508	Urban forestry	CIP_ALL
03.0509	Wood science and wood products/pulp and paper technology	CIP_ALL
03.0510	Forest resources production and management	CIP_COL_UNIV
03.0511	Forest technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
03.0599	Forestry, other	CIP_ALL
03.06	**Wildlife and wildlands science and management**	
03.0601	Wildlife, fish and wildlands science and management	CIP_ALL
03.99	**Natural resources and conservation, other**	
03.9999	Natural resources and conservation, other	CIP_ALL
04.	**Architecture and related services**	
04.02	**Architecture (BArch, BA, BS, BSc, MArch, MA, MS, MSc, PhD)**	
04.0201	Architecture (BArch, BA, BS, BSc, MArch, MA, MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_UNIV
04.03	**City/urban, community and regional planning**	
04.0301	City/urban, community and regional planning	CIP_COL_UNIV
04.04	**Environmental design/architecture**	
04.0401	Environmental design/architecture	CIP_COL_UNIV
04.05	**Interior architecture**	
04.0501	Interior architecture	CIP_COL_UNIV
04.06	**Landscape architecture (BS, BSc, BSLA, BLA, MSLA, MLA, PhD)**	
04.0601	Landscape architecture (BS, BSc, BSLA, BLA, MSLA, MLA, PhD)	CIP_UNIV
04.08	**Architectural history and criticism**	
04.0801	Architectural history and criticism	CIP_UNIV
04.09	**Architectural sciences and technology**	
04.0901	Architectural technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
04.0902	Architectural and building sciences/technology (BArch, BA, BS, BSc, MArch, MA, MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_UNIV
04.0999	Architectural sciences and technology, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
04.10	**Real estate development**	
04.1001	Real estate development	CIP_COL_UNIV
04.99	**Architecture and related services, other**	
04.9999	Architecture and related services, other	CIP_ALL
05.	**Area, ethnic, cultural, gender, and group studies**	
05.01	**Area studies**	
05.0101	African studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0102	American/United States studies/civilization	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0103	Asian studies/civilization	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0104	East Asian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0105	Russian, Central European, East European and Eurasian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0106	European studies/civilization	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0107	Latin American studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0108	Near and Middle Eastern studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0109	Pacific Area/Pacific Rim studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0110	Russian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0111	Scandinavian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0112	South Asian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0113	Southeast Asian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0114	Western European studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0115	Canadian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0116	Balkan studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0117	Baltic studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0118	Slavic studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0119	Caribbean studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0120	Ural-Altaic and Central Asian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0121	Commonwealth studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0122	Regional studies (U.S., Canadian, foreign)	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0123	Chinese studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0124	French studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0125	German studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0126	Italian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0127	Japanese studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0128	Korean studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0129	Polish studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0130	Spanish and Iberian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0131	Tibetan studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0132	Ukraine studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0133	Irish studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0134	Latin American and Caribbean studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0199	Area studies, other	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
05.02	**Ethnic, cultural minority, gender, and group studies**	
05.0200	Ethnic studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0201	African American/Black studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0202	Aboriginal studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0203	Hispanic American, Puerto Rican and Mexican American/Chicano studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0206	Asian American studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0207	Women's studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0208	Gay/lesbian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0209	Folklore studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0210	Disability studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0211	Deaf studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.0299	Ethnic, cultural minority, gender, and group studies, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
05.99	**Area, ethnic, cultural, gender, and group studies, other**	
05.9999	Area, ethnic, cultural, gender, and group studies, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.	**Communication, journalism and related programs**	
09.01	**Communication and media studies**	
09.0100	Communication, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0101	Speech communication and rhetoric	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0102	Mass communication/media studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0199	Communication and media studies, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.04	**Journalism**	
09.0401	Journalism, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0402	Broadcast journalism	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0404	Photojournalism	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0499	Journalism, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.07	**Radio, television and digital communication**	
09.0701	Radio and television	CIP_ALL
09.0702	Digital communication and media/multimedia	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0799	Radio, television and digital communication, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
09.09	**Public relations, advertising and applied communication**	
09.0900	Public relations, advertising and applied communication, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0901	Organizational communication, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0902	Public relations/image management	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0903	Advertising	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0904	Political communication	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0905	Health communication	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0906	Sports communication	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0907	International and intercultural communication	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.0908	Technical and scientific communication	CIP_ALL
09.0999	Public relations, advertising and applied communication, other	CIP_ALL
09.10	**Publishing**	
09.1001	Publishing	CIP_COL_UNIV
09.99	**Communication, journalism and related programs, other**	
09.9999	Communication, journalism and related programs, other	CIP_ALL
10.	**Communications technologies/technicians and support services**	
10.01	**Communications technology/technician**	
10.0105	Communications technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
10.02	**Audiovisual communications technologies/technicians**	
10.0201	Photographic and film/video technology/technician and assistant	CIP_TR_COL
10.0202	Radio and television broadcasting technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
10.0203	Recording arts technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
10.0299	Audiovisual communications technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL
10.03	**Graphic communications**	
10.0301	Graphic communications, general	CIP_ALL
10.0302	Printing management	CIP_ALL
10.0303	Prepress/desktop publishing and digital imaging design	CIP_TR_COL
10.0304	Animation, interactive technology, video graphics and special effects	CIP_ALL
10.0305	Graphic and printing equipment operator, general production	CIP_TR_COL
10.0306	Platemaker/imager	CIP_TR_COL
10.0307	Printing press operator	CIP_TR_COL
10.0308	Computer typography and composition equipment operator	CIP_TR_COL
10.0399	Graphic communications, other	CIP_ALL
10.99	**Communications technologies/technicians and support services, other**	
10.9999	Communications technologies/technicians and support services, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
11.	**Computer and information sciences and support services**	
11.01	**Computer and information sciences and support services, general**	
11.0101	Computer and information sciences, general	CIP_ALL
11.0102	Artificial intelligence	CIP_COL_UNIV
11.0103	Information technology	CIP_ALL
11.0104	Informatics	CIP_COL_UNIV
11.0199	Computer and information sciences and support services, general, other	CIP_ALL
11.02	**Computer programming**	
11.0201	Computer programming/programmer, general	CIP_ALL
11.0202	Computer programming, specific applications	CIP_TR_COL
11.0203	Computer programming, vendor/product certification	CIP_TR_COL
11.0299	Computer programming, other	CIP_ALL
11.03	**Data processing and data processing technology/technician**	
11.0301	Data processing and data processing technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
11.04	**Information science/studies**	
11.0401	Information science/studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
11.05	**Computer systems analysis/analyst**	
11.0501	Computer systems analysis/analyst	CIP_COL_UNIV
11.06	**Data entry/microcomputer applications**	
11.0601	Data entry/microcomputer applications, general	CIP_TR_COL
11.0602	Word processing	CIP_TR_COL
11.0699	Data entry/microcomputer applications, other	CIP_TR_COL
11.07	**Computer science**	
11.0701	Computer science	CIP_COL_UNIV
11.08	**Computer software and media applications**	
11.0801	Web page, digital/multimedia and information resources design	CIP_ALL
11.0802	Data modelling/warehousing and database administration	CIP_COL_UNIV
11.0803	Computer graphics	CIP_ALL
11.0804	Modeling, virtual environments and simulation	CIP_COL_UNIV
11.0899	Computer software and media applications, other	CIP_ALL
11.09	**Computer systems networking and telecommunications**	
11.0901	Computer systems networking and telecommunications	CIP_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
11.10	**Computer/information technology administration and management**	
11.1001	Network and system administration/administrator	CIP_ALL
11.1002	System, networking and LAN/WAN management/manager	CIP_ALL
11.1003	Computer and information systems security/information assurance	CIP_ALL
11.1004	Web/multimedia management and webmaster	CIP_ALL
11.1005	Information technology project management	CIP_COL_UNIV
11.1006	Computer support specialist	CIP_ALL
11.1099	Computer/information technology administration and management, other	CIP_ALL
11.99	**Computer and information sciences and support services, other**	
11.9999	Computer and information sciences and support services, other	CIP_ALL
12.	**Personal and culinary services**	
12.03	**Funeral service and mortuary science**	
12.0301	Funeral service and mortuary science, general	CIP_TR_COL
12.0302	Funeral direction/service	CIP_TR_COL
12.0303	Mortuary science and embalming/embalmer	CIP_TR_COL
12.0399	Funeral service and mortuary science, other	CIP_TR_COL
12.04	**Cosmetology and related personal grooming services**	
12.0401	Cosmetology/cosmetologist, general	CIP_TR_COL
12.0402	Barbering/barber	CIP_TR_COL
12.0404	Electrolysis/electrology and electrolysis technician	CIP_TR_COL
12.0406	Makeup artist/specialist	CIP_TR_COL
12.0407	Hair styling/stylist and hair design	CIP_TR_COL
12.0408	Facial treatment specialist/facialist	CIP_TR_COL
12.0409	Aesthetician/esthetician and skin care specialist	CIP_TR_COL
12.0410	Nail technician/specialist and manicurist	CIP_TR_COL
12.0411	Permanent cosmetics/makeup and tattooing	CIP_TR_COL
12.0412	Salon/beauty salon management/manager	CIP_TR_COL
12.0413	Cosmetology, barber/styling and nail instructor	CIP_TR_COL
12.0414	Master aesthetician/esthetician	CIP_TR_COL
12.0499	Cosmetology and related personal grooming services, other	CIP_TR_COL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
12.05	**Culinary arts and related services**	
12.0500	Cooking and related culinary arts, general	CIP_TR_COL
12.0501	Baking and pastry arts/baker/pastry chef	CIP_TR_COL
12.0502	Bartending/bartender	CIP_TR_COL
12.0503	Culinary arts/chef training	CIP_TR_COL
12.0504	Restaurant, culinary and catering management/manager	CIP_TR_COL
12.0505	Food preparation/professional cooking/kitchen assistant	CIP_TR_COL
12.0506	Meat cutting/meat cutter	CIP_TR_COL
12.0507	Food service, waiter/waitress and dining room management/manager	CIP_TR_COL
12.0508	Institutional food workers	CIP_TR_COL
12.0509	Culinary science	CIP_ALL
12.0510	Wine steward/sommelier	CIP_TR_COL
12.0599	Culinary arts and related services, other	CIP_ALL
12.99	**Personal and culinary services, other**	
12.9999	Personal and culinary services, other	CIP_ALL
13.	**Education**	
13.01	**Education, general**	
13.0101	Education, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.02	**Bilingual, multilingual and multicultural education**	
13.0201	Bilingual and multilingual education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0202	Multicultural education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0203	Aboriginal education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0299	Bilingual, multilingual and multicultural education, other	CIP_ALL
13.03	**Curriculum and instruction**	
13.0301	Curriculum and instruction	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.04	**Educational administration and supervision**	
13.0401	Educational leadership and administration, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0402	Administration of special education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0403	Adult and continuing education administration	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0404	Educational, instructional and curriculum supervision	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0406	Higher education/higher education administration	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0407	Community college and general and vocational college (CEGEP) administration	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0408	Elementary and middle school administration/principalship	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0409	Secondary school administration/principalship	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0410	Urban education and leadership	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0411	Superintendency and educational system administration	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.0499	Educational administration and supervision, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
13.05	**Educational/instructional media design**	
13.0501	Educational/instructional technology	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.06	**Educational assessment, evaluation and research**	
13.0601	Educational evaluation and research	CIP_UNIV
13.0603	Educational statistics and research methods	CIP_UNIV
13.0604	Educational assessment, testing and measurement	CIP_UNIV
13.0607	Learning sciences	CIP_UNIV
13.0699	Educational assessment, evaluation and research, other	CIP_ALL
13.07	**International and comparative education**	
13.0701	International and comparative education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.09	**Social and philosophical foundations of education**	
13.0901	Social and philosophical foundations of education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.10	**Special education and teaching**	
13.1001	Special education and teaching, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1003	Education/teaching of individuals with hearing impairments including deafness	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1004	Education/teaching of the gifted and talented	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1005	Education/teaching of individuals with emotional disturbances	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1006	Education/teaching of intellectually-impaired individuals	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1007	Education/teaching of individuals with multiple disabilities	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1008	Education/teaching of individuals with orthopedic and other physical health impairments	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1009	Education/teaching of individuals with vision impairments including blindness	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1011	Education/teaching of individuals with specific learning disabilities	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1012	Education/teaching of individuals with speech or language impairments	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1013	Education/teaching of individuals with autism	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1014	Education/teaching of individuals who are developmentally delayed	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1015	Education/teaching of individuals in early childhood special education programs	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1016	Education/teaching of individuals with traumatic brain injuries	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1017	Education/teaching of individuals in elementary special education programs	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1018	Education/teaching of individuals in junior high/middle school special education programs	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1019	Education/teaching of individuals in secondary special education programs	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1099	Special education and teaching, other	CIP_ALL
13.11	**Student counselling and personnel services**	
13.1101	Counsellor education/school counselling and guidance services	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1102	College student counselling and personnel services	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1199	Student counselling and personnel services, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
13.12	**Teacher education and professional development, specific levels and methods**	
13.1201	Adult and continuing education and teaching	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1202	Elementary education and teaching	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1203	Junior high/intermediate/middle school education and teaching	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1205	Secondary education and teaching	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1206	Teacher education, multiple levels	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1207	Montessori teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1208	Waldorf/Steiner teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1209	Kindergarten/preschool education and teaching	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1210	Early childhood education and teaching	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1299	Teacher education and professional development, specific levels and methods, other	CIP_ALL
13.13	**Teacher education and professional development, specific subject areas**	
13.1301	Agricultural teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1302	Art teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1303	Business teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1304	Driver and safety teacher education	CIP_TR_COL
13.1305	English/English language arts teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1306	Aboriginal and foreign language teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1307	Health teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1308	Family and consumer sciences/home economics teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1309	Technology teacher education/industrial arts teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1310	Sales and marketing operations/marketing and distribution teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1311	Mathematics teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1312	Music teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1314	Physical education teaching and coaching	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1315	Reading teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1316	Science teacher education/general science teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1317	Social science teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1318	Social studies teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1319	Technical teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1320	Trade and industrial teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1321	Computer teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1322	Biology teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1323	Chemistry teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1324	Drama and dance teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1325	French language/French language arts teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1326	German language teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1327	Health occupations teacher education	CIP_ALL
13.1328	History teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1329	Physics teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1330	Spanish language teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
13.1331	Speech teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1332	Geography teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1333	Latin teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1334	School librarian/school library media specialist	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1335	Psychology teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1337	Earth science teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1338	Environmental teacher education	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1399	Teacher education and professional development, specific subject areas, other	CIP_ALL
13.14	**Teaching English or French as a second or foreign language**	
13.1401	Teaching English as a second or foreign language/ESL language instructor	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1402	Teaching French as a second or foreign language	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1499	Teaching English or French as a second or foreign language, other	CIP_ALL
13.15	**Teaching assistants/aides**	
13.1501	Teaching assistants/aides, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1502	Adult literacy tutor/instructor	CIP_COL_UNIV
13.1599	Teaching assistants/aides, other	CIP_ALL
13.99	**Education, other**	
13.9999	Education, other	CIP_ALL
14.	**Engineering**	
14.01	**Engineering, general**	
14.0101	Engineering, general	CIP_UNIV
14.0102	Pre-engineering	CIP_COL_UNIV
14.02	**Aerospace, aeronautical and astronautical/space engineering**	
14.0201	Aerospace, aeronautical and astronautical/space engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.03	**Agricultural engineering**	
14.0301	Agricultural engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.04	**Architectural engineering**	
14.0401	Architectural engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.05	**Bioengineering and biomedical engineering**	
14.0501	Bioengineering and biomedical engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.06	**Ceramic sciences and engineering**	
14.0601	Ceramic sciences and engineering	CIP_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
14.07	**Chemical engineering**	
14.0701	Chemical engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.0702	Chemical and biomolecular engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.0799	Chemical engineering, other	CIP_UNIV
14.08	**Civil engineering**	
14.0801	Civil engineering, general	CIP_UNIV
14.0802	Geotechnical and geoenvironmental engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.0803	Structural engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.0804	Transportation and highway engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.0805	Water resources engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.0899	Civil engineering, other	CIP_UNIV
14.09	**Computer engineering**	
14.0901	Computer engineering, general	CIP_UNIV
14.0902	Computer hardware engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.0903	Computer software engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.0999	Computer engineering, other	CIP_UNIV
14.10	**Electrical, electronics and communications engineering**	
14.1001	Electrical and electronics engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.1003	Laser and optical engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.1004	Telecommunications engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.1099	Electrical, electronics and communications engineering, other	CIP_UNIV
14.11	**Engineering mechanics**	
14.1101	Engineering mechanics	CIP_UNIV
14.12	**Engineering physics/applied physics**	
14.1201	Engineering physics/applied physics	CIP_UNIV
14.13	**Engineering science**	
14.1301	Engineering science	CIP_UNIV
14.14	**Environmental/environmental health engineering**	
14.1401	Environmental/environmental health engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.18	**Materials engineering**	
14.1801	Materials engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.19	**Mechanical engineering**	
14.1901	Mechanical engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.20	**Metallurgical engineering**	
14.2001	Metallurgical engineering	CIP_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
14.21	**Mining and mineral engineering**	
14.2101	Mining and mineral engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.22	**Naval architecture and marine engineering**	
14.2201	Naval architecture and marine engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.23	**Nuclear engineering**	
14.2301	Nuclear engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.24	**Ocean engineering**	
14.2401	Ocean engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.25	**Petroleum engineering**	
14.2501	Petroleum engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.27	**Systems engineering**	
14.2701	Systems engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.28	**Textile sciences and engineering**	
14.2801	Textile sciences and engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.32	**Polymer/plastics engineering**	
14.3201	Polymer/plastics engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.33	**Construction engineering**	
14.3301	Construction engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.34	**Forest engineering**	
14.3401	Forest engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.35	**Industrial engineering**	
14.3501	Industrial engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.36	**Manufacturing engineering**	
14.3601	Manufacturing engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.37	**Operations research**	
14.3701	Operations research	CIP_UNIV
14.38	**Surveying engineering**	
14.3801	Surveying engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.39	**Geological/geophysical engineering**	
14.3901	Geological/geophysical engineering	CIP_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
14.40	**Paper science and engineering**	
14.4001	Paper science and engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.41	**Electromechanical engineering**	
14.4101	Electromechanical engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.42	**Mechatronics, robotics, and automation engineering**	
14.4201	Mechatronics, robotics, and automation engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.43	**Biochemical engineering**	
14.4301	Biochemical engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.44	**Engineering chemistry**	
14.4401	Engineering chemistry	CIP_UNIV
14.45	**Biological/biosystems engineering**	
14.4501	Biological/biosystems engineering	CIP_UNIV
14.99	**Engineering, other**	
14.9999	Engineering, other	CIP_UNIV
15.	**Engineering technologies and engineering-related fields**	
15.00	**Engineering technology, general**	
15.0000	Engineering technology, general	CIP_TR_COL
15.01	**Architectural engineering technology/technician**	
15.0101	Architectural engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.02	**Civil engineering technology/technician**	
15.0201	Civil engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.03	**Electrical and electronic engineering technologies/technicians**	
15.0303	Electrical, electronic and communications engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0304	Laser and optical technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0305	Telecommunications technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0306	Integrated circuit design	CIP_TR_COL
15.0399	Electrical and electronic engineering technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
15.04	**Electromechanical and instrumentation and maintenance technologies/ technicians**	
15.0401	Biomedical technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0403	Electromechanical technology/electromechanical engineering technology	CIP_TR_COL
15.0404	Instrumentation technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0405	Robotics technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0406	Automation engineer technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0499	Electromechanical and instrumentation and maintenance technologies/ technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL
15.05	**Environmental control technologies/technicians**	
15.0501	Heating, ventilation, air conditioning and refrigeration engineering technology/ technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0503	Energy management and systems technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0505	Solar energy technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0506	Water quality and wastewater treatment management and recycling technology/ technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0507	Environmental engineering technology/environmental technology	CIP_TR_COL
15.0508	Hazardous materials management and waste technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0599	Environmental control technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL
15.06	**Industrial production technologies/technicians**	
15.0607	Plastics and polymer engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0611	Metallurgical technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0612	Industrial technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0613	Manufacturing engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0614	Welding engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0615	Chemical engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0616	Semiconductor manufacturing technology	CIP_TR_COL
15.0699	Industrial production technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL
15.07	**Quality control and safety technologies/technicians**	
15.0701	Occupational safety and health technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0702	Quality control technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0703	Industrial safety technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0704	Hazardous materials information systems technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0799	Quality control and safety technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL
15.08	**Mechanical engineering related technologies/technicians**	
15.0801	Aeronautical/aerospace engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0803	Automotive engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0805	Mechanical engineering/mechanical technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0899	Mechanical engineering related technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
15.09	**Mining and petroleum technologies/technicians**	
15.0901	Mining technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0903	Petroleum technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.0999	Mining and petroleum technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL
15.10	**Construction engineering technology/technician**	
15.1001	Construction engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.11	**Engineering-related technologies**	
15.1102	Surveying technology/surveying	CIP_TR_COL
15.1103	Hydraulics and fluid power technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.1199	Engineering-related technologies, other	CIP_TR_COL
15.12	**Computer engineering technologies/technicians**	
15.1201	Computer engineering technology/technician, general	CIP_TR_COL
15.1202	Computer technology/computer systems technology	CIP_TR_COL
15.1203	Computer hardware technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.1204	Computer software technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.1299	Computer engineering technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL
15.13	**Drafting/design engineering technologies/technicians**	
15.1301	Drafting and design technology/technician, general	CIP_TR_COL
15.1302	CAD/CADD drafting and/or design technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.1303	Architectural drafting and architectural CAD/CADD	CIP_TR_COL
15.1304	Civil drafting and civil engineering CAD/CADD	CIP_TR_COL
15.1305	Electrical/electronics drafting and electrical/electronics CAD/CADD	CIP_TR_COL
15.1306	Mechanical drafting and mechanical drafting CAD/CADD	CIP_TR_COL
15.1399	Drafting/design engineering technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL
15.14	**Nuclear engineering technology/technician**	
15.1401	Nuclear engineering technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
15.15	**Engineering-related fields**	
15.1501	Engineering/industrial management	CIP_TR_COL
15.1502	Engineering design	CIP_TR_COL
15.1503	Packaging science	CIP_TR_COL
15.1599	Engineering-related fields, other	CIP_TR_COL
15.16	**Nanotechnology**	
15.1601	Nanotechnology	CIP_COL_UNIV
15.99	**Engineering technologies and engineering-related fields, other**	
15.9999	Engineering technologies and engineering-related fields, other	CIP_TR_COL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
16.	**Aboriginal and foreign languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.01	**Linguistic, comparative and related language studies and services**	
16.0101	Aboriginal and foreign languages and literatures, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0102	Linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0103	Language interpretation and translation	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0104	Comparative literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0105	Applied linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0199	Linguistic, comparative and related language studies and services, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.02	**African languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.0201	African languages, literatures and linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.03	**East Asian languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.0300	East Asian languages, literatures and linguistics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0301	Chinese language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0302	Japanese language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0303	Korean language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0304	Tibetan language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0399	East Asian languages, literatures and linguistics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.04	**Slavic, Baltic and Albanian languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.0400	Slavic languages, literatures and linguistics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0401	Baltic languages, literatures and linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0402	Russian language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0404	Albanian language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0405	Bulgarian language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0406	Czech language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0407	Polish language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0408	Bosnian, Serbian, and Croatian languages and literatures	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0409	Slovak language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0410	Ukrainian language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0499	Slavic, Baltic and Albanian languages, literatures and linguistics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.05	**Germanic languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.0500	Germanic languages, literatures and linguistics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0501	German language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0502	Scandinavian languages, literatures and linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0503	Danish language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0504	Dutch/Flemish language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0505	Norwegian language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0506	Swedish language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0599	Germanic languages, literatures and linguistics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
16.06	**Modern Greek language and literature**	
16.0601	Modern Greek language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.07	**South Asian languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.0700	South Asian languages, literatures and linguistics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0701	Hindi language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0702	Sanskrit and classical Indian languages, literatures and linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0704	Bengali language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0705	Punjabi language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0706	Tamil language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0707	Urdu language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0799	South Asian languages, literatures and linguistics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.08	**Iranian languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.0801	Iranian languages, literatures and linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.09	**Romance languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.0900	Romance languages, literatures and linguistics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0902	Italian language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0904	Portuguese language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0905	Spanish language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0906	Romanian language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0907	Catalan language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0908	Hispanic and Latin American languages, literatures and linguistics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.0999	Romance languages, literatures and linguistics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.10	**Aboriginal languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.1001	Aboriginal languages, literatures and linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.11	**Middle/Near Eastern and Semitic languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.1100	Middle/Near Eastern and Semitic languages, literatures and linguistics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1101	Arabic language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1102	Hebrew language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1103	Ancient Near Eastern and Biblical languages, literatures and linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1199	Middle/Near Eastern and Semitic languages, literatures and linguistics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.12	**Classics and classical languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.1200	Classics and classical languages, literatures and linguistics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1202	Ancient/classical Greek language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1203	Latin language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1299	Classics and classical languages, literatures and linguistics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.13	**Celtic languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.1301	Celtic languages, literatures and linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
16.14	**Southeast Asian and Australasian/Pacific languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.1400	Southeast Asian languages, literatures and linguistics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1401	Australian/Oceanic/Pacific languages, literatures and linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1402	Indonesian/Malay languages and literatures	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1403	Burmese language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1404	Philippine/Tagalog language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1405	Khmer/Cambodian language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1406	Lao language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1407	Thai language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1408	Vietnamese language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1499	Southeast Asian and Australasian/Pacific languages, literatures and linguistics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.15	**Turkic, Uralic-Altaic, Caucasian and Central Asian languages, literatures and linguistics**	
16.1501	Turkish language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1502	Uralic languages, literatures and linguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1503	Hungarian/Magyar language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1504	Mongolian language and literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.1599	Turkic, Uralic-Altaic, Caucasian and Central Asian languages, literatures and linguistics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
16.16	**Sign language**	
16.1601	American Sign Language (ASL)/Langue des signes québécoise (LSQ)	CIP_ALL
16.1602	Linguistics of sign language	CIP_ALL
16.1603	Sign language interpretation and translation	CIP_ALL
16.1699	Sign language, other	CIP_ALL
16.17	**Second language learning CAN**	
16.1701	English as a second language CAN	CIP_ALL
16.1702	French as a second language CAN	CIP_ALL
16.1799	Second language learning, other CAN	CIP_ALL
16.99	**Aboriginal and foreign languages, literatures and linguistics, other**	
16.9999	Aboriginal and foreign languages, literatures and linguistics, other	CIP_ALL
19.	**Family and consumer sciences/human sciences**	
19.00	**Work and family studies**	
19.0000	Work and family studies	CIP_ALL
19.01	**Family and consumer sciences/human sciences, general**	
19.0101	Family and consumer sciences/human sciences, general	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
19.02	**Family and consumer sciences/human sciences business services**	
19.0201	Business, family and consumer sciences/human sciences	CIP_ALL
19.0202	Family and consumer sciences/human sciences communication	CIP_ALL
19.0203	Consumer merchandising/retailing management	CIP_ALL
19.0299	Family and consumer sciences/human sciences business services, other	CIP_ALL
19.04	**Family and consumer economics and related services**	
19.0401	Family resource management studies, general	CIP_ALL
19.0402	Consumer economics	CIP_COL_UNIV
19.0403	Consumer services and advocacy	CIP_ALL
19.0499	Family and consumer economics and related services, other	CIP_ALL
19.05	**Foods, nutrition and related services**	
19.0501	Foods, nutrition and wellness studies, general	CIP_ALL
19.0504	Human nutrition	CIP_ALL
19.0505	Foodservice systems administration/management	CIP_ALL
19.0599	Foods, nutrition and related services, other	CIP_ALL
19.06	**Housing and human environments**	
19.0601	Housing and human environments, general	CIP_ALL
19.0604	Facilities planning and management	CIP_ALL
19.0605	Home furnishings and equipment installers	CIP_TR_COL
19.0699	Housing and human environments, other	CIP_ALL
19.07	Human development, family studies and related services	
19.0701	Human development and family studies, general	CIP_ALL
19.0702	Adult development and aging	CIP_ALL
19.0704	Family systems	CIP_COL_UNIV
19.0706	Child development	CIP_COL_UNIV
19.0707	Family and community services	CIP_ALL
19.0708	Child care and support services management	CIP_ALL
19.0709	Child care provider/assistant	CIP_TR_COL
19.0710	Developmental services worker	CIP_TR_COL
19.0799	Human development, family studies and related services, other	CIP_ALL
19.09	**Apparel and textiles**	
19.0901	Apparel and textiles, general	CIP_ALL
19.0902	Apparel and textile manufacture	CIP_ALL
19.0904	Textile science	CIP_ALL
19.0905	Apparel and textile marketing management	CIP_ALL
19.0906	Fashion and fabric consultant	CIP_ALL
19.0999	Apparel and textiles, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
19.99	**Family and consumer sciences/human sciences, other**	
19.9999	Family and consumer sciences/human sciences, other	CIP_ALL
22.	**Legal professions and studies**	
22.00	**Non-professional general legal studies (undergraduate)**	
22.0000	Legal studies, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
22.0001	Pre-law studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
22.01	**Law (LLB, JD, BCL)**	
22.0101	Law (LLB, JD, BCL)	CIP_UNIV
22.02	**Legal research and advanced professional studies (post-LLB/JD)**	
22.0201	Advanced legal research/studies, general (LLM, MCL, MLI, MSL, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0202	Programs for foreign lawyers (LLM, MCL)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0203	American/US law/legal studies/jurisprudence (LLM, MCJ, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0204	Canadian law/legal studies/jurisprudence (LLM, MCJ, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0205	Banking, corporate, finance and securities law (LLM, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0206	Comparative law (LLM, MCJ, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0207	Energy, environment and natural resources law (LLM, MS, MSc, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0208	Health law (LLM, MJ, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0209	International law and legal studies (LLM, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0210	International business, trade and tax law (LLM, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0211	Tax law/taxation (LLM, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0212	Intellectual property law (LLM, LLD, JSD/SJD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.0299	Legal research and advanced professional studies (post-LLB/JD), other	CIP_MSC_PHD
22.03	Legal support services	
22.0301	Legal administrative assistant/secretary	CIP_ALL
22.0302	Legal assistant/paralegal	CIP_ALL
22.0303	Court reporting/court reporter	CIP_ALL
22.0399	Legal support services, other	CIP_ALL
22.99	**Legal professions and studies, other**	
22.9999	Legal professions and studies, other	CIP_ALL
23.	**English language and literature/letters**	
23.01	**English language and literature, general**	
23.0101	English language and literature, general	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
23.13	**English rhetoric and composition/writing studies**	
23.1301	English writing, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.1302	English creative writing	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.1303	English professional, technical, business, and scientific writing	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.1304	English rhetoric and composition	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.1399	English rhetoric and composition/writing studies, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.14	**English literature**	
23.1401	English literature, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.1402	American literature	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.1403	Canadian literature, English	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.1404	British and Commonwealth literature, English	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.1405	Children's and adolescent literature, English	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.1499	English literature, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
23.99	**English language and literature/letters, other**	
23.9999	English language and literature/letters, other	CIP_ALL
24.	**Liberal arts and sciences, general studies and humanities**	
24.01	**Liberal arts and sciences, general studies and humanities**	
24.0101	Liberal arts and sciences/liberal studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
24.0102	General studies	CIP_ALL
24.0103	Humanities/humanistic studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
24.0199	Liberal arts and sciences, general studies and humanities, other	CIP_ALL
25.	**Library science**	
25.01	**Library science and administration**	
25.0101	Library and information science	CIP_UNIV
25.0102	Children and youth library services	CIP_COL_UNIV
25.0103	Archives/archival administration	CIP_UNIV
25.0199	Library science and administration, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
25.03	**Library and archives assisting**	
25.0301	Library and archives assisting	CIP_TR_COL
25.99	**Library science, other**	
25.9999	Library science, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
26.	**Biological and biomedical sciences**	
26.01	**Biology, general**	
26.0101	Biology/biological sciences, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0102	Biomedical sciences, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.02	**Biochemistry/biophysics and molecular biology**	
26.0202	Biochemistry	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0203	Biophysics	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0204	Molecular biology	CIP_UNIV
26.0205	Molecular biochemistry	CIP_UNIV
26.0206	Molecular biophysics	CIP_UNIV
26.0207	Structural biology	CIP_UNIV
26.0208	Photobiology	CIP_UNIV
26.0209	Radiation biology/radiobiology	CIP_UNIV
26.0210	Biochemistry and molecular biology	CIP_UNIV
26.0299	Biochemistry/biophysics and molecular biology, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.03	**Botany/plant biology**	
26.0301	Botany/plant biology, general	CIP_ALL
26.0305	Plant pathology/phytopathology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0307	Plant physiology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0308	Plant molecular biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0399	Botany/plant biology, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.04	**Cell/cellular biology and anatomical sciences**	
26.0401	Cell/cellular biology and histology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0403	Anatomy	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0404	Developmental biology and embryology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0406	Cell/cellular and molecular biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0407	Cell biology and anatomy	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0499	Cell/cellular biology and anatomical sciences, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.05	**Microbiological sciences and immunology**	
26.0502	Microbiology, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0503	Medical microbiology and bacteriology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0504	Virology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0505	Parasitology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0506	Mycology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0507	Immunology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0508	Microbiology and immunology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0599	Microbiological sciences and immunology, other	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
26.07	**Zoology/animal biology**	
26.0701	Zoology/animal biology, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0702	Entomology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0707	Animal physiology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0708	Animal behaviour and ethology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0709	Wildlife biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.0799	Zoology/animal biology, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.08	**Genetics**	
26.0801	Genetics, general	CIP_UNIV
26.0802	Molecular genetics	CIP_UNIV
26.0803	Microbial and eukaryotic genetics	CIP_UNIV
26.0804	Animal genetics	CIP_UNIV
26.0805	Plant genetics	CIP_UNIV
26.0806	Human/medical genetics	CIP_UNIV
26.0807	Genome sciences/genomics	CIP_UNIV
26.0899	Genetics, other	CIP_UNIV
26.09	**Physiology, pathology and related sciences**	
26.0901	Physiology, general	CIP_UNIV
26.0902	Molecular physiology	CIP_UNIV
26.0903	Cell physiology	CIP_UNIV
26.0904	Endocrinology	CIP_UNIV
26.0905	Reproductive biology	CIP_UNIV
26.0907	Cardiovascular science	CIP_UNIV
26.0908	Exercise physiology	CIP_UNIV
26.0909	Vision science/physiological optics	CIP_UNIV
26.0910	Pathology/experimental pathology	CIP_UNIV
26.0911	Oncology and cancer biology	CIP_UNIV
26.0912	Aerospace physiology and medicine	CIP_UNIV
26.0999	Physiology, pathology and related sciences, other	CIP_UNIV
26.10	**Pharmacology and toxicology**	
26.1001	Pharmacology	CIP_UNIV
26.1002	Molecular pharmacology	CIP_UNIV
26.1003	Neuropharmacology	CIP_UNIV
26.1004	Toxicology	CIP_UNIV
26.1005	Molecular toxicology	CIP_UNIV
26.1006	Environmental toxicology	CIP_UNIV
26.1007	Pharmacology and toxicology, integrated	CIP_UNIV
26.1099	Pharmacology and toxicology, other	CIP_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
26.11	**Biomathematics, bioinformatics, and computational biology**	
26.1101	Biometry/biometrics	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1102	Biostatistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1103	Bioinformatics	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1104	Computational biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1199	Biomathematics, bioinformatics, and computational biology, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.12	**Biotechnology**	
26.1201	Biotechnology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.13	**Ecology, evolution, systematics and population biology**	
26.1301	Ecology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1302	Marine biology and biological oceanography	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1303	Evolutionary biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1304	Aquatic biology/limnology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1305	Environmental biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1306	Population biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1307	Conservation biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1308	Systematic biology/biological systematics	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1309	Epidemiology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1310	Ecology and evolutionary biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1399	Ecology, evolution, systematics and population biology, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.14	**Molecular medicine**	
26.1401	Molecular medicine	CIP_UNIV
26.15	**Neurobiology and neurosciences**	
26.1501	Neuroscience	CIP_UNIV
26.1502	Neuroanatomy	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.1503	Neurobiology and anatomy	CIP_UNIV
26.1504	Neurobiology and behaviour	CIP_UNIV
26.1599	Neurobiology and neurosciences, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
26.99	**Biological and biomedical sciences, other**	
26.9999	Biological and biomedical sciences, other	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
27.	**Mathematics and statistics**	
27.01	**Mathematics**	
27.0101	Mathematics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0102	Algebra and number theory	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0103	Analysis and functional analysis	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0104	Geometry/geometric analysis	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0105	Topology and foundations	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0199	Mathematics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.03	**Applied mathematics**	
27.0301	Applied mathematics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0303	Computational mathematics	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0304	Computational and applied mathematics	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0305	Financial mathematics	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0306	Mathematical biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0399	Applied mathematics, other	CIP_ALL
27.05	**Statistics**	
27.0501	Statistics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0502	Mathematical statistics and probability	CIP_UNIV
27.0503	Mathematics and statistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.0599	Statistics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
27.99	**Mathematics and statistics, other**	
27.9999	Mathematics and statistics, other	CIP_ALL
28.	**Military science, leadership and operational art**	
28.08	**Military science, leadership and operational art CAN**	
28.0801	Military science, leadership and operational art CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
29.	**Military technologies and applied sciences**	
29.05	**Military technologies and applied sciences CAN**	
29.0501	Military technologies and applied sciences CAN	CIP_ALL
30.	**Multidisciplinary/interdisciplinary studies**	
30.01	**Biological and physical sciences**	
30.0101	Biological and physical sciences	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
30.05	**Peace studies and conflict resolution**	
30.0501	Peace studies and conflict resolution	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.06	**Systems science and theory**	
30.0601	Systems science and theory	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.08	**Mathematics and computer science**	
30.0801	Mathematics and computer science	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.10	**Biopsychology**	
30.1001	Biopsychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.11	**Gerontology**	
30.1101	Gerontology	CIP_ALL
30.12	**Historic preservation and conservation**	
30.1201	Historic preservation and conservation, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.1202	Cultural resource management and policy analysis	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.1299	Historic preservation and conservation, other	CIP_ALL
30.13	**Medieval and renaissance studies**	
30.1301	Medieval and renaissance studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.14	**Museology/museum studies**	
30.1401	Museology/museum studies	CIP_ALL
30.15	**Science, technology and society**	
30.1501	Science, technology and society	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.16	**Accounting and computer science**	
30.1601	Accounting and computer science	CIP_ALL
30.17	**Behavioural sciences**	
30.1701	Behavioural sciences	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.18	**Natural sciences**	
30.1801	Natural sciences	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.19	**Nutrition sciences**	
30.1901	Nutrition sciences	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.20	**International/global studies**	
30.2001	International/global studies	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
30.21	**Holocaust and related studies**	
30.2101	Holocaust and related studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.22	**Classical and ancient studies**	
30.2201	Ancient studies/civilization	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.2202	Classical, ancient Mediterranean and Near Eastern studies and archaeology	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.23	**Intercultural/multicultural and diversity studies**	
30.2301	Intercultural/multicultural and diversity studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.25	**Cognitive science**	
30.2501	Cognitive science	CIP_UNIV
30.26	**Cultural studies/critical theory and analysis**	
30.2601	Cultural studies/critical theory and analysis	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.27	**Human biology**	
30.2701	Human biology	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.28	**Dispute resolution**	
30.2801	Dispute resolution	CIP_ALL
30.29	**Maritime studies**	
30.2901	Maritime studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.30	**Computational science**	
30.3001	Computational science	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.31	**Human computer interaction**	
30.3101	Human computer interaction	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.32	**Marine sciences**	
30.3201	Marine sciences	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.33	**Sustainability studies**	
30.3301	Sustainability studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
30.99	**Multidisciplinary/interdisciplinary studies, other**	
30.9999	Multidisciplinary/interdisciplinary studies, other	CIP_ALL
31.	**Parks, recreation, leisure and fitness studies**	
31.01	**Parks, recreation and leisure studies**	
31.0101	Parks, recreation and leisure studies	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
31.03	**Parks, recreation and leisure facilities management**	
31.0301	Parks, recreation and leisure facilities management, general	CIP_ALL
31.0302	Golf course operation and grounds management	CIP_ALL
31.0399	Parks, recreation and leisure facilities management, other	CIP_ALL
31.05	**Health and physical education/fitness**	
31.0501	Health and physical education/fitness, general	CIP_ALL
31.0504	Sport and fitness administration/management	CIP_COL_UNIV
31.0505	Kinesiology and exercise science	CIP_COL_UNIV
31.0507	Physical fitness technician	CIP_TR_COL
31.0508	Sports studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
31.0599	Health and physical education/fitness, other	CIP_ALL
31.06	**Outdoor education**	
31.0601	Outdoor education	CIP_ALL
31.99	**Parks, recreation, leisure and fitness studies, other**	
31.9999	Parks, recreation, leisure and fitness studies, other	CIP_ALL
38.	**Philosophy and religious studies**	
38.00	**Philosophy and religious studies, general**	
38.0001	Philosophy and religious studies, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.01	**Philosophy, logic and ethics**	
38.0101	Philosophy	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.0102	Logic	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.0103	Ethics	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.0104	Applied and professional ethics	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.0199	Philosophy, logic and ethics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.02	**Religion/religious studies**	
38.0201	Religion/religious studies, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.0202	Buddhist studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.0203	Christian studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.0204	Hindu studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.0205	Islamic studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.0206	Jewish/Judaic studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
38.0299	Religion/religious studies, other	CIP_ALL
38.99	**Philosophy and religious studies, other**	
38.9999	Philosophy and religious studies, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
39.	**Theology and religious vocations**	
39.02	**Bible/Biblical studies**	
39.0201	Bible/Biblical studies	CIP_ALL
39.03	**Missions/missionary studies and missiology**	
39.0301	Missions/missionary studies and missiology	CIP_ALL
39.04	**Religious education**	
39.0401	Religious education	CIP_COL_UNIV
39.05	**Religious/sacred music**	
39.0501	Religious/sacred music	CIP_COL_UNIV
39.06	**Theological and ministerial studies**	
39.0601	Theology/theological studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
39.0602	Divinity/ministry (BDiv, MDiv)	CIP_UNIV
39.0604	Pre-theology/pre-ministerial studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
39.0605	Rabbinical studies (MHL/Rav)	CIP_UNIV
39.0606	Talmudic studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
39.0699	Theological and ministerial studies, other	CIP_ALL
39.07	**Pastoral counselling and specialized ministries**	
39.0701	Pastoral studies/counselling	CIP_COL_UNIV
39.0702	Youth ministry	CIP_COL_UNIV
39.0703	Urban ministry	CIP_COL_UNIV
39.0704	Women's ministry	CIP_COL_UNIV
39.0705	Lay ministry	CIP_COL_UNIV
39.0799	Pastoral counselling and specialized ministries, other	CIP_ALL
39.99	**Theology and religious vocations, other**	
39.9999	Theology and religious vocations, other	CIP_ALL
40.	**Physical sciences**	
40.01	**Physical sciences, general**	
40.0101	Physical sciences, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.02	**Astronomy and astrophysics**	
40.0201	Astronomy	CIP_UNIV
40.0202	Astrophysics	CIP_UNIV
40.0203	Planetary astronomy and science	CIP_UNIV
40.0299	Astronomy and astrophysics, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
40.04	**Atmospheric sciences and meteorology**	
40.0401	Atmospheric sciences and meteorology, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0402	Atmospheric chemistry and climatology	CIP_UNIV
40.0403	Atmospheric physics and dynamics	CIP_UNIV
40.0404	Meteorology	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0499	Atmospheric sciences and meteorology, other	CIP_ALL
40.05	**Chemistry**	
40.0501	Chemistry, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0502	Analytical chemistry	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0503	Inorganic chemistry	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0504	Organic chemistry	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0506	Physical chemistry	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0507	Polymer chemistry	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0508	Chemical physics	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0509	Environmental chemistry	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0510	Forensic chemistry	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0511	Theoretical chemistry	CIP_UNIV
40.0599	Chemistry, other	CIP_ALL
40.06	**Geological and Earth sciences/geosciences**	
40.0601	Geology/Earth science, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0602	Geochemistry	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0603	Geophysics and seismology	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0604	Paleontology	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0605	Hydrology and water resources science	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0606	Geochemistry and petrology	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0607	Oceanography, chemical and physical	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0699	Geological and Earth sciences/geosciences, other	CIP_ALL
40.08	**Physics**	
40.0801	Physics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
40.0802	Atomic/molecular physics	CIP_UNIV
40.0804	Elementary particle physics	CIP_UNIV
40.0805	Plasma and high-temperature physics	CIP_UNIV
40.0806	Nuclear physics	CIP_UNIV
40.0807	Optics/optical sciences	CIP_UNIV
40.0808	Condensed matter and materials physics	CIP_UNIV
40.0809	Acoustics	CIP_UNIV
40.0810	Theoretical and mathematical physics	CIP_UNIV
40.0899	Physics, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
40.10	**Materials sciences**	
40.1001	Materials science	CIP_UNIV
40.1002	Materials chemistry	CIP_UNIV
40.1099	Materials sciences, other	CIP_UNIV
40.99	**Physical sciences, other**	
40.9999	Physical sciences, other	CIP_ALL
41.	**Science technologies/technicians**	
41.00	**Science technologies/technicians, general**	
41.0000	Science technologies/technicians, general	CIP_ALL
41.01	**Biology technician/biotechnology laboratory technician**	
41.0101	Biology technician/biotechnology laboratory technician	CIP_ALL
41.02	**Nuclear and industrial radiologic technologies/technicians**	
41.0204	Industrial radiologic technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
41.0205	Nuclear/nuclear power technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
41.0299	Nuclear and industrial radiologic technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL
41.03	**Physical science technologies/technicians**	
41.0301	Chemical technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
41.0303	Chemical process technology	CIP_TR_COL
41.0399	Physical science technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL
41.99	**Science technologies/technicians, other**	
41.9999	Science technologies/technicians, other	CIP_ALL
42.	**Psychology**	
42.01	**Psychology, general**	
42.0101	Psychology, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.27	**Research and experimental psychology**	
42.2701	Cognitive psychology and psycholinguistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2702	Comparative psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2703	Developmental and child psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2704	Experimental psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2705	Personality psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2706	Physiological psychology/psychobiology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2707	Social psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
42.2708	Psychometrics and quantitative psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2709	Psychopharmacology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2799	Research and experimental psychology, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.28	**Clinical, counselling and applied psychology**	
42.2801	Clinical psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2802	Community psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2803	Counselling psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2804	Industrial and organizational psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2805	School psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2806	Educational psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2807	Clinical child psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2808	Environmental psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2809	Geropsychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2810	Health/medical psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2811	Family psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2812	Forensic psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2813	Applied psychology	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2814	Applied behaviour analysis	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.2899	Clinical, counselling and applied psychology, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
42.99	**Psychology, other**	
42.9999	Psychology, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
43.	**Security and protective services**	
43.01	**Criminal justice and corrections**	
43.0102	Corrections	CIP_ALL
43.0103	Criminal justice/law enforcement administration	CIP_ALL
43.0104	Criminal justice/safety studies	CIP_ALL
43.0106	Forensic science and technology	CIP_ALL
43.0107	Criminal justice/police science	CIP_ALL
43.0109	Security and loss prevention services	CIP_TR_COL
43.0110	Juvenile corrections	CIP_ALL
43.0111	Criminalistics and criminal science	CIP_ALL
43.0112	Securities services administration/management	CIP_ALL
43.0113	Corrections administration	CIP_ALL
43.0114	Law enforcement investigation and interviewing	CIP_ALL
43.0115	Law enforcement record keeping and evidence management	CIP_ALL
43.0116	Cyber/computer forensics and counterterrorism	CIP_ALL
43.0117	Financial forensics and fraud investigation	CIP_COL_UNIV
43.0118	Law enforcement intelligence analysis	CIP_COL_UNIV
43.0119	Critical incident response/special police operations	CIP_COL_UNIV
43.0120	Protective services operations	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
43.0121	Suspension and debarment investigation	CIP_COL_UNIV
43.0122	Maritime law enforcement	CIP_ALL
43.0123	Cultural/archaeological resources protection	CIP_ALL
43.0199	Criminal justice and corrections, other	CIP_ALL
43.02	**Fire protection**	
43.0201	Fire prevention and safety technology/technician	CIP_ALL
43.0202	Fire services administration	CIP_ALL
43.0203	Fire science/firefighting	CIP_TR_COL
43.0204	Fire systems technology	CIP_TR_COL
43.0205	Fire/arson investigation and prevention	CIP_TR_COL
43.0206	Wildland/forest firefighting and investigation	CIP_TR_COL
43.0299	Fire protection, other	CIP_ALL
43.03	**Security and protective services, specialized programs**	
43.0302	Crisis/emergency/disaster management	CIP_COL_UNIV
43.0399	Security and protective services, specialized programs, other	CIP_ALL
43.99	**Security and protective services, other**	
43.9999	Security and protective services, other	CIP_ALL
44.	**Public administration and social service professions**	
44.00	**Human services, general**	
44.0000	Human services, general	CIP_ALL
44.02	**Community organization and advocacy**	
44.0201	Community organization and advocacy	CIP_ALL
44.04	**Public administration**	
44.0401	Public administration	CIP_ALL
44.05	**Public policy analysis**	
44.0501	Public policy analysis, general	CIP_UNIV
44.0502	Education policy analysis	CIP_UNIV
44.0503	Health policy analysis	CIP_UNIV
44.0504	International public policy analysis	CIP_UNIV
44.0599	Public policy analysis, other	CIP_UNIV
44.07	**Social work**	
44.0701	Social work, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
44.0702	Youth services/administration	CIP_ALL
44.0799	Social work, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
44.99	**Public administration and social service professions, other**	
44.9999	Public administration and social service professions, other	CIP_ALL
45.	**Social sciences**	
45.01	**Social sciences, general**	
45.0101	Social sciences, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0102	Research methodology and quantitative methods	CIP_UNIV
45.02	**Anthropology**	
45.0201	Anthropology, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0202	Physical and biological anthropology	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0203	Medical anthropology	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0204	Cultural anthropology	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0299	Anthropology, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.03	**Archaeology**	
45.0301	Archaeology	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.04	**Criminology**	
45.0401	Criminology	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.05	**Demography and population studies**	
45.0501	Demography and population studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.06	**Economics**	
45.0601	Economics, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0602	Applied economics	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0603	Econometrics and quantitative economics	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0604	Development economics and international development	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0605	International economics	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0699	Economics, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.07	**Geography and cartography**	
45.0701	Geography	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0702	Geographic information science and cartography	CIP_ALL
45.0799	Geography and cartography, other	CIP_ALL
45.09	**International relations and national security studies**	
45.0901	International relations and affairs	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.0902	National security policy studies	CIP_UNIV
45.0999	International relations and national security studies, other	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
45.10	**Political science and government**	
45.1001	Political science and government, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.1002	American government and politics (United States)	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.1003	Canadian government and politics	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.1004	Political economy	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.1099	Political science and government, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.11	**Sociology**	
45.1101	Sociology	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.12	**Urban studies/affairs**	
45.1201	Urban studies/affairs	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.13	**Sociology and anthropology**	
45.1301	Sociology and anthropology	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.14	**Rural sociology**	
45.1401	Rural sociology	CIP_COL_UNIV
45.99	**Social sciences, other**	
45.9999	Social sciences, other	CIP_ALL
46.	**Construction trades**	
46.00	**Construction trades, general**	
46.0000	Construction trades, general	CIP_TR_COL
46.01	**Masonry/mason**	
46.0101	Masonry/mason	CIP_TR_COL
46.02	**Carpentry/carpenter**	
46.0201	Carpentry/carpenter	CIP_TR_COL
46.03	**Electrical and power transmission installers**	
46.0301	Electrical and power transmission installation/installer, general	CIP_TR_COL
46.0302	Electrician	CIP_TR_COL
46.0303	Lineworker	CIP_TR_COL
46.0399	Electrical and power transmission installers, other	CIP_TR_COL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
46.04	**Building/construction finishing, management and inspection**	
46.0401	Building/property maintenance	CIP_TR_COL
46.0402	Concrete finishing/concrete finisher	CIP_TR_COL
46.0403	Building/home/construction inspection/inspector	CIP_TR_COL
46.0404	Drywall installation/drywaller	CIP_TR_COL
46.0406	Glazier	CIP_TR_COL
46.0408	Painting/painter and wall coverer	CIP_TR_COL
46.0410	Roofer	CIP_TR_COL
46.0411	Metal building assembly/assembler	CIP_TR_COL
46.0412	Building/construction site management/manager	CIP_TR_COL
46.0413	Carpet, floor, and tile worker	CIP_TR_COL
46.0414	Insulator	CIP_TR_COL
46.0415	Building construction technology	CIP_TR_COL
46.0499	Building/construction finishing, management and inspection, other	CIP_TR_COL
46.05	**Plumbing and related water supply services**	
46.0502	Pipefitting/pipefitter and sprinkler fitter	CIP_TR_COL
46.0503	Plumbing technology/plumber	CIP_TR_COL
46.0504	Well drilling/driller	CIP_TR_COL
46.0505	Blasting/blaster	CIP_TR_COL
46.0599	Plumbing and related water supply services, other	CIP_TR_COL
46.99	**Construction trades, other**	
46.9999	Construction trades, other	CIP_TR_COL
47.	**Mechanic and repair technologies/technicians**	
47.00	**Mechanics and repairers, general**	
47.0000	Mechanics and repairers, general	CIP_TR_COL
47.01	**Electrical/electronics maintenance and repair technology**	
47.0101	Electrical/electronics equipment installation and repair, general	CIP_TR_COL
47.0102	Business machine repair	CIP_TR_COL
47.0103	Communications systems installation and repair technology	CIP_TR_COL
47.0104	Computer installation and repair technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0105	Industrial electronics technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0106	Appliance installation and repair technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0110	Security system installation, repair and inspection technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0199	Electrical/electronics maintenance and repair technology, other	CIP_TR_COL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level¹
47.02	**Heating, air conditioning, ventilation and refrigeration maintenance technology/technician**	
47.0201	Heating, air conditioning, ventilation and refrigeration maintenance technology/ technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.03	**Heavy/industrial equipment maintenance technologies**	
47.0302	Heavy equipment maintenance technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0303	Industrial mechanics and maintenance technology	CIP_TR_COL
47.0399	Heavy/industrial equipment maintenance technologies, other	CIP_TR_COL
47.04	**Precision systems maintenance and repair technologies**	
47.0402	Gunsmithing/gunsmith	CIP_TR_COL
47.0403	Locksmithing and safe repair	CIP_TR_COL
47.0404	Musical instrument fabrication and repair	CIP_TR_COL
47.0408	Watchmaking and jewellery making	CIP_TR_COL
47.0409	Parts and warehousing operations and maintenance technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0499	Precision systems maintenance and repair technologies, other	CIP_TR_COL
47.05	**Stationary energy sources installer and operator CAN**	
47.0501	Stationary energy sources installer and operator CAN	CIP_TR_COL
47.06	**Vehicle maintenance and repair technologies**	
47.0600	Vehicle maintenance and repair technologies, general	CIP_TR_COL
47.0603	Autobody/collision and repair technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0604	Automobile/automotive mechanics technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0605	Diesel mechanics technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0606	Small engine mechanics and repair technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0607	Airframe mechanics and aircraft maintenance technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0608	Aircraft powerplant technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0609	Avionics maintenance technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0610	Bicycle mechanics and repair technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0611	Motorcycle maintenance and repair technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0612	Vehicle emissions inspection and maintenance technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0613	Medium/heavy vehicle and truck technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0614	Alternative fuel vehicle technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0615	Engine machinist	CIP_TR_COL
47.0616	Marine maintenance/fitter and ship repair technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0617	High performance and custom engine technician/mechanic	CIP_TR_COL
47.0618	Recreation vehicle (RV) service technician	CIP_TR_COL
47.0699	Vehicle maintenance and repair technologies, other	CIP_TR_COL
47.99	**Mechanic and repair technologies/technicians, other**	
47.9999	Mechanic and repair technologies/technicians, other	CIP_TR_COL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
48.	**Precision production**	
48.00	**Precision production trades, general**	
48.0000	Precision production trades, general	CIP_TR_COL
48.03	**Leatherworking and upholstery**	
48.0303	Upholstery/upholsterer	CIP_TR_COL
48.0304	Shoe, boot and leather repair	CIP_TR_COL
48.0399	Leatherworking and upholstery, other	CIP_TR_COL
48.05	**Precision metal working**	
48.0501	Machine tool technology/machinist	CIP_TR_COL
48.0503	Machine shop technology/assistant	CIP_TR_COL
48.0506	Sheet metal technology/sheetworking	CIP_TR_COL
48.0507	Tool and die technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
48.0508	Welding technology/welder	CIP_TR_COL
48.0509	Ironworking/ironworker	CIP_TR_COL
48.0510	Computer numerically controlled (CNC) machinist technology/CNC machinist	CIP_TR_COL
48.0511	Metal fabricator	CIP_TR_COL
48.0599	Precision metal working, other	CIP_TR_COL
48.07	**Woodworking**	
48.0701	Woodworking, general	CIP_TR_COL
48.0702	Furniture design and manufacturing	CIP_TR_COL
48.0703	Cabinetmaking and millwork	CIP_TR_COL
48.0799	Woodworking, other	CIP_TR_COL
48.08	**Boilermaking/boilermaker**	
48.0801	Boilermaking/boilermaker	CIP_TR_COL
48.99	**Precision production, other**	
48.9999	Precision production, other	CIP_ALL
49.	**Transportation and materials moving**	
49.01	**Air transportation**	
49.0101	Aeronautics/aviation/aerospace science and technology, general	CIP_ALL
49.0102	Airline/commercial/professional pilot and flight crew	CIP_ALL
49.0104	Aviation/airway management and operations	CIP_ALL
49.0105	Air traffic controller	CIP_TR_COL
49.0106	Airline flight attendant	CIP_TR_COL
49.0108	Flight instructor	CIP_TR_COL
49.0199	Air transportation, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
49.02	**Ground transportation**	
49.0202	Construction/heavy equipment/earthmoving equipment operation	CIP_TR_COL
49.0205	Truck and bus driver/commercial vehicle operator and instructor	CIP_TR_COL
49.0206	Mobile crane operation/operator	CIP_TR_COL
49.0207	Flagging and traffic control	CIP_TR_COL
49.0208	Railroad and railway transportation	CIP_TR_COL
49.0299	Ground transportation, other	CIP_TR_COL
49.03	**Marine transportation**	
49.0303	Commercial fishing	CIP_TR_COL
49.0304	Diver, professional and instructor	CIP_TR_COL
49.0309	Nautical science/merchant marine officer	CIP_ALL
49.0399	Marine transportation, other	CIP_ALL
49.99	**Transportation and materials moving, other**	
49.9999	Transportation and materials moving, other	CIP_ALL
50.	**Visual and performing arts**	
50.01	**Visual, digital and performing arts, general**	
50.0101	Visual and performing arts, general	CIP_ALL
50.0102	Digital arts, general	CIP_ALL
50.02	**Crafts/craft design, folk art and artisanry**	
50.0201	Crafts/craft design, folk art and artisanry	CIP_ALL
50.03	**Dance**	
50.0301	Dance, general	CIP_ALL
50.0302	Ballet	CIP_ALL
50.0399	Dance, other	CIP_ALL
50.04	**Design and applied arts**	
50.0401	Design and visual communications, general	CIP_ALL
50.0402	Commercial and advertising art	CIP_ALL
50.0404	Industrial and product design	CIP_ALL
50.0406	Commercial photography	CIP_ALL
50.0407	Fashion/apparel design	CIP_ALL
50.0408	Interior design	CIP_ALL
50.0409	Graphic design	CIP_ALL
50.0410	Illustration	CIP_ALL
50.0411	Game and interactive media design	CIP_ALL
50.0499	Design and applied arts, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
50.05	**Drama/theatre arts and stagecraft**	
50.0501	Drama and dramatics/theatre arts, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0502	Technical theatre/theatre design and technology	CIP_ALL
50.0504	Playwriting and screenwriting	CIP_ALL
50.0505	Theatre literature, history and criticism	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0506	Acting	CIP_ALL
50.0507	Directing and theatrical production	CIP_ALL
50.0509	Musical theatre	CIP_ALL
50.0510	Costume design	CIP_ALL
50.0599	Drama/theatre arts and stagecraft, other	CIP_ALL
50.06	**Film/video and photographic arts**	
50.0601	Film/cinema/video studies	CIP_ALL
50.0602	Cinematography and film/video production	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0605	Photography	CIP_ALL
50.0607	Documentary production	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0699	Film/video and photographic arts, other	CIP_ALL
50.07	**Fine arts and art studies**	
50.0701	Art/art studies, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0702	Fine/studio arts, general	CIP_ALL
50.0703	Art history, criticism and conservation	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0705	Drawing	CIP_ALL
50.0706	Intermedia/multimedia	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0708	Painting	CIP_ALL
50.0709	Sculpture	CIP_ALL
50.0710	Printmaking	CIP_ALL
50.0711	Ceramic arts and ceramics	CIP_ALL
50.0712	Fibre, textile and weaving arts	CIP_ALL
50.0713	Metal and jewellery arts	CIP_ALL
50.0799	Fine arts and art studies, other	CIP_ALL
50.09	**Music**	
50.0901	Music, general	CIP_ALL
50.0902	Music history, literature and theory	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0903	Music performance, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0904	Music theory and composition	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0905	Musicology and ethnomusicology	CIP_ALL
50.0906	Conducting	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0907	Keyboard instruments	CIP_ALL
50.0908	Voice and opera	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0910	Jazz/jazz studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0911	Stringed instruments	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0912	Music pedagogy	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
50.0913	Music technology	CIP_ALL
50.0914	Brass instruments	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0915	Woodwind instruments	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0916	Percussion instruments	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.0999	Music, other	CIP_ALL
50.10	**Arts, entertainment, and media management**	
50.1001	Arts, entertainment, and media management, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.1002	Fine and studio arts management	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.1003	Music management	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.1004	Theatre/theatre arts management	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.1099	Arts, entertainment, and media management, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
50.99	**Visual and performing arts, other**	
50.9999	Visual and performing arts, other	CIP_ALL
51.	**Health professions and related programs**	
51.00	**Health services/allied health/health sciences, general**	
51.0000	Health services/allied health/health sciences, general	CIP_ALL
51.0001	Health and wellness, general	CIP_ALL
51.01	**Chiropractic (DC)**	
51.0101	Chiropractic (DC)	CIP_UNIV
51.02	**Communication disorders sciences and services**	
51.0201	Communication sciences and disorders, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.0202	Audiology/audiologist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.0203	Speech-language pathology/pathologist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.0204	Audiology/audiologist and speech-language pathology/pathologist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.0299	Communication disorders sciences and services, other	CIP_ALL
51.04	**Dentistry (DDS, DMD)**	
51.0401	Dentistry (DDS, DMD)	CIP_MD
51.05	**Advanced/graduate dentistry and oral sciences (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)**	
51.0501	Dental clinical sciences, general (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.0502	Advanced general dentistry (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.0503	Oral biology and oral and maxillofacial pathology (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.0504	Dental public health and education (Cert., MS, MSc, MPH, PhD, DPH)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.0505	Dental materials (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.0506	Endodontics/endodontology (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
51.0507	Oral/maxillofacial surgery (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.0508	Orthodontics/orthodontology (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.0509	Pediatric dentistry/pedodontics (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.0510	Periodontics/periodontology (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.0511	Prosthodontics/prosthodontology (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.0599	Advanced/graduate dentistry and oral sciences (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD), other	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.06	**Dental support services and allied professions**	
51.0601	Dental assisting/assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0602	Dental hygiene/hygienist	CIP_ALL
51.0603	Dental laboratory technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.0699	Dental support services and allied professions, other	CIP_ALL
51.07	**Health and medical administrative services**	
51.0701	Health/health care administration/management	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.0702	Hospital and health care facilities administration/management	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.0703	Health unit coordinator/ward clerk	CIP_ALL
51.0704	Health unit manager/ward supervisor	CIP_ALL
51.0705	Medical office management/administration	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.0706	Health information/medical records administration/administrator	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.0707	Health information/medical records technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.0708	Medical transcription/transcriptionist	CIP_TR_COL
51.0709	Medical office computer specialist/assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0710	Medical office assistant/specialist	CIP_TR_COL
51.0711	Medical/health management and clinical assistant/specialist	CIP_ALL
51.0712	Medical reception/receptionist	CIP_TR_COL
51.0713	Medical insurance coding specialist/coder	CIP_ALL
51.0714	Medical insurance specialist/medical biller	CIP_ALL
51.0715	Health/medical claims examiner	CIP_ALL
51.0716	Medical administrative/executive assistant and medical secretary	CIP_TR_COL
51.0717	Medical staff services technology/technician	CIP_ALL
51.0718	Long term care administration/management	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.0719	Clinical research coordinator	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.0799	Health and medical administrative services, other	CIP_ALL
51.08	**Allied health and medical assisting services**	
51.0801	Medical/clinical assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0802	Clinical/medical laboratory assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0803	Occupational therapist assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0805	Pharmacy technician/assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0806	Physical therapy technician/assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0808	Veterinary/animal health technology/technician and veterinary assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0809	Anesthesiologist assistant	CIP_TR_COL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
51.0810	Emergency care attendant (EMT ambulance)	CIP_TR_COL
51.0811	Pathology/pathologist assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0812	Respiratory therapy technician/assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0813	Chiropractic assistant/technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.0814	Radiologist assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0815	Lactation consultant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0816	Speech-language pathology assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.0817	Rehabilitation assistant CAN	CIP_TR_COL
51.0899	Allied health and medical assisting services, other	CIP_TR_COL
51.09	**Allied health diagnostic, intervention and treatment professions**	
51.0901	Cardiovascular technology/technologist	CIP_TR_COL
51.0902	Electrocardiograph technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.0903	Electroneurodiagnostic/electroencephalographic technology/technologist	CIP_TR_COL
51.0904	Emergency medical technology/technician (EMT paramedic)	CIP_TR_COL
51.0905	Nuclear medical technology/technologist	CIP_TR_COL
51.0906	Perfusion technology/perfusionist	CIP_ALL
51.0907	Medical radiologic technology/science – radiation therapist	CIP_TR_COL
51.0908	Respiratory care therapy/therapist	CIP_ALL
51.0909	Surgical technology/technologist	CIP_TR_COL
51.0910	Diagnostic medical sonography/sonographer and ultrasound technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.0911	Radiologic technology/science – radiographer	CIP_ALL
51.0912	Physician assistant	CIP_ALL
51.0913	Athletic training/trainer	CIP_ALL
51.0914	Gene/genetic therapy	CIP_ALL
51.0915	Cardiopulmonary technology/technologist	CIP_ALL
51.0916	Radiation protection/health physics technician	CIP_ALL
51.0917	Polysomnography	CIP_ALL
51.0918	Hearing instrument specialist	CIP_TR_COL
51.0919	Mammography technician/technology	CIP_TR_COL
51.0920	Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.0921	Combined laboratory and X-ray technology CAN	CIP_TR_COL
51.0999	Allied health diagnostic, intervention and treatment professions, other	CIP_ALL
51.10	**Clinical/medical laboratory science/research and allied professions**	
51.1001	Blood bank technology specialist	CIP_ALL
51.1002	Cytotechnology/cytotechnologist	CIP_TR_COL
51.1003	Hematology technology/technician	CIP_ALL
51.1004	Clinical/medical laboratory technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.1005	Clinical laboratory science/medical technology/technologist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1006	Ophthalmic laboratory technology/technician	CIP_ALL
51.1007	Histologic technology/histotechnologist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1008	Histologic technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.1009	Phlebotomy technician/phlebotomist	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
51.1010	Cytogenetics/genetics/clinical genetics technology/technologist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1011	Renal/dialysis technologist/technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.1012	Sterile processing technology/technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.1099	Clinical/medical laboratory science and allied professions, other	CIP_ALL
51.11	**Health/medical preparatory programs**	
51.1101	Pre-dentistry studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1102	Pre-medicine/pre-medical studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1103	Pre-pharmacy studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1104	Pre-veterinary studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1105	Pre-nursing studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1106	Pre-chiropractic studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1107	Pre-occupational therapy studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1108	Pre-optometry studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1109	Pre-physical therapy studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1199	Health/medical preparatory programs, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.12	**Medicine (MD)**	
51.1201	Medicine (MD)	CIP_MD
51.14	**Medical scientist (MS, MSc, PhD)**	
51.1401	Medical scientist (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.15	**Mental and social health services and allied professions**	
51.1501	Substance abuse/addiction counselling	CIP_ALL
51.1502	Psychiatric/mental health services technician	CIP_TR_COL
51.1503	Clinical/medical social work	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1504	Community health services/liaison/counselling	CIP_ALL
51.1505	Marriage and family therapy/counselling	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1506	Clinical pastoral counselling/patient counselling	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1507	Psychoanalysis and psychotherapy	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1508	Mental health counselling/counsellor	CIP_ALL
51.1509	Genetic counselling/counsellor	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1599	Mental and social health services and allied professions, other	CIP_ALL
51.17	**Optometry (OD)**	
51.1701	Optometry (OD)	CIP_MD
51.18	**Ophthalmic and optometric support services and allied professions**	
51.1801	Opticianry/ophthalmic dispensing optician	CIP_ALL
51.1802	Optometric technician/assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.1803	Ophthalmic technician/technologist	CIP_TR_COL
51.1804	Orthoptics/orthoptist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.1899	Ophthalmic and optometric support services and allied professions, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
51.19	**Osteopathic medicine/osteopathy (DO)**	
51.1901	Osteopathic medicine/osteopathy (DO)	CIP_UNIV
51.20	**Pharmacy, pharmaceutical sciences and administration**	
51.2001	Pharmacy (PharmD, BS, BSc, BPharm)	CIP_UNIV
51.2002	Pharmacy administration and pharmacy policy and regulatory affairs (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2003	Pharmaceutics and drug design (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2004	Medicinal and pharmaceutical chemistry (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2005	Natural products chemistry and pharmacognosy (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2006	Clinical and industrial drug development (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2007	Pharmacoeconomics/pharmaceutical economics (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2008	Clinical, hospital and managed care pharmacy (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2009	Industrial and physical pharmacy and cosmetic sciences (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2010	Pharmaceutical sciences	CIP_UNIV
51.2011	Pharmaceutical marketing and management	CIP_UNIV
51.2099	Pharmacy, pharmaceutical sciences and administration, other	CIP_UNIV
51.21	**Podiatric medicine/podiatry (DPM)**	
51.2101	Podiatric medicine/podiatry (DPM)	CIP_UNIV
51.22	**Public health**	
51.2201	Public health, general (MPH, DPH)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2202	Environmental health	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2205	Health/medical physics	CIP_UNIV
51.2206	Occupational health and industrial hygiene	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2207	Public health education and promotion	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2208	Community health and preventive medicine	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2209	Maternal and child health	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2210	International public health/international health	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2211	Health services administration	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2212	Behavioural aspects of health	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2299	Public health, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.23	**Rehabilitation and therapeutic professions**	
51.2301	Art therapy/therapist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2302	Dance therapy/therapist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2305	Music therapy/therapist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2306	Occupational therapy/therapist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2307	Orthotist/prosthetist	CIP_ALL
51.2308	Physical therapy/therapist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2309	Therapeutic recreation/recreational therapy	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2310	Vocational rehabilitation counselling/counsellor	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2311	Kinesiotherapy/kinesiotherapist	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
51.2312	Assistive/augmentative technology and rehabilitation engineering	CIP_ALL
51.2313	Animal-assisted therapy	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2314	Rehabilitation science	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.2399	Rehabilitation and therapeutic professions, other	CIP_ALL
51.24	**Veterinary medicine (DVM)**	
51.2401	Veterinary medicine (DVM)	CIP_MD
51.25	**Veterinary biomedical and clinical sciences (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)**	
51.2501	Veterinary sciences/veterinary clinical sciences, general (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2502	Veterinary anatomy (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2503	Veterinary physiology (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2504	Veterinary microbiology and immunobiology (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2505	Veterinary pathology and pathobiology (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2506	Veterinary toxicology and pharmacology (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2507	Large animal/food animal and equine surgery and medicine (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2508	Small/companion animal surgery and medicine (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2509	Comparative and laboratory animal medicine (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2510	Veterinary preventive medicine, epidemiology and public health (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2511	Veterinary infectious diseases (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.2599	Veterinary biomedical and clinical sciences (Cert., MS, MSc, PhD), other	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.26	**Health aides/attendants/orderlies**	
51.2601	Health aide	CIP_TR_COL
51.2602	Home health aide/home attendant	CIP_TR_COL
51.2603	Medication aide	CIP_TR_COL
51.2604	Rehabilitation aide	CIP_TR_COL
51.2699	Health aides/attendants/orderlies, other	CIP_TR_COL
51.27	**Medical illustration and informatics**	
51.2703	Medical illustration/medical illustrator	CIP_ALL
51.2706	Medical informatics	CIP_ALL
51.2799	Medical illustration and informatics, other	CIP_ALL
51.31	**Dietetics and clinical nutrition services**	
51.3101	Dietetics/dietitian (RD)	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3102	Clinical nutrition/nutritionist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3103	Dietetic technician (DTR)	CIP_TR_COL
51.3104	Dietitian assistant	CIP_TR_COL
51.3199	Dietetics and clinical nutrition services, other	CIP_ALL
51.32	**Bioethics/medical ethics**	
51.3201	Bioethics/medical ethics	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
51.33	**Alternative and complementary medicine and medical systems**	
51.3300	Alternative and complementary medicine and medical systems, general	CIP_ALL
51.3301	Acupuncture and oriental medicine	CIP_ALL
51.3302	Traditional Chinese medicine and Chinese herbology	CIP_ALL
51.3303	Naturopathic medicine/naturopathy (ND)	CIP_ALL
51.3304	Homeopathic medicine/homeopathy	CIP_ALL
51.3305	Ayurvedic medicine/Ayurveda	CIP_ALL
51.3306	Holistic health	CIP_ALL
51.3399	Alternative and complementary medicine and medical systems, other	CIP_ALL
51.34	**Alternative and complementary medical support services**	
51.3401	Direct entry midwifery (LM, CPM)	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3499	Alternative and complementary medical support services, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.35	**Somatic bodywork and related therapeutic services**	
51.3501	Massage therapy/therapeutic massage	CIP_ALL
51.3502	Asian bodywork therapy	CIP_ALL
51.3503	Somatic bodywork	CIP_ALL
51.3599	Somatic bodywork and related therapeutic services, other	CIP_ALL
51.36	**Movement and mind-body therapies**	
51.3601	Movement therapy	CIP_ALL
51.3602	Yoga teacher training/yoga therapy	CIP_ALL
51.3603	Hypnotherapy/hypnotherapist	CIP_ALL
51.3699	Movement and mind-body therapies, other	CIP_ALL
51.37	**Energy-based and biologically-based therapies**	
51.3701	Aromatherapy	CIP_ALL
51.3702	Herbalism/herbalist	CIP_ALL
51.3703	Polarity therapy	CIP_ALL
51.3704	Reiki	CIP_ALL
51.3799	Energy-based and biologically-based therapies, other	CIP_ALL
51.38	**Registered nursing, nursing administration, nursing research and clinical nursing**	
51.3801	Registered nursing/registered nurse (RN, ASN, BSN, BScN, MSN, MScN)	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3802	Nursing administration (MSN, MS, MScN, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.3803	Adult health nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3804	Nurse anesthetist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3805	Primary health care nurse/nursing and family practice nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3806	Maternal/child health and neonatal nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3807	Nurse midwife/nursing midwifery	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3808	Nursing science (MS, MSc, PhD)	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.3809	Pediatric nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3810	Psychiatric/mental health nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
51.3811	Public health/community nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3812	Perioperative/operating room and surgical nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3813	Clinical nurse specialist	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3814	Critical care nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3815	Occupational and environmental health nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3816	Emergency room/trauma nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3817	Nursing education	CIP_UNIV
51.3818	Nursing practice	CIP_MSC_PHD
51.3819	Palliative care nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3820	Clinical nurse leader	CIP_UNIV
51.3821	Geriatric nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3822	Women's health nurse/nursing	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3823	Registered psychiatric nurse/nursing CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.3899	Registered nursing, nursing administration, nursing research and clinical nursing, other	CIP_COL_UNIV
51.39	**Practical nursing, vocational nursing and nursing assistants**	
51.3901	Licensed practical/vocational nurse training (LPN, LVN, RPN, Cert., Dipl., AAS)	CIP_TR_COL
51.3902	Nursing assistant/aide and patient care assistant/aide	CIP_TR_COL
51.3999	Practical nursing, vocational nursing and nursing assistants, other	CIP_TR_COL
51.99	**Health professions and related clinical sciences, other**	
51.9999	Health professions and related clinical sciences, other	CIP_ALL
52.	**Business, management, marketing and related support services**	
52.01	**Business/commerce, general**	
52.0101	Business/commerce, general	CIP_ALL
52.02	**Business administration, management and operations**	
52.0201	Business administration and management, general	CIP_ALL
52.0202	Purchasing, procurement/acquisitions and contracts management	CIP_ALL
52.0203	Logistics, materials, and supply chain management	CIP_ALL
52.0204	Office management and supervision	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0205	Operations management and supervision	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0206	Non-profit/public/organizational management	CIP_ALL
52.0207	Customer service management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0208	E-commerce/electronic commerce	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0209	Transportation/mobility management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0210	Research and development management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0211	Project management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0212	Retail management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0213	Organizational leadership	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0299	Business administration, management and operations, other	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
52.03	**Accounting and related services**	
52.0301	Accounting	CIP_UNIV
52.0302	Accounting technology/technician and bookkeeping	CIP_TR_COL
52.0303	Auditing	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0304	Accounting and finance	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0305	Accounting and business/management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0399	Accounting and related services, other	CIP_ALL
52.04	**Business operations support and assistant services**	
52.0401	Administrative assistant and secretarial science, general	CIP_ALL
52.0402	Executive assistant/executive secretary	CIP_ALL
52.0406	Receptionist	CIP_TR_COL
52.0407	Business/office automation/technology/data entry	CIP_ALL
52.0408	General office occupations and clerical services	CIP_ALL
52.0409	Parts, warehousing and inventory management operations	CIP_TR_COL
52.0410	Traffic, customs and transportation clerk/technician	CIP_TR_COL
52.0411	Customer service support/call centre/teleservice operation	CIP_TR_COL
52.0499	Business operations support and assistant services, other	CIP_ALL
52.05	**Business/corporate communications**	
52.0501	Business/corporate communications	CIP_ALL
52.06	**Business/managerial economics**	
52.0601	Business/managerial economics	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.07	**Entrepreneurial and small business operations**	
52.0701	Entrepreneurship/entrepreneurial studies	CIP_ALL
52.0702	Franchising and franchise operations	CIP_TR_COL
52.0703	Small business administration/management	CIP_ALL
52.0799	Entrepreneurial and small business operations, other	CIP_ALL
52.08	**Finance and financial management services**	
52.0801	Finance, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0803	Banking and financial support services	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0804	Financial planning and services	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0806	International finance	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0807	Investments and securities	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0808	Public finance	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0809	Credit management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0899	Finance and financial management services, other	CIP_ALL
52.09	**Hospitality administration/management**	
52.0901	Hospitality administration/management, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0903	Tourism and travel services management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.0904	Hotel/motel administration/management	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
52.0905	Restaurant/food services management	CIP_TR_COL
52.0906	Resort management	CIP_TR_COL
52.0907	Meeting and event planning	CIP_ALL
52.0908	Casino management	CIP_ALL
52.0909	Hotel, motel, and restaurant management	CIP_ALL
52.0999	Hospitality administration/management, other	CIP_ALL
52.10	**Human resources management and services**	
52.1001	Human resources management/personnel administration, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1002	Labour and industrial relations	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1003	Organizational behaviour studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1004	Labour studies	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1005	Human resources development	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1099	Human resources management and services, other	CIP_ALL
52.11	**International business/trade/commerce**	
52.1101	International business/trade/commerce	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.12	**Management information systems and services**	
52.1201	Management information systems, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1206	Information resources management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1207	Knowledge management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1299	Management information systems and services, other	CIP_ALL
52.13	**Management sciences and quantitative methods**	
52.1301	Management science	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1302	Business statistics	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1304	Actuarial science	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1399	Management sciences and quantitative methods, other	CIP_ALL
52.14	**Marketing**	
52.1401	Marketing/marketing management, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1402	Marketing research	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1403	International marketing	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.1499	Marketing, other	CIP_ALL
52.15	**Real estate**	
52.1501	Real estate	CIP_ALL
52.16	**Taxation**	
52.1601	Taxation	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.17	**Insurance**	
52.1701	Insurance	CIP_ALL

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
52.18	**General sales, merchandising and related marketing operations**	
52.1801	Sales, distribution and marketing operations, general	CIP_ALL
52.1802	Merchandising and buying operations	CIP_TR_COL
52.1803	Retailing and retail operations	CIP_TR_COL
52.1804	Selling skills and sales operations	CIP_ALL
52.1899	General sales, merchandising and related marketing operations, other	CIP_ALL
52.19	**Specialized sales, merchandising and marketing operations**	
52.1901	Auctioneering	CIP_TR_COL
52.1902	Fashion merchandising	CIP_ALL
52.1903	Fashion modelling	CIP_TR_COL
52.1904	Apparel and accessories marketing operations	CIP_TR_COL
52.1905	Tourism and travel services marketing operations	CIP_TR_COL
52.1906	Tourism promotion operations	CIP_TR_COL
52.1907	Vehicle and vehicle parts and accessories marketing operations	CIP_TR_COL
52.1908	Business and personal/financial services marketing operations	CIP_TR_COL
52.1909	Special products marketing operations	CIP_TR_COL
52.1910	Hospitality and recreation marketing operations	CIP_ALL
52.1999	Specialized sales, merchandising and marketing operations, other	CIP_ALL
52.20	**Construction management**	
52.2001	Construction management	CIP_ALL
52.21	**Telecommunications management**	
52.2101	Telecommunications management	CIP_COL_UNIV
52.99	**Business, management, marketing and related support services, other**	
52.9999	Business, management, marketing and related support services, other	CIP_ALL
54.	**History**	
54.01	**History**	
54.0101	History, general	CIP_COL_UNIV
54.0102	American history (United States)	CIP_COL_UNIV
54.0103	European history	CIP_COL_UNIV
54.0104	History and philosophy of science and technology	CIP_COL_UNIV
54.0105	Public/applied history	CIP_COL_UNIV
54.0106	Asian history	CIP_COL_UNIV
54.0107	Canadian history	CIP_COL_UNIV
54.0108	Military history	CIP_COL_UNIV
54.0199	History, other	CIP_COL_UNIV

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
55.	**French language and literature/letters CAN**	
55.01	**French language and literature, general CAN**	
55.0101	French language and literature, general CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.13	**French rhetoric and composition/writing studies CAN**	
55.1301	French writing, general CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.1302	French creative writing CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.1303	French professional, technical, business, and scientific writing CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.1304	French rhetoric and composition CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.1399	French rhetoric and composition/writing studies, other CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.14	**French literature CAN**	
55.1401	French literature, general CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.1403	Canadian literature, French CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.1404	Literature of France and the French community, French CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.1405	Children's and adolescent literature, French CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.1499	French literature, other CAN	CIP_COL_UNIV
55.99	**French language and literature/letters, other CAN**	
55.9999	French language and literature/letters, other CAN	CIP_ALL
60.	**Dental, medical and veterinary residency programs**	
60.01	**Dental residency programs**	
60.0101	Oral and maxillofacial surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0102	Dental public health residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0103	Endodontics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0104	Oral and maxillofacial pathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0105	Orthodontics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0106	Pediatric dentistry residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0107	Periodontology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0108	Prosthodontics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0109	Oral and maxillofacial radiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0199	Dental residency programs, other	CIP_MD
60.03	**Veterinary residency programs**	
60.0301	Veterinary anesthesiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0302	Veterinary dentistry residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0303	Veterinary dermatology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0304	Veterinary emergency and critical care medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0305	Veterinary internal medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0306	Laboratory animal medicine residency programs	CIP_MD

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
60.0307	Veterinary microbiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0308	Veterinary nutrition residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0309	Veterinary ophthalmology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0310	Veterinary pathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0311	Veterinary practice residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0312	Veterinary preventive medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0313	Veterinary radiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0314	Veterinary surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0315	Theriogenology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0316	Veterinary toxicology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0317	Zoological medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0318	Poultry veterinarian residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0319	Veterinary behaviourist residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0320	Veterinary clinical pharmacology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0399	Veterinary residency programs, other	CIP_MD
60.04	**Medical residency programs - general certificates**	
60.0401	Aerospace medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0402	Allergy and immunology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0403	Anesthesiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0404	Child neurology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0405	Clinical biochemical genetics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0406	Clinical cytogenetics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0407	Clinical genetics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0408	Clinical molecular genetics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0409	Colon and rectal surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0410	Dermatology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0411	Diagnostic radiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0412	Emergency medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0413	Family medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0414	General surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0415	Internal medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0416	Neurological surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0417	Neurology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0418	Nuclear medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0419	Obstetrics and gynecology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0420	Occupational medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0421	Ophthalmology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0422	Orthopedic surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0423	Otolaryngology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0424	Pathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0425	Pediatrics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0426	Physical medicine and rehabilitation residency programs	CIP_MD

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
60.0427	Plastic surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0428	Psychiatry residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0429	Public health and general preventive medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0430	Radiation oncology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0431	Radiologic physics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0432	Thoracic surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0433	Urology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0434	Vascular surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0499	Medical residency programs - general certificates, other	CIP_MD
60.05	**Medical residency programs - subspecialty certificates**	
60.0501	Addiction psychiatry residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0502	Adolescent medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0503	Blood banking/transfusion medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0504	Cardiovascular disease residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0505	Chemical pathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0506	Child abuse pediatrics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0507	Child and adolescent psychiatry residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0508	Clinical cardiac electrophysiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0509	Clinical neurophysiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0510	Congenital cardiac surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0511	Critical care medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0512	Cytopathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0513	Dermatopathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0514	Developmental-behavioural pediatrics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0515	Diagnostic radiologic physics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0516	Endocrinology, diabetes and metabolism residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0517	Forensic pathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0518	Forensic psychiatry residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0519	Gastroenterology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0520	Geriatric medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0521	Geriatric psychiatry residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0522	Gynecologic oncology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0523	Hematological pathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0524	Hematology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0525	Hospice and palliative medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0526	Immunopathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0527	Infectious disease residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0528	Interventional cardiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0529	Laboratory medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0530	Maternal and fetal medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0531	Medical biochemical genetics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0532	Medical microbiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0533	Medical nuclear physics residency programs	CIP_MD

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
60.0534	Medical oncology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0535	Medical toxicology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0536	Molecular genetic pathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0537	Musculoskeletal oncology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0538	Neonatal-perinatal medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0539	Nephrology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0540	Neurodevelopmental disabilities residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0541	Neuromuscular medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0542	Neuropathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0543	Neuroradiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0544	Neurotology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0545	Nuclear radiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0546	Orthopaedic sports medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0547	Orthopedic surgery of the spine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0548	Pain medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0549	Pediatric cardiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0550	Pediatric critical care medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0551	Pediatric dermatology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0552	Pediatric emergency medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0553	Pediatric endocrinology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0554	Pediatric gastroenterology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0555	Pediatric hematology-oncology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0556	Pediatric infectious diseases residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0557	Pediatric nephrology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0558	Pediatric orthopedics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0559	Pediatric otolaryngology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0560	Pediatric pathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0561	Pediatric pulmonology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0562	Pediatric radiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0563	Pediatric rehabilitation medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0564	Pediatric rheumatology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0565	Pediatric surgery residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0566	Pediatric transplant hepatology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0567	Pediatric urology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0568	Physical medicine and rehabilitation, psychiatric residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0569	Plastic surgery within the head and neck residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0570	Psychosomatic medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0571	Pulmonary disease residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0572	Radioisotopic pathology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0573	Reproductive endocrinology/infertility residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0574	Rheumatology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0575	Sleep medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0576	Spinal cord injury medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0577	Sports medicine residency programs	CIP_MD

CIP code	Series, subseries and instructional program classes	Level[1]
60.0578	Surgery of the hand residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0579	Surgical critical care residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0580	Therapeutic radiologic physics residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0581	Transplant hepatology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0582	Undersea and hyperbaric medicine residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0583	Vascular and interventional radiology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0584	Vascular neurology residency programs	CIP_MD
60.0599	Medical residency programs - subspecialty certificates, other	CIP_MD
60.06	**Podiatric medicine residency programs**	
60.0601	Podiatric medicine and surgery residency programs - 24	CIP_MD
60.0602	Podiatric medicine and surgery residency programs - 36	CIP_MD
60.0699	Podiatric medicine residency programs, other	CIP_MD
60.99	**Dental, medical and veterinary residency programs, other**	
60.9999	Dental, medical and veterinary residency programs, other	CIP_MD

1. 'Level' indicates the levels of education at which the instructional programs within each category are usually offered.
   - CIP_ALL All postsecondary levels (except CIP_MD)
   - CIP_TR_COL Trade and college
   - CIP_COL_UNIV College and university (except CIP_MD)
   - CIP_UNIV University only (except CIP_MD)
   - CIP_MSC_PHD Master's or doctorate degree
   - CIP_MD Degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry

CAN indicates a class specific to Canada.

Appendix 6.3 Language of work, classifications from 2016, 2011 and 2006

Changes have been made to the language classification used in Statistics Canada data products. In this appendix, the 2011 and 2006 classifications are matched to the 2016 classification.

The individual language categories and the language family categories disseminated in 2016 Census data products do not always exist or match those present in 2011 and 2006. In most cases though, the corresponding language family total can be calculated for past years by adding all specific language categories of a language family. For example, the 2016 language family 'Balto-Slavic languages' did not exist in 2011 and 2006, however, the total for this language family can still be calculated for 2011 and 2006 by adding up the 2016 languages listed within this language family.

Please note that in the second part of the question on language of work, the respondent had the option of marking the 'No' circle to indicate that there was no other language used on a regular basis at work.

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Official languages	Official languages	Official languages
English	English	English
French	French	French
Non-official languages	Non-official languages	Non-official languages
Aboriginal languages	Aboriginal languages	Aboriginal languages
Algonquian languages	Algonquian languages	Algonquian languages
Blackfoot	Blackfoot	Blackfoot
Cree-Montagnais languages	Not available	Not available
Atikamekw	Atikamekw	Atikamekw
Montagnais (Innu)[1]	Innu/Montagnais	Montagnais-Naskapi[2]
Moose Cree	Not available	Not available
Naskapi	Naskapi	Not available
Northern East Cree	Not available	Not available
Plains Cree	Plains Cree	Not available
Southern East Cree	Not available	Not available
Swampy Cree	Swampy Cree	Not available
Woods Cree	Woods Cree	Not available
Cree, n.o.s.	Cree, n.o.s.	Cree[3]
Eastern Algonquian languages	Not available	Not available
Malecite	Malecite	Malecite
Mi'kmaq	Mi'kmaq	Mi'kmaq
Ojibway-Potawatomi languages	Not available	Not available
Algonquin	Algonquin	Algonquin
Ojibway	Ojibway	Ojibway
Oji-Cree	Oji-Cree	Oji-Cree
Ottawa (Odawa)	Not available	Not available
Algonquian languages, n.i.e.	Algonquian languages, n.i.e.	Algonquian languages, n.i.e.
Athabaskan languages[4]	Athapaskan languages	Athapaskan languages
Northern Athabaskan languages	Not available	Not available
Babine (Wetsuwet'en)	Wetsuweten	Not available
Beaver	Beaver	Not available
Carrier	Carrier	Carrier
Chilcotin	Chilcotin	Chilcotin

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Dene[5]	Dene[5]	Dene
Dogrib (Tlicho)[4]	Tlicho (Dogrib)[6]	Dogrib
Gwich'in	Gwich'in[6]	Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)
Sarsi (Sarcee)[4]	Sarcee	Not available
Sekani	Sekani	Not available
Slavey-Hare languages	Not available	Not available
North Slavey (Hare)	North Slavey (Hare)[6]	North Slave (Hare)
South Slavey	South Slavey[6]	South Slave
Slavey, n.o.s.	Slavey, n.o.s.	Not available
Tahltan languages	Not available	Not available
Kaska (Nahani)	Kaska (Nahani)	Not available
Tahltan	Tahltan	Not available
Tutchone languages[7]	Not available	Not available
Northern Tutchone	Northern Tutchone	Not available
Southern Tutchone	Southern Tutchone	Not available
Athabaskan languages, n.i.e.[4]	Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.	Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.
Haida	Haida	Haida
Inuit languages	Inuit languages	Inuktitut[8]
Inuinnaqtun (Inuvialuktun)[9,10]	Inuinnaqtun	Inuinnaqtun
Inuktitut	Inuktitut	Not available
Inuit languages, n.i.e.	Inuit languages, n.i.e.	Inuktitut, n.i.e.[11]
Iroquoian languages	Iroquoian languages	Iroquoian languages
Cayuga	Cayuga	Not available
Mohawk	Mohawk	Mohawk
Oneida	Oneida	Not available
Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.	Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.	Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.
Kutenai	Kutenai	Kutenai
Michif	Michif	Not available
Salish languages	Salish languages	Salish languages
Comox	Not available	Not available
Halkomelem	Halkomelem	Not available
Lillooet	Lillooet	Not available
Okanagan	Okanagan	Not available
Shuswap (Secwepemctsin)	Shuswap (Secwepemctsin)[6]	Shuswap
Squamish	Squamish	Not available
Straits	Straits	Not available
Thompson (Ntlakapamux)	Thompson (Ntlakapamux)	Thompson (Ntlakapamux)
Salish languages, n.i.e.	Salish languages, n.i.e.	Salish languages, n.i.e.
Siouan languages	Siouan languages[6]	Siouan languages (Dakota/Sioux)
Dakota	Dakota	Not available
Stoney	Stoney	Not available
Siouan languages, n.i.e.	Siouan languages, n.i.e.	Not available
Tlingit	Tlingit	Tlingit
Tsimshian languages	Tsimshian languages	Tsimshian languages
Gitxsan (Gitksan)[4]	Gitksan	Gitksan

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Nisga'a	Nisga'a	Nisga'a
Tsimshian	Tsimshian	Tsimshian
Wakashan languages	Wakashan languages	Wakashan languages
Haisla	Haisla	Not available
Heiltsuk	Heiltsuk	Not available
Kwakiutl (Kwak'wala)	Kwakiutl (Kwak'wala)	Not available
Nuu-chah-nulth (Nootka)[4]	Nootka (Nuu-chah-nulth)[6]	Nootka
Wakashan languages, n.i.e.	Wakashan languages, n.i.e.	Wakashan languages, n.i.e.
Aboriginal languages, n.o.s.[12]	Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.	Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.
Non-Aboriginal languages	Non-Aboriginal languages	Non-Aboriginal languages
Afro-Asiatic languages	Afro-Asiatic languages	Afro-Asiatic languages
Berber languages[4]	Berber languages (Kabyle)	Berber languages (Kabyle)
Kabyle	Not available	Not available
Berber languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Cushitic languages	Cushitic languages	Cushitic languages
Bilen	Not available	Not available
Oromo	Oromo	Oromo
Somali	Somali	Somali
Cushitic languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Semitic languages	Semitic languages	Semitic languages
Amharic	Amharic	Amharic
Arabic	Arabic	Arabic
Assyrian Neo-Aramaic	Not available	Not available
Chaldean Neo-Aramaic	Not available	Not available
Harari	Not available	Not available
Hebrew	Hebrew	Hebrew
Maltese	Maltese	Maltese
Tigrigna	Tigrigna	Tigrigna
Semitic languages, n.i.e.	Semitic languages, n.i.e.	Semitic languages, n.i.e.
Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Afro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.
Austro-Asiatic languages	Austro-Asiatic languages	Austro-Asiatic languages
Khmer (Cambodian)	Khmer (Cambodian)	Khmer (Cambodian)
Vietnamese	Vietnamese	Vietnamese
Austro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e	Not available	Not available
Austronesian languages[4]	Malayo-Polynesian languages	Malayo-Polynesian languages
Bikol	Bikol	Not available
Cebuano	Not available	Not available
Fijian	Fijian	Not available
Hiligaynon	Not available	Not available
Ilocano	Ilocano	Ilocano
Malagasy	Malagasy	Not available
Malay	Malay	Malay
Pampangan (Kapampangan, Pampango)[4]	Pampango	Pampango
Pangasinan	Pangasinan	Not available

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)	Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)	Tagalog (Pilipino, Filipino)
Waray-Waray	Not available	Not available
Austronesian languages, n.i.e.[4]	Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.	Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.
Creole languages[4]	Creoles	Creoles
Haitian Creole	Not available	Not available
Creole, n.o.s.	Not available	Not available
Creole languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Dravidian languages	Dravidian languages	Dravidian languages
Kannada	Kannada	Kannada
Malayalam	Malayalam	Malayalam
Tamil	Tamil	Tamil
Telugu	Telugu	Telugu
Dravidian languages, n.i.e.	Dravidian languages, n.i.e.	Dravidian languages, n.i.e.
Hmong-Mien languages	Not available	Not available
Indo-European languages	Not available	Not available
Albanian	Albanian	Not available
Armenian	Armenian	Armenian
Balto-Slavic languages	Not available	Not available
Baltic languages	Baltic languages	Baltic languages
Latvian	Latvian	Latvian
Lithuanian	Lithuanian	Lithuanian
Slavic languages	Slavic languages	Slavic languages
Belarusan[4]	Belarusian (Byelorussian)[6]	Belarusan (Byelorussian)
Bosnian	Bosnian	Bosnian
Bulgarian	Bulgarian	Bulgarian
Croatian	Croatian	Croatian
Czech	Czech	Czech
Macedonian	Macedonian	Macedonian
Polish	Polish	Polish
Russian	Russian	Russian
Serbian	Serbian	Serbian
Serbo-Croatian	Serbo-Croatian	Serbo-Croatian
Slovak	Slovak	Slovak
Slovene (Slovenian)[4]	Slovenian	Slovenian
Ukrainian	Ukrainian	Ukrainian
Slavic languages, n.i.e.	Slavic languages, n.i.e.	Slavic languages, n.i.e.
Celtic languages	Celtic languages	Celtic languages
Scottish Gaelic	Gaelic languages[13]	Gaelic languages[13]
Welsh	Welsh	Welsh
Celtic languages, n.i.e.[14]	Celtic languages, n.i.e.	Celtic languages, n.i.e.
Germanic languages	Germanic languages	Germanic languages
Afrikaans	Afrikaans	Not available
Danish	Danish	Danish
Dutch	Dutch	Dutch

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Frisian	Frisian	Frisian
German	German	German
Icelandic	Icelandic	Icelandic
Norwegian	Norwegian	Norwegian
Swedish	Swedish	Swedish
Vlaams (Flemish)[4]	Flemish	Flemish
Yiddish	Yiddish	Yiddish
Germanic languages, n.i.e.	Germanic languages, n.i.e.	Germanic languages, n.i.e.[15]
Greek	Greek	Greek
Indo-Iranian languages	Indo-Iranian languages	Indo-Iranian languages
Indo-Aryan languages	Indo-Aryan languages	Not available
Bengali	Bengali	Bengali
Gujarati	Gujarati	Gujarati
Hindi	Hindi	Hindi
Kashmiri	Not available	Not available
Konkani	Konkani	Konkani
Marathi	Marathi	Marathi
Nepali	Nepali	Not available
Oriya (Odia)	Not available	Not available
Punjabi (Panjabi)[4]	Panjabi (Punjabi)	Panjabi (Punjabi)
Sindhi	Sindhi	Sindhi
Sinhala (Sinhalese)	Sinhala (Sinhalese)	Sinhala (Sinhalese)
Urdu	Urdu	Urdu
Iranian languages	Iranian languages	Iranian languages
Kurdish	Kurdish	Kurdish
Pashto	Pashto	Pashto
Persian (Farsi)	Persian (Farsi)	Persian (Farsi)
Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.	Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.	Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.
Italic (Romance) languages[4]	Romance languages	Romance languages
Catalan	Catalan	Not available
Italian	Italian	Italian
Portuguese	Portuguese	Portuguese
Romanian	Romanian	Romanian
Spanish	Spanish	Spanish
Italic (Romance) languages, n.i.e.[4]	Romance languages, n.i.e.	Romance languages, n.i.e.
Japanese	Japanese	Japanese
Kartvelian languages	Not available	Not available
Georgian	Georgian	Not available
Korean	Korean	Korean
Mongolic languages	Not available	Not available
Mongolian	Mongolian	Not available
Niger-Congo languages	Niger-Congo languages	Niger-Congo languages
Akan (Twi)	Akan (Twi)	Akan (Twi)

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Bamanankan	Bamanankan	Not available
Edo	Edo	Edo
Ewe	Ewe	Not available
Fulah (Pular, Pulaar, Fulfulde)	Not available	Not available
Ga	Ga	Not available
Ganda	Ganda	Not available
Igbo	Igbo	Igbo
Lingala	Lingala	Lingala
Rundi (Kirundi)	Rundi (Kirundi)	Rundi (Kirundi)
Kinyarwanda (Rwanda)[4]	Rwanda (Kinyarwanda)	Rwanda (Kinyarwanda)
Shona	Shona	Shona
Swahili	Swahili	Swahili
Wolof	Wolof	Wolof
Yoruba	Not available	Not available
Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.	Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.	Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.
Nilo-Saharan languages	Not available	Not available
Dinka	Not available	Not available
Nilo-Saharan languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Sign languages[4]	Non-verbal languages	Non-verbal languages
American Sign Language	American Sign Language	American Sign Language
Quebec Sign Language	Quebec Sign Language	Quebec Sign Language
Sign languages, n.i.e	Sign languages, n.i.e	Sign languages, n.i.e
Sino-Tibetan languages	Sino-Tibetan languages	Sino-Tibetan languages
Chinese languages	Chinese languages	Chinese languages
Cantonese	Cantonese	Cantonese
Hakka	Hakka	Hakka
Mandarin	Mandarin	Mandarin
Min Dong	Not available	Not available
Min Nan (Chaochow, Teochow, Fukien, Taiwanese)[16]	Not available	Not available
Wu (Shanghainese)[4]	Shanghainese	Shanghainese
Chinese, n.o.s.	Chinese, n.o.s.[17]	Chinese, n.o.s.[17]
Chinese languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Tibeto-Burman languages	Not available	Not available
Burmese	Burmese	Not available
Karenic languages	Not available	Not available
Tibetan	Tibetan languages[18]	Tibetan languages[18]
Tibeto-Burman languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Tai-Kadai languages[4]	Tai languages	Tai languages
Lao	Lao	Lao
Thai	Thai	Thai
Tai-Kadai languages, n.i.e	Not available	Not available
Turkic languages	Turkic languages	Turkic languages
Azerbaijani	Azerbaijani	Azerbaijani
Turkish	Turkish	Turkish

2016 Classification	2011 Classification	2006 Classification
Uyghur	Not available	Not available
Uzbek	Not available	Not available
Turkic languages, n.i.e.	Turkic languages, n.i.e.	Turkic languages, n.i.e.
Uralic languages[4]	Finno-Ugric languages	Finno-Ugric languages
Estonian	Estonian	Estonian
Finnish	Finnish	Finnish
Hungarian	Hungarian	Hungarian
Uralic languages, n.i.e.	Not available	Not available
Other languages, n.i.e.[19]	Other languages	Other languages

n.i.e. = not included elsewhere

n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

1. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2011.
2. This category is equivalent to Montagnais (Innu) and Naskapi in 2016.
3. This category is equivalent to Cree, n.o.s., Swampy Cree, Plains Cree, Woods Cree, and Cree, n.i.e. in 2011, and to Cree, n.o.s., Woods Cree, Swampy Cree, Southern East Cree, Plains Cree, Northern East Cree, and Moose Cree in 2016.
4. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2011 and 2006.
5. This category is equivalent to Dene and Chipewyan in 2006.
6. Name change only: content remains the same as in 2006.
7. This category is equivalent to Northern Tutchone, Southern Tutchone, and Tutchone, n.o.s. in 2011.
8. In 2006, Inuktitut was the name of the language family that consisted of Inuinnaqtun and Inuktitut, n.i.e.
9. This category is equivalent to Inuinnaqtun and Inuvialuktun in 2011.
10. As in 2011, Inuinnaqtun and Inuvialuktun are also available as separate categories in 2016.
11. This category is equivalent to Inuktitut, Inuvialuktun, and Inuit languages, n.i.e. in 2011 and 2016.
12. Responses of Aboriginal languages, n.i.e. are included in their corresponding Aboriginal language family n.i.e. category.
13. This category includes Scottish Gaelic and Irish (Irish Gaelic).
14. Irish (Irish Gaelic) is included in Celtic, n.i.e. in 2016.
15. This category is equivalent to Germanic languages, n.i.e. and Afrikaans in 2016 and 2011.
16. Chaochow (Teochow), Fukien, and Taiwanese were separate categories in 2011 and 2006.
17. This category is equivalent to Chinese, n.o.s. and Chinese, n.i.e. in 2016.
18. This category is equivalent to Tibetan and Karenic languages in 2016.
19. This category is equivalent to Other languages, and African languages, n.i.e. in 2011 and 2006.

Source: Statistics Canada, 2016 Census of Population.

Index

A

Aboriginal ancestry **11**
Aboriginal group **12**
Aboriginal identity **14**
Activities of daily living **135**
Adjusted after-tax income **155**
Adjusted counts **57**
Adjusted market income **156**
Adjusted total income **156**
Admission category **137**
After-tax income **157**
Age **19**
Age at immigration **138**
Aggregate dissemination area (ADA) **68**
Annual payment for electricity **115**
Annual payment for fuels **115**
Annual payment for water and other municipal services **116**
Annual property taxes **117**
Applicant type **139**
Area of residence - Inuit Nunangat **15**
Area of residence - On reserve **15**

B

Basic Canada child tax benefit (CCTB) **158**
Bedrooms **117**
Blockface **69**

C

Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Disability benefits **158**
Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Retirement benefits **159**
Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) – Survivor benefits **160**
Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) benefits **161**
Cartographic boundary files (CBFs) **64**
Census agglomeration (CA) **71**
Census agricultural region (CAR) **71**
Census consolidated subdivision (CCS) **71**
Census division (CD) **72**
Census division of current residence **263**
Census family **37**
Census family composition **38**
Census family status **38**
Census family structure **38**
Census family total income **161**
Census farm **23**
Census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA) **74**
Census metropolitan influenced zone (MIZ) **61**
Census subdivision – previous census **81**
Census subdivision (CSD) **81**
Census subdivision of current residence **263**
Census tract (CT) **84**
Child benefits **162**
Child care expenses paid **162**
Child or spousal support payments **163**
Child presence any age **39**
Citizenship **139**
Class of worker **231**
Collective dwelling **271**
Collective household **40**
Common-law status **40**
Commuting destination **223**
Commuting duration **224**
Commuting vehicle occupancy **224**
Components of migration (in and out), five years, of geographic area **263**
Components of migration (in and out), one year, of geographic area **264**
Composition of income **164**
Condominium fees **118**
Condominium status **119**
Conjugal status **41**
Contributions to Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Québec Pension Plan (QPP) **165**
Contributions to Employment Insurance (EI) **166**
Contributions to registered pension plans (RPP) **167**
Contributions to registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs) **167**
Contributions to tax-free savings accounts (TFSA) **168**
Coordinate system **99**
Core housing need **120**
Core, fringe and rural area **86**
Couple family **41**
Couple family with children **42**

D

Date of birth **19**
Datum **100**
Degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry **27**
Designated place (DPL) **87**
Digital boundary files (DBFs) **65**
Disposable income for the MBM **169**
Dissemination area (DA) **89**
Dissemination block (DB) **90**
Distance from home to work **225**
Dividends, interest on bonds, deposits and savings certificates, and other investment income **170**
Dwelling **274**
Dwelling condition **120**

E

Earner or employment income recipient 170
Economic family 43
Economic family after-tax income decile group 171
Economic family status 44
Economic family structure 44
Economic family total income 172
Economic region (ER) 91
Ecumene 100
Employed person 232
Employment income 172
Employment income decile group 173
Employment Insurance (EI) – Other benefits 174
Employment Insurance (EI) – Regular benefits 175
Employment Insurance (EI) benefits 176
Employment rate 233
Ethnic origin 141
Experienced labour force person 234

F

Family size 45
Farm operator 24
Federal electoral district (FED) 92
First official language spoken 255
Forward sortation area (FSA)® 111
Full-time or part-time weeks worked during the reference year 235

G

Generation status 142
Geocoding 101
Geographic code 58
Geographic reference date 111
Geographical region of Canada 93
Goods and services tax (GST) credit and harmonized sales tax (HST) credit 177
Government transfers 178
Government transfers not included elsewhere 179
Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) and spousal allowance 180

H

Highest certificate, diploma or degree 27
Home language 255
Home language – Part A 255
Home language – Part B 256
Hours worked for pay or in self-employment 235
Household 46
Household living arrangements 46
Household maintainer 121
Household outside Canada 47
Household size 274
Household total income 180
Household type 48
Housing suitability 122

I

Immigrant 143
Immigrant status 144
Income decile group 180
Income sources 181
Income status 181
Income taxes 181
Incorporation status 236
Industry (based on the North American Industry Classification System [NAICS] 2012) 237
Inexperienced labour force 238
Institutional resident 275
Introduction to the geography universe 57
Investment income 182

K

Knowledge of non-official languages 145
Knowledge of official languages 256

L

Labour force 239
Labour force status 240
Labour force status (based on 1971 concepts) 241
Land area 59
Language of work 256
Language spoken most often at home 256
Language used most often at work 258
Legal marital status 48
Location of residence five years ago 265
Location of residence one year ago 265
Location of study 29
Location of study compared with province or territory of residence 30
Looked for paid work in past four weeks (full- or part-time work) 242
Low-income cut-offs, after tax (LICO-AT) 183
Low-income cut-offs, before tax (LICO-BT) 185
Low-income gap 187
Low-income gap ratio 188
Low-income measure, after tax (LIM-AT) 189
Low-income measure, before tax (LIM-BT) 191
Low-income measure of market income (LIM-MI) 193
Low-income status 193

M

Main mode of commuting **226**
Major field of study - ISCED and CIP Canada concordances **31**
Major field of study (based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2000, historical) **32**
Major field of study (based on the Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP) Canada 2016) **32**
Major source of income **195**
Map projection **102**
Marginal dwelling occupied by usual residents **276**
Marital status **49**
Market Basket Measure (MBM) **195**
Market income **197**
Market income not included elsewhere **198**
Membership in a First Nation or Indian band **15**
Mobility 1 – Census division of residence 1 year ago **266**
Mobility 1 – Census metropolitan area or census agglomeration of residence 1 year ago **266**
Mobility 1 – Census subdivision of residence 1 year ago **266**
Mobility 1 – Census subdivision type of residence 1 year ago **266**
Mobility 1 – Country of residence 1 year ago **267**
Mobility 1 – Province or territory of residence 1 year ago **267**
Mobility 1 – Statistical Area Classification of residence 1 year ago **267**
Mobility 5 – Census division of residence 5 years ago **267**
Mobility 5 – Census metropolitan area or census agglomeration of residence 5 years ago **267**
Mobility 5 – Census subdivision of residence 5 years ago **267**
Mobility 5 – Census subdivision type of residence 5 years ago **267**
Mobility 5 – Country of residence 5 years ago **267**
Mobility 5 – Province or territory of residence 5 years ago **267**
Mobility 5 – Statistical Area Classification of residence 5 years ago **268**
Mobility status, five years **268**
Mobility status, one year **268**
Mode of transportation **227**
Monthly mortgage payment **123**
Mother tongue **258**

N

National child benefit supplement (NCBS) **199**
National Geographic Database (NGD) **66**
Net capital gains or losses **200**
Net farm income **201**
Net federal income tax **202**
Net non-farm income from unincorporated business or professional practice **203**
Net self-employment income **203**
New job to start in four weeks or less from reference week **243**
Non-discretionary spending for the MBM **204**
Not in the labour force **243**

O

Occupation (based on the National Occupational Classification [NOC] 2016) **244**
Old Age Security pension (OAS) **206**
Old Age Security pension (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS) **206**
On temporary lay-off or absent from job or business **245**
Opposite/same-sex married spouse or common-law partner **50**
Opposite/same-sex status **51**
Other government transfers **207**
Other income from government sources **208**
Other language(s) spoken regularly at home **259**
Other language(s) used regularly at work **260**
Other money income **208**
Owner household **124**
Owner's major payments **125**

P

Participation rate **246**
Period of construction **125**
Period of immigration **146**
Person **19**
Person 15 years or over **51**
Persons per room **125**
Person with recent work experience **247**
Persons per room **125**
Place name (PN) **94**
Place of birth **146**
Place of birth of father **148**
Place of birth of mother **149**
Place of work status **248**
Population centre (POPCTR) **94**
Population density **60**
Population group **150**
Postal code$^{\text{CM}}$ **112**
Presence of children **52**
Presence of mortgage payments **126**
Prevalence of low income **209**
Primary household maintainer **127**
Private dwelling **277**
Private dwelling occupied by foreign residents and/or by temporarily present persons **278**
Private dwelling occupied by usual residents **278**
Private dwelling, unoccupied **279**
Private household **52**
Private retirement income **210**
Property taxes included in mortgage payments **128**
Province or territory **98**
Province or territory of current residence **269**
Provincial and territorial child benefits **211**
Provincial and territorial income taxes **212**

R

Reasons unable to start a job **249**
Reference map **103**
Registered or Treaty Indian status **16**
Regular dwelling **280**
Relationship structure **53**
Relationship to household reference person (Person 1) **53**
Rent, gross **128**
Rent, monthly cash **128**
Renter household **129**
Representative point **103**
Residence inside or outside Inuit Nunangat **17**
Residence on or off reserve **18**
Retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities, including those from RRSPs and RRIFs **212**
Road network file (RNF) **66**
Rooms **130**
Rural area (RA) **98**
Rural farm population **25**

S

School attendance **33**
Secondary (high) school diploma or equivalency certificate **35**
Severity of low income **212**
Sex **20**
Shelter cost **130**
Shelter-cost-to-income ratio **131**
Social assistance benefits **213**
Spatial Data Infrastructure (SDI) **67**
Spatial data quality elements **113**
Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) **62**
Statistical Area Classification (SAC) **63**
Stepfamily **54**
Stepfamily status **54**
Structural type of dwelling **281**
Subsidized housing **132**

T

Tenure **133**
Thematic map **110**
Time arriving at work **228**
Time leaving for work **228**
Total income **213**
Total income decile group **217**
Total income plus net capital gains or losses **218**

U

Unemployed **250**
Unemployment rate **251**
Universal child care benefit (UCCB) **218**
Usual place of residence **21**

V

Value (owner estimated) **134**
Visible minority **151**

W

Wages, salaries and commissions **219**
Weeks worked during the reference year **252**
When last worked for pay or in self-employment **253**
Work activity during the reference year **253**
Workers' compensation benefits **220**
Working income tax benefit (WITB) **221**
Workplace location **229**

Y

Year of immigration **153**